



A GRAMMAR
OF THE
FRENCH LANGUAGE,
WITH
PRACTICAL EXERCISES.

BY N. WANOSTROCHT, LL.D.

TO WHICH IS ADDED A VERY COMPREHENSIVE TABLE OF CONTENTS,
AND AN ALPHABETICAL ARRANGEMENT OF THE

IRREGULAR VERBS,

WITH REFERENCE TO THE PLACES WHERE THEY ARE CONJUGATED, WITH
ALTERATIONS, ADDITIONS, AND IMPROVEMENTS;
AND A SCHEME FOR PARSING.

ALSO,

A TREATISE ON FRENCH VERSIFICATION,

BY M. DE WAILLY,

MEMBER OF THE NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF FRANCE, ETC., ETC.

REVISED AND CORRECTED

BY N. H. JÉRÔME,

TEACHER OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE, SALEM, MASSACHUSETTS.

PHILADELPHIA:
J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

1860.

PC 2109

W 3
1860

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1837, by the
AMERICAN STATIONER'S COMPANY,
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Massachusetts.

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1854, by
BARRINGTON & HASWELL,
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court for the Eastern District of
Pennsylvania.

BY TRANSFER

JUN 20 1908

AVERTISSEMENT.

Voulant consacrer mes instants à l'enseignement de la langue française, j'ai dû rechercher les moyens les plus prompts pour arriver à mon but ; et, à cet effet, je me suis entouré de toutes les grammaires et de toutes les méthodes que j'ai pu me procurer.

La grammaire de Noël et Chapsal, telle qu'elle était précédemment imprimée, est fort bonne ; mais elle demande au moins deux ans d'étude. Telle qu'elle est imprimée aujourd'hui, elle n'enseigne plus rien.

Celle du comte de Laporte, basée sur celle de Noël et Chapsal, demande aussi un temps beaucoup trop long.

Celle de Bugard présente le même inconvénient.

Celle de Lévizac reproduit toutes les erreurs commises par Restaut sur la règle des participes passés.

Enfin, la méthode d'Ollendorff, par J. L. Jewett et V. Value, a le double désavantage d'être beaucoup trop étendue et de se trop ressentir de la dureté des langues du Nord, dureté qui n'existe nullement dans la langue française.

La grammaire de Wanostrocht, telle que je l'ai corrigée, de même que celle de Douville, a l'avantage de réunir toutes les règles de la langue française d'une manière très explicite et très facile à comprendre ; et c'est, pour cette raison, que je la recommande aux personnes qui veulent acquérir promptement une connaissance générale de cette langue, sans s'attacher à toutes les difficultés qu'elle présente, et

pour la connaissance parfaite des quelles il faudrait dix ans d'études continuelles.

Je ne me suis pas attaché à rectifier les cas, qui n'existent pas en français, pour les remplacer par l'emploi des prépositions *de* et *à*, parceque j'ai reconnu qu'ils présentaient plus d'analogie avec la langue anglaise et que conséquemment la théorie en était plus facile à comprendre.

Je n'ai pas non plus rectifié les modes des verbes qui sont au nombre de cinq, savoir : l'infinitif, l'indicatif, le conditionnel, l'impératif et le subjonctif, quoique Wanostrocht ait compris les deux temps du conditionnel dans le mode indicatif, car j'ai pensé qu'il suffisait de signaler cette erreur ici.

On remarquera qu'à la page 314 j'ai dit que les mots "it is," suivis d'un pronom de la troisième personne plurielle, sont rendus en français par "ce sont" et non par "c'est;" j'ajouterai qu'il en est de même lorsqu'ils sont suivis d'un substantif de la même personne. Ainsi au lieu de dire : c'est les hommes, c'est les femmes, il faut dire : ce sont les hommes, ce sont les femmes. Mais on dira, c'est l'homme et la femme, car, bien qu'il y ait deux substantifs, ces substantifs sont à la troisième personne du singulier.

Telles sont les observations que j'ai cru devoir présenter aux personnes qui désirent apprendre en peu de mois, et sans se charger la mémoire d'exceptions inutiles, les principes généraux de la langue française.

JÉRÔME.

Salem, le 21 Avril, 1854.

PREFACE.



THAT ‘a great book is a great evil’ is generally a great truth, for the discovery of which we moderns must hold ourselves indebted to the sages of antiquity. In the following sheets, I have endeavoured to improve upon the ancient maxim, and bring the two ends of the book as near together as I possibly could. On this frugal plan, the preface might have been spared, but custom must be complied with : some part of our time must be spent on superfluities ; and what is rendered venerable by age must not too hastily be rejected. To enter abruptly upon the main subject is generally considered as a breach of politeness. What is useful must sometimes give place to what is convenient, and what rigorous justice cannot defend, may yet enjoy the security of prescription. In compliance, therefore, with universal custom, with the general practice of the ancients, and, what is still more forcible, the urgent solicitation of the booksellers, I proceed to lay before the reader the general plan of the work.

The idea of the PRACTICAL GRAMMAR was first suggested to the Author in the course of his private teaching. He found daily the inconvenience of referring from book to book, and determined to supply the defect in the best manner he could. Whatever was necessary to furnish a tolerable acquaintance with the elements of the language, and point out the nature of its construction, he proposed to admit ; and reject every thing that was not essentially connected with his principal design. His first object was to comprise, in as little room as possible, every thing that was really useful in the grammar, the exercise-book, and the book of dialogues. To this plan he has strictly adhered in the composition, and has brought the whole together in a much smaller compass than, at first, could reasonably have been expected.

The several parts of speech are arranged in the usual order, and each part is discussed under a separate section.

Each rule is followed by a familiar exercise, which the master may use in the place of a dialogue.

The advantages resulting from the scholars learning and then repeating their own translations by heart, must, in the opinion of impartial and disinterested minds, materially tend to their improvement. By these

means, the pupils, uniting practice to theory, not only become imperceptibly acquainted with the French phraseology, which in many instances differs so much from the English construction, but immediately know what is the English word that corresponds with the French, and *vice versa*, which cannot absolutely be done, in a dialogue where the French is ready made for them. Therefore, in order the more fully to answer the Author's intention, he has, instead of fine sentences, extracted from the most elegant writers, and often above the comprehension of young people, preferred, and made use, throughout all the exercises, of plain and easy sentences, which, at the same time they are within the reach of the young learners' faculties, will soon enable them to speak the French language with propriety and elegance. What more can be expected from an elementary book?

At the close of every section, a recapitulatory exercise is given upon all the preceding rules.

When there is any difference in the order of arrangement, the French construction is pointed out by the small figures placed against the top of the words in the English sentence.

Some of the most remarkable French idioms are noticed, and exemplified by various instances. Many others might have been adduced, perhaps, to very little profit. The idiomatical expressions are daily giving way to a regular syntactical form, and growing into disuse with the best masters.

A few general rules for pronunciation only have been given. From all the attempts that have hitherto been made, it does not appear that any adequate idea of it can be conveyed in writing. The ear cannot be properly formed without the assistance of a good speaker.

Throughout the whole composition, the Author's chief aim has been to unite ease and simplicity with accuracy and precision. That he has not sometimes said too little where more is required, and sometimes too much where less would have been sufficient, he does not take upon himself to assert. That he has sometimes failed through negligence, and many times through ignorance, he has also great reason to fear. His daily avocations left him but little time for study, and his want of a better acquaintance with the English language may have subjected him to many inaccuracies in his style, and sometimes, perhaps, to palpable improprieties.

CONTENTS.



AN Alphabetical Arrangement of Irregular Verbs	16
An Explanation of the Abbreviations	25
French Alphabet	26

SECT. I.

Of Grammar	27
Of the French Alphabet	<i>ib.</i>
Of Vowels—Diphthongs—Accents—Kinds of E.	<i>ib.</i>
Of Diæresis—Cedilla—Apostrophe	29
Alphabetical List of French Words having their initial <i>h</i> mute	<i>ib.</i>
Variations in the Pronunciation of Consonants	31
Kinds of Words	32
General Explanation of their Use	33

SECT. II.

Of Nouns	34
Of Articles	35
Of the Definite, Partitive and Indefinite Articles	<i>ib.</i>
Of Genders and Numbers	36
General Rules for the Formation of the Plural Number	37
Of Cases	40
Of the Declension of Nouns	41
Declension of the Article Definite <i>Le</i> , (the) before Nouns masculine beginning with a Consonant or <i>h</i> aspirated	<i>ib.</i>
Declension of the Article Definite <i>La</i> , (the) before Nouns feminine beginning with a Consonant or <i>h</i> aspirated	42
Declension of the Article Definite <i>L'</i> (the) for both Genders, before Nouns beginning with a Vowel, or an <i>h</i> not aspirated	<i>ib.</i>
Recapitulation of the Article Definite	43
Rules for the proper Use of the Definite Article with Exercises	<i>ib.</i>
Declension of the Article Partitive	51
Rules and Exercises upon this Partitive	52
Declension of the Article Indefinite	54
Rules and Exercises on this Indefinite	55
Declension of <i>Un</i> , m. <i>Une</i> , f. a or an	60
Rules and Exercises on this Article	61
Of Nouns Adjective	63
Of the Gender and Number of Adjectives	<i>ib.</i>
Declension of Nouns Adjective	65
Rules and Exercises upon Adjectives	<i>ib.</i>
The Place of an Adjective in a Sentence	68
Of Adjectives which precede their Substantives	<i>ib.</i>
Of Adjectives which come after their Substantives	69
Rules and Exercises upon these Adjectives	<i>ib.</i>
Of the Degrees of Comparison	72
Rules with Exercises upon the Degrees of Comparison	<i>ib.</i>

Of Numbers	79
Rules and Exercises upon these Cardinal Numbers	80
Of the Ordinal Numbers	83
Rules and Exercises upon the Ordinal Numbers	84
Recapitulatory or Promiscuous Exercises upon all the preceding Rules	86

SECT. III.

Of Pronouns	93
Of Pronouns Personal	<i>ib.</i>
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns	94
Observations on the Pronouns <i>Je</i> and <i>Moi</i> , <i>Tu</i> and <i>Toi</i> , <i>Il</i> and <i>Lui</i> , <i>Us</i> and <i>Eux</i>	96
Exercises upon the preceding Observations	97
Of Conjunctive Pronouns and their Declensions	98
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns	99
Of Particles Relative or Supplying Pronouns <i>en</i> , <i>y</i> , and <i>le</i>	103
Rules and Exercises upon these Supplying Pronouns	<i>ib.</i>
Of Pronouns Possessive, and their Declensions	109
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns,	110
Of Pronouns Demonstrative	114
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns	115
Of Pronouns Relative	120
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns	121
Of Pronouns Interrogative	126
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns	<i>ib.</i>
Of Pronouns Indefinite	128
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns	129
Recapitulatory or Promiscuous Exercises upon all the Pronouns	143

SECT. IV.

Of Verbs and their different Sorts	150
Conjugation of Verbs and Moods	152
Tenses	154
Tenses of the Indicative Mood	156
Simple Tenses of the Indicative Mood	<i>ib.</i>
Compound Tenses of the Indicative Mood	160
Tenses of the Subjunctive or Conjunctive Mood, and their Compounds	164
Numbers and Persons	165
Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb <i>Avoir</i> , to have	167
Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb <i>Etre</i> , to be	169
Rules and Exercises on the two preceding Auxiliary Verbs	172
Promiscuous Exercises upon the Compound Tenses of these Auxiliary Verbs	174
Rules and Examples for Using these Verbs Interrogatively, &c	175
Promiscuous Exercises on Rules of Interrogation, &c.	177
Remark on the Verb <i>Etre</i> , to be	179
First Conjugation in <i>er</i> , as in <i>Parl-er</i>	180
Important Observation upon the Repetition of Verbs, &c. see N. B.	184
Exercises on this Conjugation	185
Exercises on the Compound Tenses	188
Second Conjugation, in <i>ir</i> , as in <i>Pun-ir</i>	189
Exercises on this Conjugation	191
Third Conjugation in <i>oir</i> , as in <i>rec-voir</i>	194

CONTENTS.

xiii

Exercises on this Conjugation	196
Fourth Conjugation in <i>re</i> , as in <i>Vend-re</i>	200
Exercises on this Conjugation	203
Recapitulatory Exercises on the Regular Verbs of the Four Conjugations	205
Promiscuous Exercises on the Compound tenses of the preceding Conjugations	203
Conjugations of the Passive Verbs	209
Of Neuter Verbs generally	210
Of Reflective Verbs	215
Model of Conjugations for the Reflected Verbs of the Four Conjugations	219
Exercises on the Reflective Verbs	222
Conjugation of the Irregular Verbs of the First Conjugation	227
Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation	229
Exercises on the Irregular Verbs of the First and Second Conjugations	235
Continuation of the Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation	237
Exercises on the preceding irregular Verbs	242
Continuation of the Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation	243
Exercises on the preceding Irregular Verbs and their Compounds	248
Irregular Verbs of the Third Conjugation	251
Observation upon <i>May</i> and <i>Might</i> , when used as a Verb or Auxiliary	256
Observation upon the words <i>Will</i> and <i>Would</i> , when used as a Verb or an Auxiliary	261
Exercises upon Irregular Verbs of the Third Conjugation	262
Irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation	266
Exercises upon the preceding Irregular Verbs and their Compounds	275
Continuation of the Irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation	278
Exercises on the preceding Irregular Verbs and their Compounds	287
Continuation of the Irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation	293
Exercises on the preceding Verbs and their Compounds	301
Of the Impersonal Verbs	306
Conjugation of the Impersonal Verbs	307
Exercises on the Impersonal Verbs	<i>ib.</i>
Upon the Impersonal Verb <i>y avoir</i>	308
Exercises on the preceding Verb	309
Remarks on the general Pronoun <i>On</i>	310
Exercises on the preceding Pronoun, &c.	<i>ib.</i>
Remarks on the Impersonal Verb <i>Falloir</i> , to be needful, requisite, necessary	317
Exercises on the preceding Impersonal Verb	319
Additional Remarks on the general Pronoun <i>On</i>	322
Exercises on the preceding Pronoun	<i>ib.</i>
Recapitulatory Exercises on the Impersonal Verbs	323

SECT. V.

Of Participles	326
Rules and Exercises on the Participles Active and Passive	<i>ib.</i> to 336

SECT. VI.

Of Indeclinable Parts of Speech	336
---------------------------------	-----

Of Adverbs - - - - -	336
Table of Adverbs - - - - -	336, 339, 341, 343, 344, 346, 348, 350
Observation on the Adverb <i>Où</i> - - - - -	351
Table of Adverbs continued - - - - -	353, 355, 357, 358, 360

SECT. VII.

Of Prepositions - - - - -	362
Prepositions governing the Genitive or Ablative Cases - - - - -	<i>ib.</i> 363
Exercises on these Prepositions - - - - -	<i>ib.</i>
Prepositions governing the Dative Case - - - - -	365
Exercises on these Prepositions - - - - -	<i>ib.</i>
Prepositions requiring the Accusative Case - - - - -	366
Exercises upon these Prepositions - - - - -	367
Observations on some Prepositions, and Exercises upon them, <i>Above</i> , 369; <i>At</i> , 370, 371; <i>By</i> , 372, 373, 374; <i>For</i> , 375; <i>From</i> , <i>ib.</i> ; <i>In</i> , 376, 377; <i>On</i> or <i>Upon</i> , 378; <i>Over</i> , 377; <i>With</i> , 380, 381, 383; <i>Without</i> , 384.	

SECT. VIII.

Of Conjunctions - - - - -	384
Conjunctions requiring the Infinitive Mood, and Exercises upon them	385
Conjunctions requiring the Verb in the Indicative Mood, and Exercises upon them in continuation - - - - -	386
Conjunctions requiring the Future Tense - - - - -	390
Remark on the Conjunction <i>Que</i> , preceding an Infinitive or Subjunctive Mood - - - - -	391
Conjunctions requiring the Verb in the Subjunctive Mood, and Exercises upon them - - - - -	392
Remarks on the Conjunctions <i>Si</i> and <i>Que</i> - - - - -	395
Exercises on the preceding Conjunctions - - - - -	396
Verbs requiring the Conjunction <i>Que</i> , with the following Verb in the Subjunctive Mood - - - - -	398
Exercises on this and the preceding Rules - - - - -	398
Observations on the Verb <i>Vouloir</i> , to will, to wish - - - - -	401
Conjunctions <i>Qui</i> , <i>Que</i> or <i>Dont</i> , requiring the following Verb in the Subjunctive Mood, and Exercises upon them - - - - -	402

SECT. IX.

Of Interjections - - - - -	404
Table of Interjections - - - - -	<i>ib.</i>
Exercises on the preceding Interjections - - - - -	405
Remarks on the Particles <i>De</i> , <i>à</i> , <i>Pour</i> , when not expressed, and Exercises upon them - - - - -	<i>ib.</i>
Remarks on the Particle <i>De</i> , when it is to be expressed, and Exercises upon it - - - - -	407
Remarks on the Particle <i>à</i> , when it is to be expressed, and Exercises upon it - - - - -	410
Important Remarks on the Particles <i>De</i> , <i>à</i> , <i>Pour</i> , with Exercises	412

SECT. X.

Idiomatical Expressions	- - - - -	413
Of the Verb <i>Avoir</i> , to have, and Exercises upon it	- - - - -	<i>ib.</i>
Of <i>Etre</i> , to be, and Exercises upon it	- - - - -	416
Of <i>Faire</i> , to make, or to do, and Exercises upon it	- - - - -	417
Of Different Verbs, and Exercises upon them	- - - - -	419, 420
General and Promiscuous Exercises	- - - - -	422
Of the Understanding of Languages	- - - - -	<i>ib.</i>
Of Study	- - - - -	423

SECT. XI.

Scheme for Parsing a French Sentence	- - - - -	425
Treatise upon French Versification	- - - - -	428

ALPHABETICAL ARRANGEMENT

OF

IRREGULAR VERBS,

*With References to the Places in which they, or similar Verbs,
are conjugated in this Grammar ;*

WITH REMARKS.



A.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	<i>Page</i>
To Acquire	Acquérir		229
Avoid, ¹ or Shun	Fuir ²		237
Abstain	S'Abstenir	} Tenir	245
Attain to	Parvenir à		
Anticipate	Prévenir		
Assault	Assaillir	Tressaillir	247
be able	Pouvoir ³		256
Absolve	Absoudre		266
Abate	Rabattre	Battre	267
Acknowledge, or know again	{ Reconnaître	{ Connaître	273
Accrue			
Appear	Paraître		
Appear, to give evi- dence	{ Comparaitre		
Ask too much		Surfaire	Faire
Admit.	Admettre	Mettre	285
Anoint	Oindre ⁴	Craindre	278
Apprehend, or un- derstand	{ Comprendre	Prendre	295

1 *Eviter*, to avoid, and *Assister*, to assist, are regular verbs of the First Conjugation.

2 See Pret. page 295, and Imperfect of Subjunctive, page 296.

3 See page 256 and 257.

4 See Remark, page 294.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	
To Abstract	Abstraire	Traire	298
Assist ²	Secourir	Courir	231
Agree	Consentir	Mentir	238
be Acquainted with	Connaître		273
be Afraid	Craindre		278
fall Asleep	S'Endormir	Dormir	234
fall Asleep again	Se Rendormir		

B.

To Boil	Bouillir	} Bouillir ³	230
Boil again	Rebouillir		
Belie	Démentir	Mentir	238
Belong	Appartenir	} Tenir	245
Become of	Devenir ⁴		
Become fit, &c.	Convenir		
Befall	Survenir	} Battre	267
Beat	Battre		
Beat again	Rebattre		
Beat down (abate)	Rabattre		
Bray	Braire ⁵		269
Believe	Croire		278
Bake, or Boil, often	} Cuire	} Conduire	271
Englished to do			
Bake again, do again	Recuire		
Bring to, or Reduce to	Réduire	} Ecrire	281
Build ⁶ , or construct	Construire		
Banish ⁶	Proscrire	} Naître	293
be Born	Naître		
be Born again	Renaître		

C.

To Conquer	Conquérir	Acquérir	230
Concur	Concourir	Courir	231
Contradict or belie	Démentir	} Mentir	238
Consent	Consentir		
Cover	Couvrir	} Offrir	240
Cover again	Recouvrir		
Contain	Contenir	} Tenir	245
Come	Venir		
Come back	Revenir		
Clothe	Vêtir	} Servir	244
Come to, Befall	Survenir		
Clear a table	Desservir		

2 See note 1 in preceding page.

3 See page 231.

4 See Note*, page 247.

5 See pages 269 and 270.

6 *Bâtir*, to build, and *Bannir*, to banish, are regulars of the Second Conjugation.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	
To Conclude	Conclure		270
Conduct, Lead, or Carry	} Conduire	} Conduire	271
Construct, Build			
Circumcise	Circoncire ³	Confire	270
Chance, or Fall out	échoir ⁴	Déchoir	254
Contradict	Contredire ⁵	} Dire	280
Curse	Maudire		
Constrain	Contraindre	} Craindre	278
Compel			
Complain	Se Plaindre		
Come to life, as from an egg, &c.	} éclore ⁶		281
Counterfeit	Contrefaire	Faire	283
Compromise	Compromettre	} Mettre	285
Commit	Commettre		
Chide	Reprendre	Prendre	295
Conquer	Vaincre	} Vaincre	299
Convince	Convaincre		

D.

To Discourse	Discourir	Courir	232
Die	Mourir	} Mourir	239
be Dying	Se Mourir		
Detain	Détenir	} Tenir	245
Disagree	Disconvenir		
Discover	Découvrir	Offrir	240
Distribute	Départir	Mentir	238
Dissolve	Dissoudre ²	Absoudre	266
Drink	Boire		263
Debate	Débattre	Battre	267
Decay	Déchoir		254
Do an ill office	Desservir	Servir	244
Deduct	Déduire	} Conduire	271
Destroy	Détruire		
Do over, with mortar, &c.	} Enduire		
Decrease	Décroître	} Connaître	273
Disappear	Disparaître		
Describe	Décrire	Ecrire	281
Do	Faire	} Faire	283
Do again	Refaire		
Defeat	Défaire		

2 See Remark, page 267. 3 See Participle Pass. page 270.

4 See Participle Act. and Pass. page 255. 5 See Note, p. 281.

6 See page 281.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	
To Dissemble	Feindre	} Craindre	278
Dye	Teindre		
Draw, Design	Peindre		
Defer, Put off, or Deliver up	} Remettre	Mettre	285
Displease		Plaire	294
Distract		Traire	298

E.

To Entertain	Entretenir	Tenir	245
Exclude	Exclure	Conclure	270
Extract	Surfaire	Faire	283
Enjoin	Enjoindre	} Graindre	278
Enclose	} Enceindre		
Encompass			
Elect	Elire	Lire	284
Extract	Extraire	Traire	298

F.

To Fetch	Quérir ¹	Acquérir	230
Flee, or Fly	Fuir ²		237
Feel	Sentir	} Mentir	238
Foresee, or have a foresight of	Pressentir		
Foresee	Prévoir ³	Voir	260
Fit, or fit well	Seoir ⁵	Asseoir	253
Fight	Combattre	Battre	267
Fear	Craindre	} Craindre	278
Force	Contraindre		
Feign	Feindre	} Dire ⁶	280
Forbid	Interdire		
Foretell	Prédire		
Fall out, or Hap- pen	} échoir ⁷	Déchoir	255
Fry		Frيره ⁸	
Feed, or Graze	Paître	Connaître	273
Follow	Suivre	} Suivre	297
Follow from	S'Ensivre		
Fine-draw	Rentraire	Traire	298

G.

To Go	Aller	} Aller	227
Go away	S'en Aller		

1 See Note, page 230.

4 See page 283.

7 See page 255.

2 See page 233.

5 See page 253.

8 See page 284.

3 See N. B. page 260.

6 See Note, page 280.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	
To Gather	Cueillir	} Cueillir	233
Gather together	Recueillir		
Go out	Sortir	} Mentir	238
Grow	Croître		
Grow less	Décroître	} Connaître	273
Grow again	Recroître		
Graze	Paître	} Conduire	271
Glitter	Reluire ¹		
Glimpse, or to have a glimpse of	} Entrevoir	} Voir	259
Grind			
Grind again	Moudre	} Moudre	287
Give other clothes	Remoudre		
Gird	Revêtir		243
	Ceindre	Craindre	278

H.

To Hold	Tenir	} Tenir	245
Happen unexpect- edly	} Survenir		
Hear	Ouïr ²		241
Hatch	Eclorre ³		281
Hurt	Nuire ⁴	Conduire	271
Humor	Complaire	} Plaire	294
Hold one's tongue	Se Taire		
Hear of	} Apprendre	} Prendre	295
	} des nouvelles		

I.

To Incur	Encourir	Courir	231
Impart	Départir	Mentir	238
Infringe	Contrevenirà ¹	} Tenir	245
Intervene	Intervenir		
Invest	Revêtir		243
Interdict	Interdire ⁵	Dire	280
Inscribe	Inscrire	Ecrire	281
Induce	Induire	} Conduire	271
Instruct	Instruire		
Introduce	Introduire	} Prendre	295
Include	Comprendre		

J.

To Jut, Jet out, a term in Architecture only	} Saillir ⁶	Tressaillir	246
Join			
	Joindre	Craindre	278

1 See page 285. 2 See page 241. 3 See page 281. 4 See page 294.

5 See Note, page 280. 6 See page 247 and N. B. 247.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	
K.			
To Keep	Tenir		245
Know somebody	Connaître	} Connaître	273
Know again	Reconnaître		
Know something	Savoir ²		
L.			
To Lie	Mentir	} Mentir	238
give one the Lie	Démentir		
Lead	Conduire	} Conduire	271
Lead again	Reconduire		
Learn	Apprendre	Prendre	295
Leap for	Tressaillir		246
Laugh	Rire		296
Live	Vivre		300
M.			
To Maintain	{ Maintenir	} Tenir	245
	{ Soutenir		
Move	Mouvoir	} Mouvoir	255
Move, or Stir up	émouvoir		
Mistake, or be de-	{ Méconnaître, or	} Connaître Se Mé	273
ceived	{ prendre, Prendre		
Make	Faire	} Faire	283
Make up again	Refaire		
Mimic	Contrefaire		
Milk	Traire		298
N.			
To make a great Noise	{ Bruire ³		270
O.			
To Overtake	Atteindre	Craindre	278
Offer	Offrir	} Offrir	240
Open	Ouvrir		
Obtain	Obtenir	Tenir	245
do an ill Office	Desservir	Servir	244
Open as an Oyster	éclore ¹		281
Outlaw	Proscrire	Ecrire	281
Omit	Omettre	Mettre	285
Outlive	Survivre	Vivre	300
Oblige	Astreindre ²	Craindre	278

1 See page 281.

2 See Notes, page 267.

3 See page 270

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	
	P.		
To Prevent	Prévenir	} Tenir	245
Proceed	Provenir		
Prescribe	Prescrire	} Ecrire	281
Proscribe	Proscrire		
Prevail	Prévaloir ³	Valoir	258
Provide	Pourvoir ⁴	Voir	259
Pull down	Abattre	Battre	267
Preserve	Confire		272
Put out	éteindre	} Craindre	278
Pretend	Feindre		
Paint	Peindre		
Pity	Plaindre		
Part with	Se Défaire	Faire	283
Put	Mettre ⁵	} Mettre	285
Permit	Permettre		
Promise	Promettre ⁶		
Put back again	} Remettre		
Put off			
Prejudice	} Prévenir	Tenir	245
Prepossess			
Produce	Produire	Conduire	271
Pursue	Poursuivre	Suivre	297
Please	Plaire		294

R.

To Require	Requérir	Acquérir	230
get Rid of	Se Défaire	Faire	283
Run	Courir	} Courir	231
Run to	Accourir		
Run over	Parcourir		
have Recourse to	Recourir		
Run away	Fuir ¹		237
Retain	Retenir	}	
Return	Revenir		
Remember, or	} Se Souvenir ²	} Tenir	245
Remind			
Recollect	Se ressouve- nir	}	
Relieve	Subvenir		
Resent	Ressentir	} Mentir	238
Reply	Répartir		
Repent	Se Repentir		
Roar	Bruire ⁷		

1 See p. 237, and 238. Pret. and Imp.

2 See Note, † p. 248.

3 See p. 259.

4 See p. 260.

5 See Note, p. 285.

6 See Note, p. 286.

7 See p. 270.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	
To Resolve	Résoudre ⁴	Absoudre	266
Retract	{ Se Dédire ⁵	Dire	280
Recant			
Read	Lire	{ Lire	284
Read again	Relire		
Remove	Démètre	{ Mettre	285
Resign	Se Démètre		
Rise	{ Naître	{ Naître	293
Revive } as flower			
Rebuke	Reprendre	Prendre	295
Reduce	Réduire	Conduire	271
Restrain	Restreindre	{ Craindre	278
Reach	Atteindre		
Revive	{ Revivre	Vivre	300
Recover			

S.

To Succour	Secourir	Courir	231
Sleep	Dormir	{ Dormir	233
make Sleep	Endormir		
Shun	Fuir		237
Suffer	Souffrir	Offrir	240
Serve	Servir		244
Support	Soutenir	{ Tenir	245
Suit	Convenir		
Start, Startle	Tressaillir		246
Stir up	émouvoir	Mouvoir	255
See	Voir	{ Voir	259
See again	Revoir		
Solve	Soudre ¹	Absoudre	266
Sew	{ Coudre	{ Coudre	274
Stitch			
Sew again	Recoudre	{ Moudre	287
Sharpen	Emoudre		
Set out	Partir	{ Mentir	238
Set out again	Repartir		
be Sensible of	Ressentir	{ Battre	267
Smell	Sentir		
Struggle	Se Débattre	{ Asseoir	251
Sit down	Asseoir ²		
Sit down again	Se Rasseoir	{ Dire	280
Supersede	Surseoir ³		
Say	Dire	{ Dire	280
Say again	Redire ⁵		
Slander	{ Médire		
Speak ill of			

1 See p. 267.

4 See p. 267.

2 See p. 252.

5 See Note*, p. 280.

3 See p. 253.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	
To Shut, or close	Clore	} Eclore	281
Shut, or	} Enclorre ⁵		
Surround with walls, &c.			
Subscribe	Souscrire	Ecrire	281
Satisfy	Satisfaire	Faire	283
Shine	Luire ⁶	Conduire	271
Submi	Soumettre	Mettre	285
Surprise	Surprendre	Prendre	295
Smile	Sourire	Rire	296
Seduce	Séduire	Conduire	271
Suffice, or	} Suffire ¹	Confire	272
be Sufficient			
Seem	Paraître	Connaître	273
Subtract	Soustraire	Traire	298
T.			
To Tell	Dire	} Dire	280
Tell again	Redire		
Transcribe	Transcrire	Ecrire	281
Turn out	Démètre	} Mettre	285
Transmit	Transmettre		
Take	Prendre	} Prendre	295
Take again	Reprendre		
Translate	Traduire	Conduire	271
Throw down	Abattre	Battre	267
U.			
To Unsew	Découdre	Coudre	274
Use, or make Use of	Se Servir	Servir	244
Uncover	Découvrir	Offrir	240
Unsay	Se Dédire ²	Dire	280
Undo	Défaire	} Faire	283
Undo again	Redéfaire		
Understand	Comprendre	} Prendre	295
Unlearn	Désapprendre		
Undertake	Entreprendre		
V.			
To Vanquish	Vaincre ³		299
W.			
To Welcome	Accueillir	Cueillir	232
be Worth	Valoir		258
Wish, or be Willing	Vouloir ⁴		261
Write	écrire	} Ecrire	281
Write again	Récrire		
Whet	Emoudre	Moudre	287

1 See p. 297.

2 See Note*, p. 280.

3 See Note, p. 299.

4 See p. 262, 263.

5 See p. 281.

6 See p. 285.

An Explanation of the Abbreviations made use of in the following work.

m.	Noun masculine.
f.	Noun feminine.
pl.	Plural.
adj.	Noun adjective.
pro	Pronoun.
v.	Verb.
p.act.	Participle active.
p.p.	Participle passive.
p.	Preposition.
adv.	Adverb.
c.	Conjunction.
int.	Interjection.
∞	The English word that has this mark underneath, is not to be expressed in French.

The figures, ^{1, 2, 3,} &c. direct to the arrangement of the words in the French sentence.

Two words having the same figure are expressed by the French word placed under one of them.

Two or three words between parentheses (), are expressed by the French under them, or have been previously expressed.

FRENCH ALPHABET.

Roman letters		Italic letters.		Old Pro	New Pro.
A	a	<i>A</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>ah</i>	<i>ah</i>
B	b	<i>B</i>	<i>b</i>	<i>bay</i>	<i>be†</i>
C	c	<i>C</i>	<i>c</i>	<i>say</i>	<i>ke and ce</i>
D	d	<i>D</i>	<i>d</i>	<i>day</i>	<i>de</i>
E	e	<i>E</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>a</i>
F	f	<i>F</i>	<i>f</i>	<i>eff</i>	<i>fe</i>
G	g	<i>G</i>	<i>g</i>	<i>jay*</i>	<i>ghe and ge</i>
H	h	<i>H</i>	<i>h</i>	<i>ash</i>	<i>he</i>
I	i	<i>I</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ee</i>	<i>ee</i>
J	j	<i>J</i>	<i>j</i>	<i>jee*</i>	<i>je*</i>
K	k	<i>K</i>	<i>k</i>	<i>kah</i>	<i>kah</i>
L	l	<i>L</i>	<i>l</i>	<i>ell</i>	<i>le</i>
M	m	<i>M</i>	<i>m</i>	<i>emm</i>	<i>me</i>
N	n	<i>N</i>	<i>n</i>	<i>enn</i>	<i>ne</i>
O	o	<i>O</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
P	p	<i>P</i>	<i>p</i>	<i>pay</i>	<i>pe</i>
Q	q	<i>Q</i>	<i>q</i>	<i>ku†</i>	<i>ke</i>
R	r	<i>R</i>	<i>r</i>	<i>airr</i>	<i>re</i>
S	s	<i>S</i>	<i>s</i>	<i>ess</i>	<i>se and ze</i>
T	t	<i>T</i>	<i>t</i>	<i>tay</i>	<i>te</i>
U	u	<i>U</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>u†</i>	<i>u†</i>
V	v	<i>V</i>	<i>v</i>	<i>vay</i>	<i>ve</i>
X	x	<i>X</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>ceks</i>	<i>ke and ze</i>
Y	y	<i>Y</i>	<i>y</i>	<i>ee graik</i>	<i>ee graik</i>
Z	z	<i>Z</i>	<i>z</i>	<i>zaid</i>	<i>ze</i>

* The two consonants *g* and *j* are sounded in the alphabet like *s* in *pleasure* or *z* in *azure*.

† *U* has no similar sound in English, and must be learned from a master

‡ In the new pronunciation, *e* after each consonant is sounded as in the English word *barber*, faintly sounding the *r*.

A PRACTICAL FRENCH GRAMMAR.

SECTION I.

GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing in any language with propriety ; or, it is the art of rightly expressing our thoughts by words.

Grammar is of two kinds, general and particular. Universal grammar considers language in itself, explains the principles which are alike common to every tongue, and distinguishes, with precision, between those particulars which are essential and those which are only accidental. Particular grammar applies these common principles to a particular language, and furnishes certain rules and observations which are, either mediately or immediately, deducible from its common principles.

A grammar of the French tongue must be formed agreeably to the established usage, and those particular modes of expression, to which custom has given its sanction. It has therefore for its object, in common with all other grammars, the consideration of letters, syllables, words, sentences, &c.

ALPHABET ;—is composed of twenty-five letters, of which words are formed ; five of them, *a, e, i, o, u*, are distinguished by the name of vowels, which form a perfect sound of themselves. The twenty other letters, *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, y, z*, are called consonants, and cannot be pronounced but when joined with vowels, except *y*, which has often the sound of double *i*, and of which some make a sixth vowel.

VOWELS, three sorts ; **SIMPLE**, *a, e, i, o, u*, which are subdivided into short and long, the sound of which is more prolonged and deeper

COMPOUND, of two or three simple vowels, as *ai, ei, oi, ui, au, eu, ou, æ, æu* : *ai* has the sound of *e*, mute in *faisant*,* and the sound of *é* close in *je lirai*, as well as in all the verbs in the first person singular of the future.

NASAL, when they are joined to *m*, or *n*, and when they form only one sound, as *an, am, en, em, in, im, ain, ein*.

DIPHTHONG ;—Is the union of several vowels, the pronunciation of which causes two sounds to be heard by a single impulse of the voice. *Dieu, yeux, niais, pion, ouïe, mien*, are diphthongs : yet, *Caen, eau, paon, craie*, are not so, because they are pronounced *Can, ô, pan, crê*.

ACCENTS, three sorts ;—The acute ´, the grave ` , and the circumflex ^, serve to modify the sound of the vowels : the office of the latter is to render long the vowels which are affected by it ; thus pronounce *â, ê, î, ô, û*, by a greater opening of the mouth, almost as if it were *aa, ee, ii, oo, uu*. It is thus we write *âge* instead of *aage* ; this is also the reason why it is placed over the vowels that were formerly followed by an *s*, which has been dropped, since it is no longer pronounced ; as in *asne, beste*, in which the suppression of the *s*, requires that we should write *âne, bête*, in order to show that *â* and *ê* are long.

KINDS of E, five ;—TWO KINDS, *Mute* : 1st.—One whose dull sound is almost null in *brave, encore*, which are pronounced no otherwise than *brav, encor*.

2d.—The other, the sound of which, although obscure, can be prolonged, nearly as the sound of *eu*, in *je, me, te, revenir, redemander*.

3d.—CLOSE, by the accent *Acute*, in *bonté* ; also *ez* is equivalent to *é*, as in *voyez, lisez, touchez, &c* -

4th.—OPEN, by the accent *Grave*, in *accès, succès, nêfle*, which accent is suppressed in *greffe, sans cesse, abbesse*.

5th.—VERY OPEN, by the accent *Circumflex*, in *être, tête, tempête*, which were formerly pronounced and written *estre, teste, &c*.

* See *Faire*, page 283.

MIDDLING, followed by a double consonant, and the sound of which is between that of *é* close and *è* open, in *maisonnette*, *musette*, *poulette*.

The DIÆRESIS, (¨)—Which is placed over the vowels *ë*, *ï*, *ü*, and causes them to be pronounced separately from the preceding vowel, as in *aïeul*, *Saül*, and may be ranked among the accents.

The CEDILLA, (¸)—A little dash, which is put under the *c*, is also a sort of accent, since it serves to modify the hard pronunciation which it would otherwise have before the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, and to change it into that of *S*; it is thus we pronounce it in *français*, *façon*, *reçu*.

The APOSTROPHE, (') ;—Is only a comma put over the place which the vowel *e* or *a* ought to occupy, which is suppressed when the word following begins with a vowel or an *h* not aspirate ;* thus, instead of *le esprit*, *la ambi-*

*AN ALPHABETICAL LIST

of such French words as have their initial *h* mute.

HABILE,	CLEVER	héliotrope,	turn-sol
habilement,	cleverly	hémisphère,	hemisphere
habileté,	cleverness	hémistiche,	hemistich
habiller,	to clothe	hémorrhagie,	bloody-flux
habillement,	dress	hémorrhoides,	piles
habit,	a coat	hépatique,	hepatic
habiter,	to inhabit	herbage,	herbage, pasture
habitable,	inhabitable	herbe,	herb or grass
habitant,	inhabitant	herboriste,	herbalist
habitude,	custom	héréditaire,	hereditary
habituel,	habitual	hérésie,	heresy
habituer,	to use	hérétique,	heretic
haleine,	breath	héritage	inheritance
hameçon,	fishing hook	hériter,	to inherit
harmonie,	harmony	héritier,	an heir
hebdomadaire,	weekly	héritière,	an heiress
Hébraïque,	Hebraick	hermine,	ermine
Hébreu,	Hebrew	hermite,	an hermit
hécatombe,	an hecatomb	hermitage,	hermitage
négre ;	negira	héroïne,*	an heroine
hélas !	alas !	héroïque,	heroical
Hélicon,	Helicon	héroïsme,	heroism

* The *h* in all this family is only aspirated in *héros*

tion, and *le homme*, we must pronounce and write *l'esprit* *l'ambition*, *l'homme*. But when the *h* is aspirate, the arti-

hésiter,	to hesitate	hostie,	host or victim
hésitation,	hesitation	hostilité,	hostility
heur,	luck	hôte,	landlord
heure,	hour	hôtesse,	landlady
heureux,	happy	hôtel,	a hotel or great house
heureusement,	happily	hôtelier,	inn-keeper
hexagone,	an hexagon	hôtellerie,	an inn
hémètre,	hexameter	huile,	oil
hiatus,	hiatus, a gap	huilier,	oil-cruet
hier,	yesterday	huissier,	usher or tip-staff
hiéroglyphe,	hieroglyphic	hûître,	oyster
hirondelle,	a swallow	humain,	humane
histoire,	history	humainement,	humanely
historien,	historian	humaniser,	to civilize
historique,	historical	humanité,	humanity
histrion,	a buffoon	humble,	humble
hiver,	winter	humblement,	humbly
hiverner,	to winter	humectation,	moistening
holocauste,	burnt sacrifice	humecter,	to moisten
hombre, (jeu)	ombre	humeur,	humour
homélie,	an homily	humide,	damp, moist
homicide,	an homicide	humidité,	humidity
hommage,	homage	humiliant,	mortifying
homme,	man	humiliation,	humiliation
honnête,	honest	humilier,	to humble
honnêtement,	honestly	humilité,	humility
honnêteté,	honesty	hyacinthe,	hyacinth
honneur,	honour	hydre,	hydra
honorable,	honorable	hydromel,	mead
honoraire	honorary	hydropique,	hydropic
honorer,	to honour	hydropisie,	dropsy
hôpital,	hospital	hymen,	hymen
horizon,	horizon	hymne,	hymn
horloge,	a town clock	hyperbole,	hyperbole
horloger,	watch-maker	hypocondre,	hypocondriac
hormis,	except	hypocrisie,	hypocrisy
hroscope,	horoscope	hypocrite,	hypocrite
horreur,	horror	hypothèque,	mortgage
horrible,	horrid	hypothéquer,	to mortgage
horriblement,	horribly	hypothèse,	hypothesis
hospitalier,	hospitable	hysope,	hyssop
hospitalité,	hospitality	hystérique,	hysterical

In a familiar discourse, the letter *h* is not aspirated in the following words, viz. *Hanovre*, *Hollande*, and *Hongrie*, when either of them is preceded by the particle *de*; for though we always say *le Hanovre*, *la Hollande* and *la Hongrie*, yet it is usual to say and write *l'Electorat d'Hanovre*, *la Reine d'Hongrie*, *la toile d'Hollande*, and the like. As to other national and proper names, the initial *h* is aspirated in most

cle remains entire ; we must not say *l'héros*, but pronounce *le héros, du héros, au héros*.

VARIATION IN THE PRONUNCIATION OF CONSONANTS ;—*C* is pronounced hard like *k* before the vowels *a, o, u*, in *cocarde, cube* ; like *s* before *e, i*, in *cécité*. There are even some words in which it is pronounced like *g*, as in *second*, &c. *G* is pronounced hard before *a, o, u* ; like *j*, before *e, i* ; when we wish to modify its pronunciation before *a, o, u*, an *e* is placed after it, as in, *il gagea, nageoire* ; when on the contrary we wish to have it pronounced hard before *a, o, u*, an *u* is placed after it, as in, *guérir, guide*. *H* is of two sorts, aspirated as in *hair, envahir* ; then the consonants by which it is preceded are not sounded ; it is called mute, when it is not pronounced at all, as in *homme, héroïne*. The *h* of *héros* is aspirate, that of its derivatives is not so. *Q* when not the last letter of a word, as in *cinq*, is never used without being followed by *u*, which gives it the pronunciation of *k*, as in *qui, quelconque* ; yet in several words *u* has retained its ancient sound of *ou*, and then *qu* is pronounced like *kou* as in *aquatique, équation*. *S* is pronounced hard in *salut, sénat* ; but between two vowels, it takes the pronunciation of *z*, as in *viser, raison*, &c. *T* followed by *i* and another vowel, is pronounced like *c*, as in *partial, partiel, portion* ; but if *i* is preceded by *s* or *x*, or if it is at the beginning of a word, it is pronounced hard, as in *tirer, question, mixtion*. *X* is pronounced like *cs* in *fixer, taxer* ; like *gz* in *examen, exemple* ; and like *s* in *six, dix, soixante*. *Ch* is generally pronounced like *sh*, as in *chat* ; yet it is pronounced often like *k* : *Christ, orchestre, bacchante*, are examples. *Rh, th, ph*, are pronounced like *r, t, f*, in *rhume, thème, philosophe* which are pronounced *rume, tème, filosofè*.

A SYLLABLE, whether composed of one or more letters, requires, in the pronunciation, no more than a single impulse of the voice : ex. *ba, me, moi*, &c.

A WORD may consist of one syllable, or of many compacted into one meaning ; for, a word is the smallest part of speech which is in itself significant : ex. *mon, my* ; *livre*, book, &c.

of them ; as in *Hainaut, Hambourgh, Havanne, Henri*, &c. but in *Hamilton, Harcourt, Hector, Hélène, Hercule, Hérode, Homère, Horace*, and *Hyppolite*, it is mute.

A SENTENCE, OR PHRASE, is an assemblage of words arranged in their proper order, forming a sense either more or less complete : ex.

<i>Je suis votre ami,</i>	I am your friend.
<i>J'écrivis hier à votre tante,</i>	I yesterday wrote to your aunt.

A PERIOD may consist of two or three sentences joined together, so that they depend on one another to form a complete sense. Each of the sentences forming part of a period is called a member of the period : ex.

<i>Les grands hommes sont rares ;</i>	Great men are scarce ; we
<i>on doit les respecter, et l'on</i>	ought to respect them,
<i>devrait toujours travailler à</i>	and constantly endeavour
<i>se rendre semblable à eux,</i>	to resemble them.

A DISCOURSE, OR SPEECH, is an assemblage of sentences (or phrases) and periods, joined together, and arranged according to the rules of the language.

KINDS OF WORDS.

There are, in the French tongue, nine different sorts of words, which are generally called the nine parts of speech, viz.

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. L'ARTICLE, | ARTICLE. |
| 2. LE NOM ET ADJECTIF, | NOUN AND ADJECTIVE. |
| 3. LE PRONOM, | PRONOUN. |
| 4. LE VERBE, | VERB. |
| 5. LE PARTICIPE, | PARTICIPLE. |
| 6. L'ADVERBE, | ADVERB. |
| 7. LA PREPOSITION, | PREPOSITION. |
| 8. LA CONJONCTION, | CONJUNCTION. |
| 9. L'INTERJECTION, | INTERJECTION. |

Five of them are declinable ; that is to say, the radical part of the word remaining the same, the other parts, but especially the termination, will admit of several variations. These declinable words are, the article, noun, and adjective, pronoun, verb, and participle.

The four last, as they never vary their terminations, are therefore called indeclinable.

GENERAL EXPLANATION.

The ARTICLES are certain minute words, which, joined to nouns, determine the extent of their signification, and which, in French, denote their gender, number, and case, corresponding to the English words, *the, of the, from the, and to the*. These in French, are

<i>Le, la, les,</i>	The.
<i>De, du, de la, des,</i>	Of or from the.
<i>A, au, à la, aux,</i>	To the.

The NOUN, in general, is a word which is used to name or qualify everything which is the object of discourse : ex.

<i>Papier,</i>	Paper.	<i>Bon,</i>	Good.
<i>Plume,</i>	Pen.	<i>Petit,</i>	Little.
<i>Pain,</i>	Bread.	<i>Mauvais,</i>	Bad, &c.

The PRONOUN is a word commonly substituted in the place of the noun, to avoid its too frequent repetition :

J'ai vu M. votre père, et lui ai parlé, I saw your father, and spoke to him.

In this instance, the word *lui*, to him, is put to avoid the repetition of the word *père*, father.

The VERB is a word which either expresses the state of the subject, or an action done by the subject, or the action received or suffered by the subject : ex.

<i>Mon frère est malade,</i>	My brother is ill.
<i>Ma sœur écrit une lettre,</i>	My sister writes a letter.
<i>Votre cousine est punie,</i>	Your cousin is punished.

The verb is varied by modes, tenses, persons, and numbers.

The PARTICIPLE partakes both of the nature of the verb and the noun adjective : ex.

<i>Ayant,</i>	Having.	<i>Aimé,</i>	Loved.
<i>Donnant,</i>	Giving.	<i>Puni,</i>	Punished, &c

The ADVERB is sometimes joined to the noun, but more frequently to the verb, whence it derives its name. The use of the adverb is, to determine the signification of the

noun or verb, or expresses some particular modification or circumstance of the action or quality : ex.

Je vous aime sincèrement, I love you *sincerely*.
Venez demain, Come *to-morrow*.

In these instances the words *sincerely* and *to-morrow* are adverbs.

The PREPOSITION is a word which is put before the noun or pronoun, and it always governs the word before which it is placed : ex.

Chez mon ami, At my friend's house.
Devant moi, Before me, &c.

The CONJUNCTION serves to connect the several parts of a discourse : ex. *et*, and ; *car*, for ; *mais*, but, &c.

The INTERJECTION is a word which expresses the different affections or passions of the soul : ex.

Hélas ! mon Dieu ! Oh ! my God ! &c.

A more particular delineation of these nine parts of speech, and their use in the composition of a sentence, or period, will be the subject of the following sections.

SECTION II.

OF NOUNS.

NOUNS are divided into substantives and adjectives. A NOUN SUBSTANTIVE expresses a thing subsisting by itself, and can make a complete sense independent of any other word : ex. *Dieu*, God ; *roi*, king ; *maison*, house, &c.

A NOUN SUBSTANTIVE is either common, collective, or proper.

A COMMON NOUN is applicable to all beings or things of the same kind : ex. *homme*, man ; *roi*, king ; *ville*, town ; *table*, table, &c.

A COLLECTIVE NOUN is expressive of many particulars ; yet, as these particulars are all united in the mind, and comprehended under one general idea, they may therefore be conceived as one individual, and, without any impropriety, expressed in the singular number : ex. *peuple*, people ; *forêt*, forest ; *armée* army, &c.

A PROPER NOUN is applicable to one person or thing only, ex. *Pierre*, Peter ; *Londres*, London, &c.

N. B. A noun is always a Substantive when we cannot, with propriety, add to it the word *personne*, person, or the word *chose*, thing.

A NOUN ADJECTIVE is used to express the quality, color, form or quantity, of the substance to which it belongs ; and is so called because its meaning cannot be ascertained without being joined to its proper substantive, with which it must also agree in gender, number and case ; ex. *bon*, good ; *aimable*, lovely ; *rouge*, red ; *jaune*, yellow ; *rond*, round ; *carré*, square ; *un*, one ; *deux*, two ; *trois*, three, &c.

N. B. The noun is always adjective when we can add to it the word *personne* or *chose*, person or thing.

In NOUNS, four things must be considered, viz.

<i>Les Articles,</i>	The Articles.
<i>Les Genres,</i>	The Genders.
<i>Les Nombres,</i>	The Numbers.
<i>Les Cas,</i>	The Cases.

ARTICLES.

There are three sorts of Articles, viz.

<i>L'Article défini,</i>	The Article definite
<i>L'Article partitif,</i>	The Article partitive.
<i>L'Article indéfini,</i>	The Article indefinite

The Article must always agree with the noun in gender and number.

The DEFINITE ARTICLE is so called, because it means the whole of the object to which it is applied.

SINGULAR.

Le, for the masculine, before nouns, beginning with a consonant or H aspirated, ex. *le roi*, the king ; *le héros*, the hero, &c.

La, for the feminine : ex. *la reine*, the queen, &c.

L', with an elision for both genders, before nouns singular beginning with a vowel or H not aspirated : ex. *l'enfant*, the child ; *l'homme*, the man, &c.

PLURAL.

Les for both genders, whether the noun begin with a consonant or a vowel : ex. *les rois*, the kings ; *les reines*, the queens ; *les enfants*, the children, &c.

The PARTITIVE ARTICLE means only a part of the object, the English word *SOME* being always expressed or implied

SINGULAR.

Du for the masc.

De la, for the fem.

These two articles are used before nouns beginning with a consonant or *H* aspirated : ex
du pain, some bread ;
de la viande, some meat.

De l', for both genders beginning with a vowel or an *H* not aspirated ; ex. *de l'encre*, some ink.

PLURAL.

Des, for both genders : ex. *des amis*, some friends.

The INDEFINITE ARTICLE is *de* or *d'*, of, from, and à, to.

This article is used, without distinction, before nouns masculine and feminine in both numbers. Proper names, and the greater part of the pronouns, are declined with it

Some grammarians admit of a fourth article, viz. *un*, for the masculine, and *une* for the feminine, in English *a* or *an*; but it may be observed, that it is always declined with the indefinite article, and therefore takes the nature of a noun adjective.

GENDERS AND NUMBERS.

There are two GENDERS, viz. the masculine and feminine. A noun is masculine when there is before it *le* or *un*, as *le* or *un livre*, the *or* a book. A noun is feminine when it is preceded by *la* or *une*, as *la* or *une plume*, the *or* a pen.

There are two NUMBERS, the singular and plural. The singular number speaks of one thing only, as *une table*, a table : the plural speaks of a more than one, as *des tables*, tables. There are some nouns that are never used but in the singular number : as,

1. The names of metals : ex. *or*, gold ; *argent*, silver ; *cuivre*, brass ; *plomb*, lead, &c

2. The names of virtues and vices : ex. *avarice*, avarice ; *charité*, charity ; *foi*, faith ; *haine*, hatred ; *orgueil*, pride ; *prodigalité*, prodigality, &c.
3. The names by which the five senses are denoted : ex. *la vue*, the sight ; *le goût*, the taste ; *l'odorat*, the smell ; *le toucher*, feeling ; *l'ouïe*, hearing.
4. Proper names, except when they are used metaphorically.
5. To the foregoing may be added the following, which are not reducible to any general rules :

<i>Artillerie</i> ,	artillery.	<i>Faim</i> ,	hunger.
<i>Attirail</i> ,	implements.	<i>Fumée</i> ,	smoke
<i>Bonheur</i> ,	happiness.	<i>Fuite</i> ,	flight.
<i>Colère</i> ,	anger.	<i>Gloire</i> ,	glory.
<i>Courroux</i> ,	wrath.	<i>Honte</i> ,	shame.
<i>Enfance</i> ,	infancy.	<i>Jeunesse</i> ,	youth.
<i>Lait</i> ,	milk.	<i>Salut</i> ,	safety.
<i>Miel</i> ,	honey.	<i>Soif</i> ,	thirst.
<i>Noblesse</i> ,	nobility.	<i>Sommeil</i> ,	sleep.
<i>Pauvreté</i> ,	poverty.	<i>Vieillesse</i> ,	old age.
<i>Sang</i> ,	blood.		

There are others which are never used but in the plural number only ; such as,

<i>Ancêtres</i> ,	ancestors.	<i>Atours</i> ,	apparel
<i>Ayeux</i> ,	forefathers.	<i>Ciseaux</i> ,	scissors
<i>Funérailles</i> ,	a funeral.	<i>Hardes</i> ,	clothes.
<i>Frais</i> ,	expense.	<i>Limites</i> ,	limits.
<i>Délices</i> ,	delight.	<i>Moeurs</i> ,	manners
<i>Dépens</i> ,	cost.	<i>Mouchettes</i> ,	snuffers.
<i>Entrailles</i> ,	entrails.	<i>Ténèbres</i> ,	darkness.
<i>Epousailles</i> ,	espousals.	<i>Vivres</i> ,	victuals.
<i>Fonts</i> ,	font.		

And, in general, those which, in English, admit of no singular.

In general, the plural number is formed by adding an *s* to the singular : ex.

Le père, the father ; *les pères*, the fathers.
La mère, the mother , *les mères*, the mothers, &c.

All nouns having their singular ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, admit of no variation in the plural : ex

Le fils, the son;
Une noix, a walnut;
Le nez, the nose;

les fils, the sons.
des noix, walnuts.
les nez, the noses.

EXCEPTIONS.

Nouns ending in *au*, *eau*, *eu*, *œu*, *ieu*, or *ou*, form their plural by *x*, instead of *s*: ex.

<i>Un chapeau</i> , a hat;	<i>des chapeaux</i> , hats.
<i>Un manteau</i> , a cloak;	<i>des manteaux</i> , cloaks.
<i>Un lieu</i> , a place;	<i>des lieux</i> , places.
<i>Un chou</i> , a cabbage;	<i>des choux</i> , cabbages.

The following differ from this rule, and their plural terminates in *s*: ex.

<i>Un matou</i> , a great cat;	<i>des matous</i> , great cats.
<i>Un sou</i> , a cent;	<i>des sous</i> , cents.
<i>Un trou</i> , a hole;	<i>des trous</i> , holes.
<i>Un licou</i> , a halter;	<i>des licous</i> , halters.
<i>Un clou</i> , a nail;	<i>des clous</i> , nails.
<i>Un écrou</i> , a nut;	<i>des écrous</i> , nuts.
<i>Un sapajou</i> , a sapajou;	<i>des sapajous</i> , sapajous.

Nouns ending in *al* and *ail* have their plural in *aux*: ex.

<i>Un animal</i> , a living creature;	<i>des animaux</i> , living creatures.
<i>Un cheval</i> , a horse;	<i>des chevaux</i> , horses.
<i>Un travail</i> , a work;	<i>des travaux</i> , works.

These only are excepted:

<i>Un bal</i> , a ball.	<i>Un portail</i> , a gateway.
<i>Détail</i> , account, retail.	<i>Epouvantail</i> , a scarecrow.
<i>Eventail</i> , a fan.	<i>Attirail</i> , baggage.
<i>Un gouvernail</i> , a helm.	<i>Camail</i> , a priest's cloak.
<i>Un sérail</i> , a seraglio.	<i>Régail</i> , a treat.

Which form their plural in *s*.

Nouns of more than one syllable (polysyllables) ending in *nt*, most generally form their plural by changing the *t* into *s*: as,

<i>Enfant</i> , a child;	<i>enfants</i> , children.
<i>Commandement</i> , 'command;	<i>commandements</i> , commands.

But nouns of one syllable only (monosyllables) preserve the *t*, and form their plural by adding *s*: as,

<i>Dent</i> tooth;	<i>dents</i> , teeth.
<i>Pont</i> bridge;	<i>ponts</i> , bridges.

The substantives terminated by *ant* and by *ent* must always and absolutely conserve in the plural the *t* of the singular. It is a gross mistake to use otherwise, although the best grammars say that use permits us to suppress this *t*.

The same rule must be applied to the adjectives, the termination of which is in *ant* or *ent*. (Nap. Landais, page 252.)

Tout, adj. all, makes *tous*, in its plural masculine ; *toute* in the feminine gender sing. and *toutes* in the plural.

The following are not conformable to any established rule.

<i>Aïeul</i> , grandfather ;	<i>aïeux</i> , grandfathers.
<i>Bétail</i> , cattle ;	<i>bestiaux</i> , cattle.
<i>Ciel</i> , heaven ;	<i>cieux</i> , heavens.
<i>Œil</i> , eye ;	<i>yeux</i> , eyes.

Except { *des ciels de lit*,* testers of a bed.
 { *des œils de bœuf*, ovals.

'There are in French several compound words like the last two, which require some attention from the learner, in the formation of their plural, the difficulty of which may soon be removed by means of reflection ; for example :

A noun being composed of a substantive and an adjective, united by a hyphen, both admit of the plural formation : as,

<i>Un gentil-homme</i> , a noble- man ;	<i>des gentils-hommes</i> , noble- men.
--	--

A noun compounded of two substantives and a preposition, united by hyphens, the first only in French, which is generally the last in English, admits of the plural formation : as,

<i>Un arc-en-ciel</i> , a rainbow ;	<i>des arcs-en ciel</i> , rainbows.
<i>Un chef-d'œuvre</i> , a master- piece ;	<i>des chefs-d'œuvre</i> , master- pieces.

N. B. Some of these French compound words are sometimes rendered in English by one word, in which case the formation of the plural in the French is still the same : as,

<i>Un cul-de-sac</i> , an alley (with- out egress ;)	<i>des culs-de-sac</i> , alleys.
---	----------------------------------

Nouns composed of a verb or a preposition and a substantive, the substantive only admits of the plural formation : as,

<i>Un avant-toit</i> , eaves ;	<i>des avant-toits</i> , eaves.
<i>Un casse-noisette</i> , a nut- cracker ;	<i>des casse-noisettes</i> , nut-crack- ers.

* This term is growing obsolete : it is better to say, *un fond de lit*.

<i>Un garde-fou</i> , a rail ;	<i>des garde-fous</i> , rails, &c.
<i>Monseigneur</i> , my lord ;	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{make in the} \\ \text{plural,} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \textit{Messeigneurs}, \text{ my lords.} \\ \textit{Messieurs}, \text{ gentlemen.} \\ \textit{Mesdames}, \text{ ladies.} \\ \textit{Mesdemoiselles}, \text{ misses.} \end{array}$
<i>Monsieur</i> , Mr. or gent ;	
<i>Madame</i> , Mrs. or Madam ;	
<i>Mademoiselle</i> , miss ;	

CASES.

There are six cases, viz.

1. <i>Le Nominatif</i> ,	Nominative.
2. <i>Le Génitif</i> ,	Genitive.
3. <i>Le Datif</i> ,	Dative.
4. <i>L'Accusatif</i> ,	Accusative.
5. <i>Le Vocatif</i> ,	Vocative.
6. <i>L'Ablatif</i> ,	Ablative.

THE NOMINATIVE and ACCUSATIVE cases have exactly the same form, and are always declined with the same article ; the only difference between them arises from their different positions in the sentence.

In the natural construction, the nominative always precedes the verb, and the accusative follows it. The nominative is the *subject* of the sentence, and the accusative is the *object* to which it refers : ex.

Le roi aime le peuple ; The king loves the people.

In order to know the nominative from the accusative, I ask, Who loves the people? THE KING (which is the answer) is the subject, and consequently the nominative. Whom or what does the king love? The answer is, THE PEOPLE, which is the object, and therefore the accusative.

THE GENITIVE and ABLATIVE are declined with the same article, but the first is always preceded by another word in which it depends : as,

La porte de la chambre ; The chamber door, that is,
the door of the chamber.

La maison de mon père ; My father's house, &c.
or it is governed by a preposition, as,

Près du feu ; Near the fire, &c.

The last is always put after nouns or verbs expressing division, partition, or separation ; and after some prepositions. The genitive is known by the articles *de*, *du*, *de la*,

des, of *or* of the. Sometimes the article is not expressed in English, as may be seen in the sentences before mentioned. The ablative is known by the article *de*, *du*, *de la*, *des*, from *or* from the.

The DATIVE shows to whom the thing spoken of, is given, or to what it is attributed : as,

Donnez cette pomme à mon frère; Give that apple to my brother.

This case is known by the articles *à*, *au*, *à la*, *aux*, to *or* to the.

The VOCATIVE is used only for calling or naming the person to whom the speech is addressed : as,

Ami, qui êtes-vous ? Friend, who are you ?

DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS.

All changes in nouns are formed by numbers and cases To decline a noun, therefore, is to express its several variations ; and, under these variations, to point out its different significations.

Some short examples are added to the nouns, that learners may more easily understand what has been said respecting the cases.

Declension of the Article Definite Le (the,) before Nouns masculine beginning with a consonant or an H aspirated.

SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>Le Prince,</i>	The prince.
<i>Le prince est généreux,</i>	The prince is generous.
Gen. <i>Du prince,</i>	Of the prince.
<i>Les vertus du prince,</i>	The virtues of the prince , or, the prince's virtues.
Dat. <i>Au prince,</i>	To the prince.
<i>Parler au prince,</i>	To speak to the prince.
Acc. <i>Le prince,</i>	The prince.
<i>Aimer le prince,</i>	To love the prince.
Voc. <i>O prince,</i>	O prince.
Abl. <i>Du prince,</i>	From the prince.
<i>Recevoir des lettres du prince,</i>	To receive letters from the prince.

Declension of the Article Definite La (the,) before Nouns feminine beginning with a Consonant, or H aspirated

SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>La Princesse,</i>	The princess.
<i>La princesse est aimable,</i>	The princess is amiable.
Gen. <i>De la princesse,</i>	Of the princess.
<i>Les regards de la princesse,</i>	The looks of the princess, or, the princess's looks.
Dat. <i>A la princesse,</i>	To the princess.
<i>Donner à la princesse,</i>	To give to the princess.
Acc. <i>la princesse,</i>	The princess.
<i>Imitez la princesse,</i>	Imitate the princess
Voc. <i>O princesse,</i>	O princess.
Abl. <i>De la princesse,</i>	From the princess.
<i>Etre séparé de la princesse,</i>	To be separated from the princess.

Declension of the Article Definite L' (the) for both genders, before Nouns beginning with a vowel, or an H not aspirated.

SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>L'enfant,</i>	The child.
<i>L'enfant est timide,</i>	The child is fearful.
Gen. <i>De l'enfant,</i>	Of the child.
<i>Le tempérament de l'enfant,</i>	The child's temper ; or, the temper of the child.
Dat. <i>A l'enfant,</i>	To the child.
<i>Attribuer à l'enfant,</i>	To attribute to the child.
Acc. <i>L'enfant,</i>	The child.
<i>Admirer l'enfant,</i>	To admire the child.
Voc. <i>O enfant,</i>	O child.
Abl. <i>De l'enfant,</i>	From the child
<i>S'éloigner de l'enfant,</i>	To go away from the child

The plural of these nouns, whether they begin with a consonant or a vowel *H aspirated or not aspirated, is declined, in both genders, by the article *les* (the.)

Nom. <i>Les rois.</i>	The kings.
<i>Les rois commandent,</i>	The king's command.
Gen. <i>Des rois.</i>	Of the kings.

* See the list of words beginning with an *h* not aspirated, page 29.

<i>L'ordre des rois,</i>	The order of the kings ; or. the kings' order.
Dat. <i>Aux rois,</i>	To the kings.
<i>Envoyer aux rois.</i>	To send to the kings.
Acc. <i>Les rois,</i>	The kings.
<i>Respectez les rois,</i>	Honour the kings.
Voc. <i>O rois,</i>	O kings.
Abl. <i>Des rois,</i>	From the kings.
<i>Etre loin des rois,</i>	To be far from the kings

RECAPITULATION OF THE ARTICLE DEFINITE.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL.
	Mas. Fem. Mas. & Fem.	Mas. & Fem.
Nom.&Ac.	<i>Le, la, l' ;</i>	<i>Les, the.</i>
Gen.&Ab.	<i>Du, de la, de l' ;</i>	<i>Des, of or from the.</i>
Dat.	<i>Au, à la, à l' ;</i>	<i>Aux, to the.</i>

The *definite article* must be placed, in French, before all nouns used in a *general sense*, or denoting a whole species of objects, and before names of countries and provinces, though the English admit of no article in this case : ex.

<i>L'homme est mortel,</i>	Man is mortal.
<i>Le Danemarck, la Suède et l'Angleterre, sont les trois royaumes du nord,</i>	Denmark, Sweden, and England, are the three northern kingdoms.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE

I	hate	idleness.	--	Virtue is	estimable.	--
<i>Je, pro.</i>	<i>hais, v.</i>	<i>paresse, f.</i>		<i>vertu, f. est, v.</i>	<i>estimable, adj.</i>	
Gold is	preferable	to silver.	----	Do you ²		
<i>Or, m.</i>	<i>préférable, adj.</i>	<i>argent, m.</i>		<i>vous, pro.</i>		
prefer ¹	England	to France ?		Corn grows		
<i>préférez, v.</i>	<i>Angleterre, f.</i>	<i>France, f.</i>		<i>Blé, m. croît, v</i>		
for men,	and	grass		for cattle.	---	Love
<i>pour, p. homme, m. et, c.</i>	<i>herbe, f.</i>	<i>bétail, m.</i>		<i>Aimez, v</i>		
wisdom.	---	Do	¹ not ³	neglect ²	study.	-
<i>sagesse, f.</i>	<i>ne pas, adv.</i>	<i>négligez, v.</i>		<i>étude, f.</i>		
Avoid	leisure.	---	She	comes from	church.	-
<i>Evitez, v.</i>	<i>loisir, m.</i>	<i>Elle, pro.</i>	<i>vient, v.</i>	<i>église, f.</i>		

We	speak	of America,	and not
<i>Nous</i> , pro.	<i>parions</i> , v.	<i>Amérique</i> , f.	<i>non pas</i> , adv.
of Poland. ---	Grant	us	peace. --
<i>Pologne</i> , f.	<i>Accordez</i> , v.	<i>nous</i> , pro.	<i>paix</i> , f.
Honour	is	due	to kings. --- They
<i>Honneur</i> , m.	<i>dû</i> , p. p.	<i>roi</i> , m.	<i>Ils</i> , pro
come from	Africa. ---	Pride	disgraces man. --
<i>viennent</i> , v.	<i>Afrique</i> , f.	<i>Orgueil</i> , m.	<i>dégrade</i> , v.
Charity	patiently ²	bears ¹	injuries. ³
<i>Charité</i> , f.	<i>patiemment</i> , adv.	<i>souffre</i> , v.	<i>injure</i> , f.

This article is also placed before nouns used in a *specific sense*, or denoting a particular object, in which case the article is likewise expressed in English : ex.

L'homme que vous m'avez The man whom you re-
recommandé est fort ha- commended to me is very
bile, skilful.

Les poires de votre jardin The pears of your garden are
sont excellentes, excellent.

EXERCISE UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULE.

Where	is the	master	of the	house ? --	The
<i>Où</i> , adv.	<i>est</i>	<i>maître</i> , m.		<i>maison</i> , f.	
prince	spoke	to the king. --	To the	third*	
<i>prince</i> , m.	<i>parla</i> , v.			<i>troisième</i> , adj	
page	of the book. --	The ¹ lazy ²		do ³ not ⁵	
<i>page</i> , f.	<i>livre</i> , m.	<i> paresseux</i> , adj. pl. ♂			
love ⁴	work ⁶ . ---	Justice	is the	mistress and	
<i>aiment</i> , v.	<i>ouvrage</i> , m.	<i>Justice</i> , f.		<i>maîtresse</i> , f.	
queen of	virtue. --	Send		the child to school. --	
<i>reine</i> , f.		<i>Envoyez</i> , v.		<i>enfant</i> , m. <i>école</i> , f.	
Walk		in the garden.		Tranquility	
<i>Promenez-vous</i> , v.		<i>dans</i> , p.	<i>jardin</i> , m.	<i>Tranquillité</i> , f.	
of soul	is the	height of	felicity. --	Give the	tooth
<i>âme</i> , f.		<i>comble</i> , m.	<i>félicité</i> , f.	<i>Donnez</i> , v.	<i>cure-</i>
picks		to the gentlemen. ----	Education	is to the	
<i>dent</i> , m.		<i>Messieurs</i> , m.	<i>Education</i> , f.		
mind,	what	cleanliness	is to the	body. --	The
<i>esprit</i> , m.	<i>ce que</i> , pro.	<i>propreté</i> , f.		<i>corps</i> , m	

* Adjectives take no article unless used substantively.

life of man is short. -- The enemies were on
vie, f. courte, adj. ennemi, m. étaient, v sur, p
 the mountain. -- You admire the beauty of
montagne, f. Vous, pro. admirez, v. beauté, f.
 the ladies. -- To the thickness of the walls. -- We
dame, f. épaisseur, f. muraille, f.
 go to the park. -- It is the will of the em-
allons, v. parc, m. C'est, v. volonté, f. em-
 peror. --- The fate of nations is governed
pereur, m. sort, m. nation, f. gouverné, p. p.
 by Providence. -- You play with the boys. --
par, p. Providence, f. jouez, v. avec, m. garçon, p
 -- Revenge is the pleasure of a weak² mind¹. --
Vengeance, f. plaisir, m. un faible, adj.
 Italy is the garden of Europe. -- The most noble
Italie, f. Europe, f. plus, adv. noble, adj.
 of virtues is charity. -- Carry the grammar to the
portez, v. grammaire, f.
 boys, and the dictionary to the girls. -- -- -- He
dictionnaire, m. fille, f. Il, pro.
 comes from the Indies. -- Give me the loaf.
vient, v. Inde, f. moi, pro. pain, m.

This article being declinable in French, and conse-
 quently admitting of different variations, ought to be re-
 peated before all the *substantives* of a sentence, as well as
 before adjectives used as substantives, and agree with
 them in *gender* and *number* : ex.

Le sel, la moutarde, et, The salt, mustard, and oil,
l'huile, sont sur les tables, are on the tables.
Le blanc, le rouge, et le noir, White, red, and black,
sont trois différentes cou- are three different col-
leurs, ours.

EXERCISE UPON THESE AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

Prefer Virtue to riches, friendship to
Préférez, v. richesses, f. pl. amitié, f.
 money, and utility to pleasure. -- The father, mother,
argent, m. utilité, f. plaisir, m. père, m. mère, f.
 and children are dead. -- The men, women, and chil-
sont, v. morts, p. p. femme, f.

dren of the village were all at the burial. - - -
village, m. étaient, tous, adj. à, p. enterrement, m.
 Children generally² * like¹ apples and pears
ordinairement, adv. aiment, v. pomme, f. poire, f
 I like yellow and grey. -- Peace and plenty
aime, v. jaune, m. gris, m. abondance, f
 make men happy. - - - - - Wheat and barley
rendent, v. heureux, adj. Froment, m. orge, f
 are dear. - - - I hate milk, butter, and cheese. - -
chers, adj. lait, m. beurre, m. fromage, m.
 Bring the knives and forks. - - - Patience
Apportez, v. couteau, m. fourchette, f. Patience, f.
 and perseverance are necessary. - - - The desire
persévérance, nécessaire, adj. désir, m.
 of glory, riches, power, and pleasure, is a
gloire, f. richesses, f. pl. pouvoir, m. une
 disease of the mind. - - - Have you passed
maladie, f. âme, f. Avez, v. passé, p. p.
 through Spain, Portugal, or Holland? - - Pre-
par, p. Espagne, f. Portugal, m. ou Hollande, f.
 fer always virtue, prudence, and good sense
toujours, adv. prudence, f. bon, adj. sens, m.
 to beauty. -- Put the wine, beer and cider on
Mettez, v. vin, m. bière, f. cidre, m. sur, p.
 the table, - - - (It is said) that America, France, and
table, f. On dit que
 Spain have made peace with England.
ont, v. fait, p. p.

On the contrary, this article, though expressed in English, must be omitted in French, before a noun employed as an apposition, or definition of the noun which precedes; and when it precedes a noun in the nominative or accusative case, denoting *dignity, office, or business*: ex.

Alexandre, fils de Philippe, Alexander the son of Philip.
Mon ami demeure à Londres, ville capitale d'Angleterre, My friend lives in London, the capital city of England.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Jupiter, a god of the heathens, was the son of
un dieu, m. païens, m. était, v. fils, m.

* Place simple adverbs after verbs, and in compound tenses before the participles.

Saturn, and the father of the other gods. -- Robert,
Saturne, *autres,* adj.
 duke of Normandy, the brother of Henry, king
duc, m. *Normandie,* *frère,* m. *Henri,*
 of England, was the son of William the con-
Guillaume, *con-*
 queror. --- My sister lives at York, the cap-
quérant, m. *Ma,* pro. *sœur,* f. *demeure,* v. à, p.
 ital city of the county of the same name.
comté, m. *même,* adj. *nom,* m.
 Mr. C***, the rector of the parish of St. James, and
curé, m. *paroisse,* f. *Jâques,*
 his brother, the dean of the cathedral, were
son, pro. *doyen,* m. *cathédrale,* f. *étaient,*
 the sons of Mr. L***, the first lord of
premier, adj. *seigneur*
 the admiralty.
amirauté, f.

In several instances, the definite article is neither ex-
 pressed in English nor in French, as in narrations, when
 the style is animated ; and after the conjunction *ni*, when
 it implies a complete negation, otherwise it has an article,
 requiring in both cases the negation *ne* before the verb :
 ex.

<i>Conscience, honneur, intérêt,</i>	Conscience, honour, inter-
<i>tout est sacrifié ; il n'a</i>	est, every thing is sacri-
<i>ni justice, ni humanité.</i>	ficed ; he has <i>neither</i> jus-
	tice <i>nor</i> humanity.
<i>Ni l'or, ni la grandeur ne</i>	Neither gold nor greatness
<i>nous rendent heureux,</i>	can make us happy.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The town	was	taken	by storm : men,
<i>ville,</i> f.	<i>fut,</i> v.	<i>prise,</i> p. p.	<i>d'assaut,</i> m.
women, children,	old people,	(every body)	was
	<i>vieillard,</i> m.	<i>tout,</i> adj.	
put	to death. --	Palaces, temples, public ²	build-
<i>mis,</i> p. p.	<i>à mort.</i>	<i>Palais,</i> m.	<i>édi-</i>
ings ¹ ,	private ²	houses ¹	(every thing) was
<i>fice,</i> m.	<i>particulière,</i> adj.	<i>maison,</i> f	<i>tout</i>

destroyed - His father will² spare² neither³
détruit,p.p. Son,pro. *épargnera*,v. *ne ni*
 pains nor money. --- (He is) a fatherless child,
peine,f.sing. *C'est*,v. *orphelin*,adj. *or*
 he has neither parents nor friends. -- Neither the
a parent,m. *ami*,m.
 house nor bed are made for you.
lit,m. *sont faits*.

When, in English, two or more substantives, signifying different things, come together in a sentence, having a dependence on each other, and having no stop between them, the last (in English) must be placed at the beginning of the sentence (in French), and the others having the sign of the English possessive case, thus ('s) or (') only, come after it, with the genitive of this article before them, according to their gender and number : ex.

Le fils du roi, The king's son.
La couronne de la reine, The queen's crown.
 That is, *the son of the king, the crown of the queen.*

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I have seen the king's apartments and the
ai,v. *vu*,p.p. *appartement*,m.
 queen's picture. --- The chancellor's son's wife is
portrait,m. *chancelier*,m.
 the prime minister's eldest² sister¹. --- The man's
premier, *aînée*,adj. *sœur*,f.
 strength is very great. --- Lend me the
force,f. *grande*,adj. *Prêtez*,v. *moi*,pro.
 maid's cloak. --- My cousin's brother is
servante,f. *mantelet*,m. *Mon*,pro. *cousin*,m.
 my uncle's best friend. --- The title of
oncle,m. *meilleur*,adj. *ami*,m. *titre*,m.
 Dauphin belongs to the king of France's eldest²
appartient,v. *aîné*,
 'son. -- Modesty is a woman's greatest orna-
Modestie,f. *une femme*,f. *le plus grand*,adj. *orne-*
ment,m.

The genitive of this article is often made in English by to, especially before nouns expressing *alliance, consanguin-*

ity, or kindred, witness, or inheritance ; and in short whenever to may be rendered by the above genitive definite : ex.

*Monseigneur le duc de **** ; My lord duke of ***, brother to the king, or the king's brother.
frère du roi,

EXERCISE UPON THIS ARTICLE.

Mr. Richard, brother to the Prince's steward,
Mons. *intendant,m.*
 has married Miss Prescott, niece to the Constable
a,v. épousé,p.p. Mlle. nièce,f. Connétable,m.
 of the Tower. --- I have spoken to the Marchioness
Tour,f parlé,p.p. Marquise,f.
 of ***, sister to the queen's first Lady of honor.
Dame,f.
 Mr. Henry, perfumer to the Princess, has made
Henri,m. parfumeur,m. fait,p.p.
 a ²considerable ¹fortune. --- The heir to the
considérable,adj. fortune,f. héritier,m.
 crown of Portugal is the Prince of Brazil. -- My
couronne,f. du Brésil,m.
 father was witness to that quarrel. ---
a été,p.p. témoin,m. cette,pro. querelle,f.
 I am a friend to ²diligent ¹scholars, and an
suis,v. ♂ diligent,adj. écolier,m. ♂
 enemy to idleness.
ennemi,m. paresse,f.

After the adverb *bien*, when placed before a substantive and signifying *much, a great deal, many*, the genitive of this same article must always be used . ex

Bien du mérite, Much merit.
Bien des amis, Many friends.
Bien de l'argent, A great deal of money.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE

The children make much noise. ---- This man
font,v. bruit,m. Cet,pro.
 has (a great deal) of money, but he has also manv
aussi,adv.

hot³ rolls² man¹, and the gingerbread-woman
chauds,adj. *pain*,m.pl. *pain d'épices*,m
 called here. - - - We had cabbage-soup,
ont passé,p.p. *ici*,adv. *eûmes*,v. *chou*,m.pl. *de la soupe*,
 a rice-pudding, a (leg of mutton) with caper -
un riz,m. *pouding*,m. *gigot*,m. *capre*,f.pl.
 sauce and ice-cream. - - We shall have pease-
de la sauce,f. *glace*,f. *aurons*,v. *pois*,m.
 porridge, a salt² cod,¹ with egg-sauce, and a
de la soupe *une salée*,adj. *morue*,f. *œuf*,m.pl.
 turbot with lobster-sauce - - I bought a plum -
homard,m.pl. *ai acheté* *raisins*, *secs*,m.
 cake, an apple - tart, and two gooseberry and
gâteau,m. *pomme*,f.pl. *tarte*,f. *groseille*,f.pl.
 cherry pies.
cerise,f.pl. *tourte*.

DECLENSION OF THE ARTICLE PARTITIVE.

SINGULAR.—Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *du pain*, some bread.
 Gen. Abl. *de pain*, of or from some bread.
 Dat. *à du pain*, to some bread.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *de la viande*, some meat.
 Gen. Abl. *de viande*, of or from some meat.
 Dat. *à de la viande*, to some meat.

Masculine or Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *de l'argent*, some money.
 Gen. Abl. *d'argent*, of or from some money
 Dat. *à de l'argent*, to some money.

The plural is the same for both genders.

Nom. Acc.	{	<i>des livres</i> , some books.
	{	<i>des auteurs</i> , some authors.
Gen. Abl.	{	<i>de livres</i> , of or from some books.
	{	<i>d'auteurs</i> , of or from some authors
	{	<i>à des livres</i> , to some books.
Dat.	{	<i>à des auteurs</i> , to some authors

N. B. In asking a question, the English generally make use of *any*, which, in French, must be rendered by the same article, as *some*: ex.

Y a-t-il du pain ici ? Is there *any* bread here ?
Avez-vous de la viande ? Have you *any* meat ?

This article must be used wherever the English word *some* or *any* is either expressed or understood, and ought to be repeated before every substantive in a sentence: ex.

Du pain et de l'eau lui suffisent, Bread and water are sufficient for him.
Apportez du vinaigre, de la moutarde, de l'huile et des fourchettes, Bring *some* vinegar, mustard, oil and forks.
Avez-vous de l'argent à nous prêter ? Have you *any* money to lend us ?

EXERCISE UPON THIS ARTICLE.

Bread, meat, and water, are things necessary
sont, v. chose, f. nécessaires, adj.
 to man. --- I drink wine and water. -- She eats
bois, v. mange, v.
 cheese. --- Bring me some mustard. --- Have you
fromage, m.
 bought some paper, pens, and ink ? -- Send
acheté, p. p. papier, m. plume, f. encre, f.
 him some bread, meat, and potatoes. --- Do you²
lui pomme de terre, f. &
 sell¹ fruit³ ? -- Buy some tea and sugar. --
vendez, v. fruit, m. Achetez, v. thé, m.
 Will you eat some beef with turnips and
Voulez, v. manger, v. bœuf, m. navet, m.
 carrots ? -- Do you drink beer ? - (Is there) any
carotte, f. & buvez, bière, f. Y a-t-il
 wine in the cellar ? --- (Was there) any oil in the
Y avait-il
 bottle ? -- I¹ have³ given⁴ him² bread, money,
donné, p. p. lui, pro.
 and clothes. -- She has modesty and prudence. --
habit, m. modestie, f. prudence, f.
 He has bought some dishes and plates. --- Will
plat, m. assiette, f.
 you have some milk or cream ? -- I eat fish, eggs,
& œuf, m

greens, artichokes, and asparagus. - - - Bread, meat,
légume, artichaut, m. asperge, f. pl.
 fish and vegetables, often² make¹ a good
végétaux, m. pl. souvent, adv. font, v. bon
 dinner.
diner, m.

If the substantive be preceded by an adjective, instead of *du, de la, des*, we must use *de* or *d'* : as,

	Masc.	Fem.	Masc. or Fem.
N. Ac {	<i>De mauvais vin,</i>	<i>De bonne eau,</i>	<i>D'excellent pain,</i>
G. Abl. {	Bad wine,	Good water,	Excellent bread,
Dat	<i>à de mauvais vin,</i>	<i>à de bonne eau,</i>	<i>à d'excellent pain,</i>
	To bad wine.	To good water.	To excellent bread.

PLURAL.

N. Ac. }	<i>De bons livres,</i>	<i>d'habiles gens,</i>
G. Ab. }	Good books,	Learned men.
Dat	<i>à de bons livres,</i>	<i>à d'habiles gens,</i>
	To good books.	To learned men.

N. B. This last rule is without exception. But some persons find it difficult to distinguish between the genitive of the definite and this article ; now let them but parse, and they will perceive that in this phrase : *Londres est le centre du bon goût*, *du* is no more than the genitive of the definite article denoting what kind of *taste*.

EXERCISE UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

You always² read good books. - - 'Bad wine'²
toujours, adv. lisez, v.
 is⁴ 'not⁵ worth⁴ good water. - - - He speaks to learned
vaut, v. parle, v.
 men. - - - I have heard good news. - - -
gens, f. appris, p. p. bonne, adj. nouvelle, f. pl.*
 You have fine fruit. - - - She has worthy
avez, v. beau, adj. digne, adj.
 friends. - - Bring me good pens. - - Onions, celery,
Oignons, m. céleri, m.
 leeks, chervil, and (a great deal) of meat make
poireau, m. cerfeuil, m. beaucoup, adv. font, v.

* *Gens*, preceded by an adjective, is of the feminine gender.
 When the adjective follows, it is put in the masculine.

what the French call good
ce que, pro. Français, m. pl. appellent, v
 broth. --- I prefer good water to bad cider. ---
bouillon, m. cidre, m.
 I have discoursed with learned people. -- My father
conversé, p. p. gens, f.
 has in his garden good plums, fine peaches,
son, pro. prune, f. belle, adj. pêche, f.
 and very large apricots. --- Miss Sharp
très, adv. gros, adj. abricot, m. Mlle, f.
 has fine eyes. -- Paris is the centre of wit.
beau, œil, m. bel esprit, m.

DECLENSION OF THE ARTICLE INDEFINITE,

used before proper names of persons and places, and in the *Gen.* and *Abl.* the *e* is cut off before a vowel or an *h* mute, as usual.

SINGULAR.—Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *Pierre*, Peter.
 Gen. Abl. *de Pierre*, of Peter.
 Dat. *à Pierre*, to Peter.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *Marie*, Maria.
 Gen. Abl. *de Marie*, of Maria.
 Dat. *à Marie*, to Maria.
 Nom. Acc. *Antoine*, Antony.
 Gen. Abl. *d' Antoine*, of Antony.
 Dat. *à Antoine*, to Antony.
 Nom. Acc. *Londres*, London.
 Gen. Abl. *de Londres*, of London.
 Dat. *à Londres*, to London.

N. B. It is necessary to observe, that the particle *To*, used after a word signifying *coming*, *going*, *returning*, or *sending to*, placed before the name of a *kingdom*, *republic*, *country*, *province*, or *county*, must be rendered in French by the preposition *en*, without any article : ex.

Mon frère est allé en Italie, My brother is gone to Italy.
Il doit bientôt retourner en Amérique. He is soon to go back to America.

On the contrary, *to* must be rendered by *de*, when immediately preceded by the words *road*, or *path-way* : ex.

Le chemin de Londres, The road to London.

Le chemin de Paris, The way to Paris.

It must be observed that the *proper names* of most of the islands and other countries, both in the East and West-Indies, and a few places in Europe, do not follow the above rule, but take the definite article, such as *l'Abyssinie*, Abyssinia ; *le Brésil*, Brasil ; *le Caire*, Cairo ; *le Canada*, Canada ; *la Guadeloupe*, Guadaloup ; *la Jamaïque*, Jamaica ; *le Japon*, Japan ; *la Martinique*, Martinico ; *le Pérou*, Peru ; *la Virginie*, Virginia ; *le Mexique*, Mexico ; and a few others : ex.

Venir	{	<i>de l'Abyssinie,</i> <i>du Brésil,</i> <i>du Caire,</i>	}	to come	{	from Abyssinia, from Brasil, from Cairo.
Aller	{	<i>à la Chine,</i> <i>au Canada,</i> <i>au Japon,</i>	}	to go	{	to China, to Canada, to Japan

EXERCISE UPON THESE RULES.

(Here is) John's brother. -- Speak to Martha. --

Voici,adv. *Jean* *Parlez*,v. *Marthe*.

It is Peter's hat. ---- She goes to Richmond. - -

C'est,v. *chapeau*,m. *va*,v.

He comes from Paris. - - - You have Mr.

vient,v. *Mons*.

Richard's sword. - - - When¹ will² you³ go² to

épée,f. *Quand*,adv. *irez*,v.

France ? - - I know not, for my father says

sais,v. *ne pas*,adv. *car*,c *dit*,v.

that he (will² send) me¹ soon to Canada or

que,c. *il*,pro. *enverra*,v. *bientôt*,adv.

Jamaica. -- Give me Laura's cap. ---- I (am going)

Laure *bonnet*,m. *vais*,v.

to Roxbury. - - - I have found Andrew's waistcoat.

trouvé,p.p. *André*,m. *veste*,f.

She (shall come back) to England (next year)

reviendra,v. *l'année prochaine*

to see her brother who is arrived from

pour voir,v *son*, *qui*,pro. *est*,v. *arrivé*,p.p.

Japan and China. -- Carry that to Stephen. --
Portez, v. cela, pro. Etienne.
 (Here is) the road to Medford. --- My mother
Ma, pro.
 intends to send my sister to Portugal
se propose de, v. envoyer, v. ma, pro.
 or Spain, and thence to Rome, and my cousin (is to)
de là doit, v.
 go to Mexico or Cairo.
aller, v. ou, c.

The genitive of this article *de* is used after nouns and adverbs of *quantity*, whether expressed in English or not ; after the negation *pas* or *point*, no or not ; the word *que*, what, standing for how much, or how many, and *quelque chose*, something, *rien*, nothing ; before names of countries, kingdoms and provinces, when preceded by a noun expressing a personal title, &c. or by a verb signifying *coming*, *arriving*, or *returning from* : ex.

<i>Tant de pommes,</i>	So many apples.
<i>Tant d'argent,</i>	So much money.
<i>Point de repos,</i>	No rest.
<i>Que de peines et de soins !</i>	What care and trouble !
<i>Quelque chose* de bon,</i>	Something good.
<i>Il arrive de France,</i>	He arrives <i>from</i> France.
<i>Rien de mauvais,</i>	Nothing bad.
<i>Le roi d'Angleterre,</i>	The king <i>of</i> England.
<i>Elle vient d'Amérique,</i>	She comes <i>from</i> America.

EXERCISE UPON THIS ARTICLE.

I have bought six yards of cloth. --- Bring
acheté, p.p. six aune drap, m.
 me three pounds of veal, and two pounds of
trois livre veau, m. deux
 mutton. -- She has a great number of children. --
mouton, m. un grand, adj. nombre, m.
 He has (too much) vanity. --- You have less merit,
trop, adv. vanité, f. moins, adv.

* It must be observed, that the word *chose*, standing by itself, is of the feminine gender ; but, being joined to the word *quelque*, it is of the masculine.

but more wisdom. -- What a noise you make.
mais, c. plus, adv. sagesse *bruit, m. faites, v.*
 (How many) fools in the world! -- Do ¹not⁴ give³
 fou *monde, m.* *ne pas, adv.*
 her² (too many) pears. -- I¹ have³ ²no⁴ daugh-
lui, pro. trop, adv. *ai* *ne point, adv.*
 ters⁵. -- (So much) pride does ¹not⁴ become³ him². --
 Tant, adv. orgueil, m. *sied, v. lui, pro.*
 (There is) something noble in his physiognomy. --
Il y a, v. *sa, pro. physionomie.*
 We have (so many) grapes. -- They have a little
 raisin, m. *un peu, adv*
 money. --- I know the king of Prussia. -- Did you
 connais, v. *Prusse, f. Avez, v.*
 see the duke of Bavaria with the archbishop
vu, p. p. duc, m. Bavière, f. archevêque, m
 of York? -- He commanded an army of forty
 commandait, v. une armée, f. quarante
 thousand men. -- She¹ says³ ²nothing⁴ true⁵. --
mille *dit, v. ne rien, adv. vrai, adj.*
 You speak of Alexander, king of Macedonia. --
 parlez, v. Alexandre, m. Macédoine, f.
 Do you² come¹ from Italy? --- No, I come
venez, v. *Non, adv. viens, v.*
 from Africa.
 Afrique.

De is likewise placed before nouns governed by another substantive, of which they express the *character, cause, country, matter, nature, and quality*; and after the *adjectives of number*, when they are followed by a participle passive: ex.

<i>Une maison de brique,</i>	A ¹ brick ³ house ² .
<i>Un bonnet de nuit,</i>	A night cap.
<i>Une cuiller d'argent,</i>	A silver spoon.
<i>Du poisson de rivière,</i>	River fish.
<i>Du vin de Bourgogne,</i>	Burgundy ² wine ¹ .
<i>Quatre de renvoyés,</i>	Four (sent away.)

EXERCISE UPON THIS ARTICLE.

Your¹ sister² has³ a⁴ silk⁶ gown⁵ and a gold
Votre, pro. sœur, f. a, v. une soie, f robe, un or, m.

thimble. -- We drink Champagne wine. --- It is a
dé, m. buvons, v. C'est, v.
 marble pillar. ----- They have a country
marbre pilier, m. une campagne
 house built with oak wood. --
maison construite, p. p. de, p. chêne bois.
 Edinburgh is the capital city of the kingdom
Edimbourg, m. capitale, adj. ville, f. royaume, m.
 of Scotland. -- Shut the fore-door. -- A lady
Ecosse. Fermez, v. devant porte, f. Une
 of wit is a jewel of worth. --- (He is) a man
esprit un joyau, m. prix. C'est, v.
 of honor. -- She has bought silver buckles
honneur. argent boucle, f.
 and diamond ear-rings. ---- Have you
diamant pendants-d'oreille, m. Avez, v.
 spoken to the silk-merchant? ---- Give me the
parlé, p. p. marchand, m.
 upper-crust. --- Bring me my straw-hat and
dessus croûte, f. mon paille chapeau, m.
 my night-cap. --- Miss Brown's chamber-maid and
nuit bonnet, m. Mlle. chambre fille, f.
 Mrs. Rose's house-keeper are two sis-
Mme. femme de charge, f. deux
 ters. -- The rich make use of silver plate,
riche, m. pl. se servent, v. vaisselle
 and the poor make use of iron forks
pauvre, m. pl. font, v. usage, m. fer, m.
 and pewter spoons. --- The enemies had a
étain, m. cuiller. eurent, v. or
 hundred men killed, seventy wounded, and
cent tués, p. p. soixante-dix blessés, p. p.
 forty lost.
quarante perdus, p. p.

De is placed after the adjectives signifying dimension,
 as, *épais*, thick ; *gros*, big, large ; *haut*, high, tall ; *large*,
 wide, broad ; *long*, long ; and *profond*, deep ; though
 there is no article expressed in English : *ex.*

Une table longue de dix pieds, A table ten feet long and
et large de huit. eight broad.

But there is a more elegant way, which is, to turn the adjective of dimension into the substantive ; then the words of measure and those of dimension are preceded by *de*: ex.

Un table de dix pieds de longueur, et de huit de largeur, A table ten feet long and eight broad.

In this last example it may be seen, that the French and English are parallel with each other ; therefore, in the following exercise, the adjective and substantive are put down, that the learner may translate it both ways.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I saw a tree eighteen feet large.
J'ai, v. vu, p.p. un arbre, m. dix-huit pied, m. gros-
 --- I have a box four inches thick,
seur. une boîte, f. quatre pouce, m. épais-seur,*
 ten feet long and six broad. --- I know
dix pied, m. long-ueur, large-ur. connais, v.
 a man seven feet high. --- (It is) a ditch
un sept. haut-eur. C'est, v. un fossé, m.
 nine feet six inches deep and five feet broad
neuf profond-eur cinq
 (There is) a room fifty paces long and
Voilà une chambre, f. cinquante pas, m.
 twenty broad. --- The walls of our garden
vingt muraille, f. notre, pro.
 are or (have) thirty feet three inches high, and two
sont, v. or font, v. trente trois deux
 feet broad. --- I have a tree eighteen feet round
un arbre, m. dix-huit gros-seur, f.
 and sixty high.

If the learner translate this last sentence by the adjective of dimension, he must use the word *sont*, which is the proper word of the English *are*, and follows the preceding rule ; but if he turn the adjective of dimension into its substantive, the word *sont*, are, is to be rendered into French by the verb *ont*, have, and *de* before the word of measure is suppressed.

* Read *gros*, adjective, *grosseur*, substantive, without separation, and so of the others. See the rules to form the feminine gender, p. 50

† See the rule upon *avoir* and *être*, next page.

Literal example by the adjective :

Notre chambre est longue de vingt pieds, et large de douze. Our room is long by twenty feet, and wide by twelve.

By the substantive :

Notre chambre a vingt pieds de longueur, et douze de largeur. Our room has twenty feet in length and twelve in width.

X When two substantives are joined together, both making a compound word in English, the first of which denotes the *form* or *use* of the second, the latter must be placed before the former in French, and followed by the particle *à*, in the sense of *for*.

Un moulin à papier,

A paper² mill¹.

Une boîte à poudre,

A powder² box¹ X

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Gun - powder was invented by a monk.

Canon, m. poudre, f. fut, v. inventée, p. p. par, p. moine, m.

The servant has lost the steel, and cannot
perdu, p. p. briquet, m. ne peut pas

light the candle. --- If you go to London
allumer, v. chandelle, f. Si, c. allez, v.

to-morrow, bring me a toupee-iron. - Have you
demain, adv. apportez, v. toupet, m. fer, m.

seen the water-mill which my father has bought ?

vu, p. p. que, pro. acheté, p. p.

No, but I have seen the wind-mill which your
Non, adv. vent, m.

brother has built at Greenwich. --- I have
fait bâtir, v. à

found your sister's work - bag. --- William has for-
ouvrage sac, m. Guillaume a dé-

bidden his children to go to the dancing room.

fendu à ses d'aller danser salle, f.

DECLENSION of UN, m. UNE, f. A or AN.

X

SINGULAR.—Masculine

Nom. Acc. *un livre*, a book

Gen. Abl. *d'un livre*, of or from a book.
 Dat. *à un livre*, to a book.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *une plume*, a pen.
 Gen. Abl. *d'une plume*, of or from a pen
 Dat. *à une plume*, to a pen. ✕

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I have a hat and a sword. --- She speaks
chapeau,m. *épée*,f. *parle*,v.
 of an officer. --- He¹ has³ given⁴ it² to⁵ a
officier,m. *donné*,p.p. *le*,pro.
 sailor. --- (There are) a bird and a cage. ---
matelot,m. *Voilà* *oiseau*,m. *cage*,f.
 An ungrateful man is a monster (in the) eyes of a
ingrat,m. *monstre*,m. *aux* *œil*,m.
 sensible² man¹. --- Alexander was a great warrior,
sensé,adj. *Alexandre*,m. *était*,v. *guerrier*,m.
 and a very learned philosopher. --- A fine
très,adv. *savant*,adj. *philosophe*,m. *belle*,adj
 flower in a garden is an ornament.
fleur,f. *ornement*,m.

It must be observed, that the English article *a* or *an*, before nouns of measure, weight, and number, must be rendered in French by the definite articles, *le*, *la*, *les* ; and by the preposition *par*, used for *time* and *space* in the sense of *each*, *every*, or *per* : ex.

Deux chelins le cent, Two shillings *a* hundred.
Un écu le boisseau, A crown *a* bushel.
Cinq chelins par semaine, Five shillings *a* week.
Une guinée par mois, One guinea *a* month.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE

Barley sells for three shillings a bushel. ---
Orge,f. *se vend*,v. *se*
 That ale (is worth) six pence a pint. ---
Cette,pro. *ale*,f. *vaut*,v. *sou*,m. *pinte*,f.
 Beef costs eight pence a pound. ---
Bœuf,m. *coûte*,v. *huit*,adj. *livre*,f.
 This lace cost a crown an ell. --- He
Cette,pro. *dentelle*,f. *coûta*,v. *écu*,m. *aune*,f.

sells his best cloth a guinea a yard. -
vend, v. son, pro. meilleur drap, m. une verge, f.
 Burgundy wine (is sold) nine shillings a bottle. ---
le vin se vend, v. neuf, adj.
 My shoemaker sold² me¹ two pairs of
Mon, pro. cordonnier, m. a vendu, p. p. paire, f.
 shoes (at the rate) of ²half ¹a guinea a pair. -- My
soulier, m. à raison demi
 master comes twice a week. -- My uncle goes
vient, v. deux fois, adv. va, v.
 to France thrice a year. --- She gives three
trois fois, adv. an, m. donne, v.
 shillings a day, and ten pence a mile.
jour, m. mille, m.

According to the rule p. 46, *a* or *an* is not expressed in French before the second noun when it qualifies the first ; the same article is likewise omitted when the verb *être* precedes the substantive ; excepting when that verb has *ce* for its nominative : in the first instance the noun is employed as an adjective, in the second as a substantive ; thus *il est homme* signifies, he has the feelings of a man, while *c'est un homme* means, there is a man.

<i>M. D., membre de la cham- bre des communes, Etes-vous Anglais ? Non, Monsieur, je suis- Français,</i>	<i>M. D., a member of the house of commons. Are you an Englishman ? No, sir, I am a French- man.</i>
--	--

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I saw the duke of C***, a prince of the blood,
J'ai vu duc, m. sang, m.
 who (was speaking) to Mr. F., a member of
qui, pro parlait, v.
 parliament. -- His cousin is a surgeon, and his brother
parlement, m. Son chirurgien, m.
 is a physician. -- My sister is a milliner,
médecin, m. marchande de modes, f.
 my brother is a tailor, and I am a carpenter. ---
tailleur, m. charpentier, m.
 I have read Castor and Pollux, a ²French ¹opera. --
opéra, m.

Bristol, a sea - port, passes now
mer,f. *port*,m. *passe*,v. à *présent*,adv.
 for the second city of the kingdom of Eng-
pour,p.
 * land. --- Is she a duchess, or a marchioness :
Est,v. *duchesse*,f. *marquise*,f.
 --- No, she is a countess.
comtesse,f.

OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

Adjectives form their plural as the substantives.

RULE to form their FEMININE GENDER.

Many adjectives in *al* have no plural for their masculine ; as *Expé-ri-mental*, experimental ; *paroissial*, parochial ; *zodiacal*, zodiacal.

Adjectives ending in *al*, having their plural in *als* :

Amical, amicable ; *austral*, austral ; *fatal*, fatal ; *final*, final ; *frugal*, frugal ; *glacial*, glacial ; *initial*, initial ; *labial*, labial ; *lingual*, lingual ; *médial*, medial ; *pascal*, paschal ; *nasal*, nasal ; *naval*, naval ; *théâtral*, theatral ; *virginal*, virginal.

Adjectives ending in *e* mute are of both genders : ex.

Un jeune homme, A young man.
Une jeune femme, A young woman.

Adjectives ending with one of the following letters *d, e, i, l, n, r, s, t*, and *u*, form their feminine by adding an *e* mute : ex.

Masc. *Grand*, Fem. *grande*,* great, tall, large.
Poli, *polie*, polite

* When that adjective precedes a substantive singular of the feminine gender, beginning with a consonant, we often suppress, in French, both in the pronunciation and writing the *e*, which is supplied by an apostrophe, as in the following instances.

<i>A grand' peine</i> ,	with hard labor.
<i>Avoir</i> { <i>grand' faim</i> , }	{ very hungry.
{ <i>grand' soif</i> , }	{ very thirsty.
{ <i>grand' peur</i> , }	{ very much frightened.
<i>Faire grand' chère</i> ,	to live well, to fare sumptuously.
<i>La grand' mère</i> ,	the grand mother.
<i>La grand' messe</i> ,	the high mass.
<i>La grand' chambre</i> ,	the high court.

Should however the word *grande* be preceded by *très*, *fort*, *vary*, *une*, one, or *la plus*, the most, then the final *e* must be added ; as.

Une fort grande salle, A very large room.

<i>Aimé,</i>	<i>aimée,</i>	loved.
<i>Civil,</i>	<i>civile,</i>	civil.
<i>Demi,</i>	<i>demie,</i>	half.
<i>Nu,</i>	<i>nue,</i>	naked.

The last two adjectives are indeclinable when they precede a substantive, but are declinable when they follow it : ex.

<i>Une demi-livre,</i>	A half-pound.
<i>Une livre et demie,</i>	A pound and a half.
<i>Nu tête,</i> bare head, }	<i>la tête nue.</i>
<i>Nu pieds,</i> bare feet, }	<i>les pieds nus.</i>

There are a few ending in *an, as, el, il, eil, ien, in, es, et, is, on, os, ot,* and *ul*, that double the final letter, before an *e* mute, for the feminine : ex.

Masc. <i>Gras,</i>	Fem. <i>grasse,</i>	fat.
<i>Gentil,</i>	<i>gentille,</i>	genteel.
<i>Eternel,</i>	<i>éternelle,</i>	eternal.
<i>Pareil,</i>	<i>pareille,</i>	alike.
<i>Chrétien,</i>	<i>chrétienne,</i>	christian.
<i>Epais,</i>	<i>épaisse,</i>	thick.
<i>Bon,</i>	<i>bonne,</i>	good.
Masc. <i>Gros,</i>	Fem. <i>grosse,</i>	big.
<i>Sot,</i>	<i>sotte,</i>	foolish, simple.

The following are very irregular, and cannot be comprised under any rule, viz.

Masc. <i>Beau, Bel,*</i>	Fem. <i>belle,</i>	handsome, fine.
<i>Bénin,</i>	<i>bénigne,</i>	benign.
<i>Favori,</i>	<i>favorite,</i>	favorite.
<i>Fou, fol,*</i>	<i>folle,</i>	foolish, crazy.
<i>Frais,</i>	<i>fraîche,</i>	fresh.
<i>Long,</i>	<i>longue,</i>	long.
<i>Malin,</i>	<i>maligne,</i>	malicious.
<i>Mou, mol,*</i>	<i>molle,</i>	soft.
<i>Nouveau, nouvel,*</i>	<i>nouvelle,</i>	new, novel.
<i>Vieux, vieil,*</i>	<i>vieille,</i>	old.

Adjectives ending in *c* add *he* to the *c* for their feminine : ex.

* These adjectives are used before substantives beginning with a vowel or *h* not aspirated

Masc.	<i>Blanc,</i>	Fem.	<i>blanche,</i>	white.
	<i>Franc,</i>		<i>franche,</i>	sincere.
	<i>Sec,</i>		<i>sèche,</i>	dry, &c.

The four following are excepted :

Masc.	<i>Caduc,</i>	Fem.	<i>caduque,</i>	in decay.
	<i>Grec,</i>		<i>Grecque,</i>	Greek.
	<i>Public,</i>		<i>publique</i>	public.
	<i>Turc,</i>		<i>Turque,</i>	Turkish.

Those ending in *f* change *f* into *ve* for the feminine ex.

Masc.	<i>Bref,</i>	Fem.	<i>brève,</i>	short.
	<i>Naïf,</i>		<i>naïve,</i>	plain, ingenuous
	<i>Neuf,</i>		<i>neuve,</i>	new, not old.
	<i>Veuf,</i>		<i>veuve,</i>	widowed.
	<i>Vif,</i>		<i>vive,</i>	quick.

Adjectives ending in *x*, change *x* into *se*: ex.

Masc.	<i>Douloureux,</i>	Fem.	<i>douloureuse,</i>	painful, dolorous
	<i>Heureux,</i>		<i>heureuse,</i>	happy, &c
	<i>Jaloux,</i>		<i>jalouse,</i>	jealous.

The following are excepted :

Masc.	<i>Doux,</i>	Fem.	<i>douce,</i>	sweet.
	<i>Faux,</i>		<i>fausse,</i>	false.
	<i>Perpleux,</i>		<i>perplexe,</i>	perplexed.
	<i>Préfix,</i>		<i>préfixe</i>	prefixed.
	<i>Roux,</i>		<i>rousse,</i>	reddish.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

French adjectives must agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case : ex.

SINGULAR.—Masculine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Le bon livre,</i>	the good book.
Gen. Abl.	<i>Du bon livre,</i>	of or from the good book.
Dat.	<i>Au bon livre,</i>	to the good book.

PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Les bons livres,</i>	the good books.
Gen. Abl.	<i>des bons livres,</i>	of or from the good books.
Dat	<i>aux bons livres,</i>	to the good books.

SINGULAR.—Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *La bonne plume*, the good pen.
Gen. Abl. *de la bonne plume*, of or from the good pen
Dat. *à la bonne plume*, to the good pen.

PLURAL.

Nom. Acc. *Les bonnes plumes*, the good pens
Gen. Abl. *des bonnes plumes*, of or from the good pens.
Dat. *aux bonnes plumes*, to the good pens.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The tall man, the little woman, and the
petit, adj.
pretty children, whom I met yesterday
joli, adj. *que*, pro. *ai rencontrés*, p.p. *hier*, adv.
with their grandmother (were going) to London :
allaient, v.
they were all very hungry and thirsty. --- The polite²
avaient, v.
inhabitants¹ of that fine city treat all the
habitant, m. *cette*, pro. *traitent*, v.
strangers in a civil² and frank³ manner¹. - - -
étranger, m. *d'une* *manière*, f.
Lean² sheep¹ grow fat in good
Maigre, adj. *les brebis*, f.pl. *deviennent*, v. *dans*, p.
pastures. - - - Constant² study¹ joined to a great
pâturage, m. *étude*, f. *joint*, p.p.
application makes men learned. - - - The new²
application, f. *rend*, v. *savant*, adj. *neuf*
coat¹ which you ²gave ¹me, is
habit, m. *que*, pro. *avez donné*, p.p.
better than the old great-coat which my
meilleur, adj. *que*, c. *redingote*, f.
father had bought at his tailor's. - - We went
avait achetée chez, p. *allâmes*, v.
yesterday to the high court, whcre we found all
trouvâmes, v.
the judges already met.
déjà, adv. *assemblés*, p.p.

As two or more substantives in the singular are equivalent to a plural, the verb and adjective, or participle past,

not immediately following them, must be put in the plural, when they refer to two or more substantives in the singular, and that adjective or participle is to be put in the masculine, if these substantives be of different genders · ex.

Le frère, la sœur, le neveu, The brother, sister, ne-
et la nièce, sont tous phew, and niece, are
morts, all dead.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The book, paper, pencil, and penknife, which
papier,m. crayon,m. canif,m. que
 you sent² me¹, are excellent. --- The
avez prêté,p.p. me,pro. excellent,adj.
 pen, ruler, inkhorn and grammar which my bro-
règle,f. écritoire,f.
 ther has bought, are very good. --- The king
très,adv.
 queen, prince, and princesses were gone. --- The
étaient,v. sorti,p.p.
 corn, wheat, rye, pease and beans, in a word, all
seigle,m. fève,f. en mot,m.
 the grains which were on the ground,
grain,m. qui,pro. étaient,v. sur,p. terre,f.
 were frozen. --- My father's house, and my uncle's
furent,v. gelé,p.p.
 (country seat) are (very much) alike.
château,m. bien,adv. semblable, adj.

When two or more substantives are immediately followed by an adjective or participle past, these may agree in gender and number with the last substantive, when the substantives are synonymous, or nearly so; any other case met with in authors is either a poetical license or an oversight: ex.

Il gouverne avec un pou- He governs with an abso-
voir et une autorité ab- lute power and authori-
solue, ty.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

He studied with an incredible³ application¹ and
étudie,v. incroyable,adj.

courage². - - - He who has for his guides
courage,m. *Celui*,pro. *qui*,pro. & *guide*,m
 consummate³ zeal¹ and prudence² deserves
consommé,adj. *un zèle*,m. *une prudence*,f. *mérite*,v
 the general³ esteem¹ and applause² of his
estime,f. *applaudissement*,m. *ses*,pro.
 fellow-citizens. - - - I found the doors, the
concitoyen,m. *ai trouvé*,p.p. *porte*,f.
 windows, and the shutters shut.
fenêtre,f. *volets*,m. *fermé*,p.p.

THE PLACE OF THE ADJECTIVE IN A SENTENCE.

Some adjectives are always placed before their substantives, and others after them ; but there is a kind of adjectives, which may either precede or follow their substantives, as the euphony of the sentence requires.

The following are commonly placed before.*

<i>Beau</i> , handsome, fine.	<i>Joli</i> , pretty.
<i>Bon</i> , good.	<i>Méchant</i> , wicked.
<i>Brave</i> , brave.	<i>Mauvais</i> , bad.
<i>Cher</i> , dear.	<i>Meilleur</i> , better.
<i>Chétif</i> , vile, poor, mean.	<i>Moindre</i> , less.
<i>Galant</i> , well-bred.	<i>Petit</i> , little, small.
<i>Grand</i> , great, tall.	<i>Saint</i> , holy.
<i>Gros</i> , big, large.	<i>Tout</i> , all.
<i>Honnête</i> , honest, civil.	<i>Vieux</i> , old
<i>Jeune</i> , young	<i>Vrai</i> , true.

EXERCISE ON THE FOREGOING ADJECTIVES.

I have seen a handsome lady, who (was
vu,p.p. *dame*,f. *qui*,pro.
 speaking) to an old gentleman. - - - He had
parlait,v. *monsieur*,m. *Il*,pro. *avait*,v.

* No general rule can be given on this subject, however ; for of those adjectives enumerated here above, many may be placed after and receive a new signification, thus, *un galant homme*, means a well-bred man, *un homme galant*, a gallant, &c. Practice and observation only will give that knowledge.—See next rule.

a fine hat and a pretty sword. --- Your little
 chapeau,m. *épée*,f. *Votre*,pro.
 sister deserved a better fate. --- I know a young
 méritait,v. *destin*,m. *connais*,v.
 man who has a good horse, but a bad stable. ---
 cheval,m. *écurie*,f.
 He¹ has³ lent⁴ it² to an honest man. --- The
 a prêté,p,p.*le*.pro.
 apostle Paul was a holy man. --- My brother has
apôtre,m.
 bought a good watch. --- Your father was a
acheté,p.p. *montre*,f. *était*,v.
 brave general, and a well-bred man. --- You have
 avez,v
 lost all your money. --- Vile creature, I have
perdu,p.p. *créature*,f.
 heard your wicked conversation. --- Mr. A. is a
entendu,p.p. *conversation*,f.
 great man, and the best of all fathers.
 homme,

Some adjectives have different meanings, according as they are placed before or after their substantive ; as, *une femme sage*, a wise woman ; *une sage femme*, a midwife ; and *une grosse femme*, a big woman ; *une femme grosse*, a pregnant woman ; *un homme honnête*, a civil man ; *un honnête homme*, an honest man ; a little practice will soon remove any of these apparent difficulties.

The following adjectives must be placed after their substantives.

1. All particles used as adjectives ; as,

Une personne reconnaissante, A grateful person
Du bœuf rôti, Roast beef.

2. All adjectives expressing the *shape* or *form* ; as,

Une table ronde, A round table.
Une chambre carrée, A square room.

3. All adjectives expressing the *colour* or *taste* ; as,

<i>Un chapeau noir,</i>	A black hat.
<i>Un habit rouge,</i>	A red coat.
<i>Une pomme douce,</i>	A sweet apple.
<i>Une liqueur amère,</i>	A bitter liquor.

4. All adjectives expressing the *matter* of which a thing is composed ; as,

<i>Des parties sulfureuses,</i>	Sulphurous parts.
<i>Un corps aérien,</i>	An aërial body.

5. All adjectives expressing the quality of *hearing* and *touching*; as,

<i>Un instrument sonore,</i>	A sonorous instrument.
<i>Une voix harmonieuse,</i>	An harmonious voice.
<i>Un bois dur,</i>	A hard wood.
<i>Un corps mou,</i>	A soft body.

6. All adjectives expressing the name of nations ; as,

<i>L'empire Romain,</i>	The Roman empire.
<i>La poésie Anglaise,</i>	The English poetry.

7. All adjectives, which, when used by themselves, convey the meaning of a substantive, as, *rich, blind, &c.*

<i>Un homme riche,</i>	A rich man.
<i>Une femme aveugle,</i>	A blind woman.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE

An ignorant young man is despised by (every
méprisé, p.p. *de*, p. *tout le*
 body.) - - - You have an English hat, and she has a
monde, m. *Anglais*, adj.
 French gown. - He reads an Italian proverb. - -
Français, adj. *robe*, f. *lit*, v. *Italien*, adj. *proverbe*, m.
 I like (very much) the German tongue and
aime, v. *beaucoup*, adv. *Allemand*, adj. *langue*, f.
 the Spanish dress. - - - (It is) a square place.
Espagnol, adj. *habillement*, m. *C'est*, v. *carré*, adj. *place*, f.
 She likes sweet wine. - - Your sister has an har-
aime, v. *doux*, adj. *le vin*, m.
 monious voice. - - - I have bought a white gown
voix, f. *blanc*, adj.
 and a black cloak. - - - You have a faithful
noir, adj. *mantelet*, m. *fidèle*, adj.

servant. - - - - - I eat green peas, with
domestique, m. et, f. *mange*, v. *vert*, adj.
 boiled mutton. - Bring me a pound and a half
bouilli, p. p. *mouton*, m. *demi*, adj.
 of cherries, and half a pound of currants. - We had a
cerise, f. *groseille*, f. *eûmes*, v.
 kind reception, and we played at a di-
favorable, adj. *accueil*, m. *jouâmes*, v. *à*, p. di-
 verting game. - He lives in a cold country.
vertissant, adj. *jeu*, m. *demeure*, v. *froid*, adj. *pays*, m.
 - - You have left the windows and the door
laissé, p. p. *fenêtre*, f. *porte*, t.
 open. - - Will you have a bit of roast
morceau, m. *rôti*, p. p.
 chicken? - - Do you² read¹ the Punic war? - -
poulet, m. *lisez*, v. *punique*, adj. *guerre*, f.
 He has made a rash vow. - - Your sister
fait, p. p. *téméraire*, adj. *vœu*, m.
 is an agreeable lady. - - I like a grey stuff.
agréable, adj. *gris*, adj. *étoffe*, f.
 (It was) really a tragical history
C'était, v. *réellement*, adv. *tragique*, adj. *histoire*, f.

When two or more adjectives belong to one substantive,
 the surest way is to place them after it, with the conjunc-
 tion *et*, and, before the last ; and if an adjective be used
 in a sentence without a substantive, this adjective must
 always be rendered in French by the masculine gender.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

We have a just, wise, and bountiful king. - -
juste, adj. *sage*, adj. *bienfaisant*, adj.
 Mr. Brown's daughter is with a sincere and
Monsieur, m. *sincère*, adj.
 generous lady. - - I have a scholar of a solid,
généreux, adj. *écolier*, m. *solide*, adj.
 bright, and lively genius. - - The wicked
brillant, adj. *vif*, adj. *esprit*, m. *méchant*, adj. pl.
 (shall be) punished. - - Miss Preston is a
seront, v. *puni*, p. p. *Mademoiselle*, f.
 young, handsome, and well shaped lady. - - She has
bien-fail, adj.

married	a sober,	virtuous, and	amiable
épousé, p.p.	sobre, adj.	vertueux, adj.	aimable, adj.
man.—The good (shall be) praised.—The diligent			
	seront, pl.	loué, p.p.	diligent, adj. pl.
(shall be) rewarded.			
	récompensé, p.p.		

DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

Adjectives and adverbs are the only kind of words that will admit of different degrees of *more* or *less* in the several qualities of persons or things.

There are two degrees of comparison :

1. *Le comparatif*, the comparative.
2. *Le superlatif*, the superlative.

Some grammarians admit of another degree, which they call *positive*: but this is merely an adjective used in its simple signification, without expressing any increase or diminution : ex. *joli*, pretty; *aimable*, lovely.

The *comparative* refers to some other person or thing, and shows its *equality*, *excess*, or *defect* : it is therefore of three sorts :

1. *Le comparatif d'égalité*, The comparative by equality.
2. *Le comparatif d'excès* The comparative by excess.
3. *Le comparatif de défaut*, The comparative by defect.

The comparative by *equality* is formed by placing the adverbs *autant*, as much, as many ; *aussi*, so or as, before an adjective ; and *que*, as after it : ex.

<i>Votre oncle a autant d'argent, et autant d'amis que mon père,</i>	Your uncle has <i>as much</i> money, and <i>as many</i> friends <i>as</i> my father
<i>Ma sœur est aussi ambitieuse que vous,</i>	My sister is <i>as</i> ambitious <i>as</i> you.
<i>Mon frère est aussi savant que le vôtre,</i>	My brother is <i>as</i> learned <i>as</i> yours.

N. B.—From the preceding examples and the following, it will be easily seen that when the adverbs, *tant*, so much, so many ; *autant*, as much, as many ; *plus*, more,

and *moins*, less, are immediately followed by a substantive, that substantive must be preceded by *de*. The learner will also observe that *si* and *aussi*, so, as ; generally precede adjectives, when a comparison is made by either ; whereas *tant* and *autant* are always followed by a noun or verb, the French conjunction *que*, Englished by either *as*, *than*, or *that*, being the term of the comparison ; *plus*, or *moins*, may precede either an adjective, a noun or verb.

Than, after *more* or *less*, *plus* ou *moins*, followed by a noun of number, is rendered in French by *de*, and not by *que* : ex.

Je perds plus d'un Louis, et vous gagnez moins de cinq francs, I lose more than a Louis, and you gain less than five francs.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Alexander was as ambitious as Cæsar. - -
était, v. ambitieux, adj. que, c. César, m.
 I am as tall as you. - - Miss D. has as much liveliness, and she is as amiable as her cousin. - If my father were as rich as my uncle, he (would make) a better use of his riches. - We have as many books as your brothers, and they are as learned as we. - I am as honest and civil as my companions. - - You owe me more than two dollars, and you pay me less than fifty cents.
suis, v. haut, adj. Mlle a, v. vivacité, f. est, v. sa, pro. cousine, f. Si, c. était, v. oncle, m. ferait, v. usage, m. ses, pro. autant, adv. vos, pro. sont, v. nous, pro. compagne, m. devez, v. gourde payez sou, m.

The comparative by excess is formed by placing the adverb *plus*, more, before an adjective : ex.

Sa cousine est plus diligente que moi, et est plus savante que vous, Her cousin is more diligent than I, and is more learned than you.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Miss A. is handsomer and more learned than
Mlle que, c

ner sisters. -- Lucia is taller and more proud
Lucie, f. orgueilleux, adj.
 than her little cousin. --- His sister is more
sa, pro. cousine, f. Sa, pro.
 covetous than he. --- Nothing is pleasanter to
avare, adj. lui, pro. Rien ne, adv. agréable, adj.
 the mind than the light of truth. --
esprit, m. lumière, f. vérité, f.
 Nothing is more lovely than virtue, and
aimable, adj.
 nothing is more desirable than wisdom. ---
désirable, adj. sagesse, f.
 My daughter is taller than your son by* two inches. --
de pouce, m.
 Your brother is taller than you by the² whole¹ head³. --
tout tête, f.
 In winter the roads are always worse than
En hiver, m. chemin, m. plus mauvais, adj.
 in summer. -- He gave² me¹ a more beautiful eagle.
été donna aigle, f.

The *comparative by defect* is formed by placing the ad-
 verb *moins*, less, before an adjective ; or *tant*, so much, so
 many ; or *si*, so ; with the negation *ne pas*, or point, not ;
 or *ne, ni*, neither, nor, before them : ex.

Votre cousine est moins noble Your cousin is *less* noble
que vous, than you.
Il n'est pas si orgueilleux que He is not so proud as his
sa sœur, sister.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Mrs. P*** is less polite than her daughter,
Mme poli, adj.
 but her daughter (is not) so revengeful as she.
n'est pas, adv. vindicatif, adj.
 You are² 'not³ so dutiful as your brother.
êtes, v. ne pas, adv. obéissant, adj.
 My father is not so rich as yours, but he has
le vôtre, pro.
 not so much self-love. ----- Miss Goodwill has less wit
amour-propre, m. Mlle
 than her mother. ----- Paris (is not) so populous as
peuplé, adj.

* *By*, after a comparison, is rendered into French by *de*.

London. -- Your companion is neither so prudent nor
n'est ni ni
 so circumspect as you.

It must be observed, that in sentences in which the above adverbs *more* or *less* are repeated to express a comparison, the definite article *the*, preceding either, is totally suppressed in French : as,

Plus *on est pauvre*, moins *on* The poorer* people are, the
a d'embarras, less care they have.
 Plus *je la vois*, plus, *je la* The more I see her, the more
hais, I hate her

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The more a thing is difficult, the more honour-
chose, f. difficile, adj. hono-
 able³ it¹ is². --- The less you give to your chil-
able, adj. elle, pro. donnez, v. vos.
 dren, the less they spend. --- The 'richer⁴ they⁴
ils, pro. dépensent, v.
 are³, the more covetous they are. -- The more a
avare, adj.
 young man studies, the more learned he grows.
étudie, v. savant, adj. devient, v.
 The more a drunkard drinks, the more thirsty he is. --
ivrogne, m. boit, v. altéré, adj.
 The more odious laziness is, the more we should
odieux, adj. paresse, f. devrions, v.
 avoid² it¹. -- The less you apply, the less you
éviter, v. la, pro. vous vous appliquez, v.
 learn. -- The more they know² you,¹ the less
apprenez, v. connaîtront, v. fut.
 they will esteem² you¹.
estimeront, v. fut.

The above comparative adverbs, *si*, *aussi*, *tant*, *autant*, *plus* and *moins*, must be repeated in French, before each adjective, noun, verb or adverb, in the sentence : ex.

Votre frère est aussi savant, Your brother is as learned
et aussi éclairé que mon and enlightened as my
cousin, cousin.

**Poorer*, *richer*, and all similar forms are rendered into French by *more poor*, *more rich* ; observe well the construction of the above sentence.

*M. Robert n'a ni tant de
bien, ni tant d'esprit que
M. Dubois,*

Mr. Robert has neither so
much wealth nor wit as
Mr. Dubois.

EXERCISE UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

My father has as many (apple - trees)
autant,adv. pommier,m.
and (pear - trees) in his orchard as (there are)
poirier,m. verger,m. il y en a,v.
in yours. --- His eldest brother (will be) more
le vôtre aîné,adj. sera,v.
attentive, industrious, and rich than he. ---
attentif,adj. industrieux,adj. lui,pro
Miss A*** has less wit, less liveliness, and becom-
vivacité agré-
ingness than her sister. -- She has as much virtue
ments
and good sense as beauty and modesty. -- My
sens Mon,pro.
cousin is as merry, lively, and amiable as his
gai,adj. enjoué,adj. ses,pro.
school-fellows.
condisciples,m.

The same rule is to be observed with respect to the ad-
verbs used in forming the superlative degree.

The three following adjectives are comparative by
themselves, *meilleur*, better ; *pire*, worse ; and *moindre*,
less ; which signify *plus bon*, *plus mauvais*, *plus petit* ; and
aîné, elder, or eldest, is used for *plus âgé*, or *le plus âgé*.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The watch which my grand-father has bought
montre,f. que,pro. grand-père,m. achetée,p.p
is better than the clock which he gave to
pendule,f. a donnée,p.p.
my mother. ---- My friend's buckles are better than
mère,f. boucle,f.
those of his uncle, but mine are worse
celles,pro. oncle,m. les miennes,pro.
than his. ----- The life of a slave is
les siennes,pro. vie,f. esclave,m.
ten times worse than death itself. ----- The
dix fois,adv. mort,f. même,adv.

pain which I endure is less than that which
peine, f. que *souffre, v.* *celle, pro. qui, pro.*
 is inflicted on galley-slaves.
infligée, p. p. *aux galérien, m.*

The *superlative* expresses the highest degree of any quality. There are two kinds of superlatives : 1. The *relative*, which expresses the quality of a person or thing above all others of the same kind. In this case, one of the following articles, *le, la, les ; de, du, de, la, des ; à, au, à, la, aux*, precedes the adverbs *plus*, standing then for most, *mieux*; best, *moins*, least, before an adjective ; or the adjectives *meilleur*, best ; *moindre*, least ; *pire*, worst : ex.

Votre sœur est la plus belle Your sister is the hand-
et la meilleure femme de somest and best woman in
la ville, the town.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The vine is one of the ²most useful^{5*} and ⁴agree-
vigne, f. un *les plus utiles, adj. pl.*
 able gifts¹ of Providence⁵. -- Virtue is¹ the³ most⁴ pre-
don, m. *Providence, f.* *pré-*
 cious⁴ thing² † in the world. --- The lion is the
cieux, adj. chose, f. *du monde, m.*
 strongest and most courageous of all animals. ---
fort, adj. *courageux, adj.* *animal, m.*
 (There is) the handsomest lady in London. --- She is
Voilà, adv. *de*
 so touchy, that she will not bear the least
bourru, adj. *veut, v.* *souffrir, v.*
 joke. --- Miss P. is the mildest, politest, and most
raillerie, f. *doux, adj.* *poli, adj.*
 affable of all her sisters. --- Ingratitude is
affable, adj. *ses, pro.*
 the greatest of all vices. --- If France were as rich
vice, m. *était, v.*
 as England, (it would be) the best country in the world. ‡
ce serait, v. *pays, m.*

* See the gender of adjectives, p. 63.

† See the note on the page that follows this.

‡ It may be observed in some of these examples, that the preposition *in*, following an adjective in the superlative degree, must be rendered in

The *absolute* simply expresses the quality of a person or thing in its highest degree. This happens when one of the adverbs *très, fort, bien, very, infiniment*, infinitely precedes an adjective ; and when any of the comparatives by excess or defect are preceded by one of the possessive pronouns, *mon, ton, son, notre, votre, leur, &c.* they become superlatives : ex.

Votre oiseau est très joli,
Vous êtes mon meilleur ami,

Your bird is very pretty.
You are my best friend.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

God is a being infinitely great and perfect. - - - -
être, m. parfait, adj.

I am your most humble and obedient
très, adv. obéissant, adj.

servant. - - - - The front of your house is very
serviteur, m. façade, f.

beautiful. - - - - You are very good, but your brother
beau.

is very wicked. - - - - My uncle has a very fine coun-
méchant, adj. cam-

try - house, and very spacious² gardens.¹ - - - -
pagne spacieux, adj.

My best friend is dead. - - - - Our common
Notre, pro. commun, adj.

enemy has¹ the³ most⁴ inveterate⁵ hatred² against
invétééré, adj. haine, f. contre, p.

this country. - - - - Their least embarrassments
ce, pro. pays, m. Lcurs, pro. embarras, m.

make their greatest delight. - - - - Pride and
font, v. délices, f. pl. Orgueil, m.

passion are his least defects.
colère, f. ses, pro. défaut, m.

French by one of these articles, *de, du, de la, des*, according to the gender and number of the substantive to which it belongs. The preposition *by*, when it follows an adjective in the comparative degree, is rendered by *de* only

OF NUMBERS.

There are two kinds of numbers : 1st, The *absolute*, which simply relates the number of the things spoken of, viz.

<i>Un</i> (femin. <i>une</i> .)	One.
<i>Deux</i> ,	Two.
<i>Trois</i> ,	Three.
<i>Quatre</i> ,	Four.
<i>Cinq</i> , (<i>q</i> is sounded,)	Five.
<i>Six</i> , (pron. <i>siss</i> ,)	Six.
<i>Sept</i> , (pron. <i>set</i> ,)	Seven.
<i>Huit</i> , (<i>t</i> is sounded,)	Eight.
<i>Neuf</i> , (<i>f</i> is sounded,)	Nine.
<i>Dix</i> , (pron. <i>diss</i> ,)	Ten.
<i>Onze</i> ,	Eleven.
<i>Douze</i> ,	Twelve.
<i>Treize</i> ,	Thirteen.
<i>Quatorze</i> ,	Fourteen.
<i>Quinze</i> ,	Fifteen.
<i>Seize</i> , (<i>sei</i> is broad,)	Sixteen.
<i>Dix-sept</i> , (pron. <i>diss-set</i> ,)	Seventeen.
<i>Dix-huit</i> , (pron. <i>diz-uit</i> ,)	Eighteen.
<i>Dix-neuf</i> , (pron. <i>diz-neuf</i> ,)	Nineteen.
<i>Vingt</i> , (<i>gt</i> are dropped,)	Twenty.
<i>Vingt-un</i> ,	Twenty-one.
<i>Vingt-deux</i> ,	Twenty-two.
<i>Vingt-trois</i> , &c. { <i>g</i> is dropt but <i>t</i> is sounded }	Twenty-three, &c.
<i>Trente</i> ,	Thirty.
<i>Trente-un</i> ,	Thirty-one.
<i>Trente-deux</i> , &c.	Thirty-two, &c.
<i>Quarante</i> ,	Forty.
<i>Cinquante</i> ,	Fifty.
<i>Soixante</i> , (pron. <i>soissant</i> ,)	Sixty.
<i>Soixante-un</i> ,	Sixty-one.
<i>Soixante-deux</i> , &c.	Sixty-two, &c.
<i>Soixante-dix</i> ,	Seventy.
<i>Soixanteonze</i> , &c.	Seventy-one, &c.
<i>Quatre-vingts</i> , (<i>gts</i> are dropped and <i>gt</i> in the following two.	Eighty.
<i>Quatre-vingt-un</i> ,	Eighty-one.

<i>Quatre-vingt-deux, &c.</i>	Eighty-two, &c.
<i>Quatre-vingt-dix, &c.</i>	Ninety, &c.
<i>Cent, (t in cent is dropped, and in the following two,)</i>	A or one* hundred.
<i>Cent-un,</i>	A or one* hundred and one, &c.
<i>Deux-cents, (x is dropped, and the two final consonants in the following also, and before any other word beginning with a consonant,)</i>	Two hundred.
<i>Trois cents,</i>	Three hundred.
<i>Neuf cents, (f dropped,)</i>	Nine hundred.
<i>Mille, mil, †</i>	A or one* thousand.
<i>Deux mille,</i>	Two thousand.
<i>Trois mille, &c.</i>	Three thousand, &c.
<i>Cent mille, &c.</i>	A or one* hundred thousand, &c.
<i>Neuf cent mille, (f dropped,)</i>	Nine hundred thousand.
<i>Un million,</i>	A million.

These *absolute numbers* are declined with the article indefinite *de, à*, and are always placed before the substantive to which they are joined without any article intervening ; and they are invariable in their form, except *quatre-vingt*, eighty ; *cent*, a hundred ; and *million*, a million ; which take an *s* in their plural, when immediately followed by a substantive : ex.

<i>Quatre-vingts femmes,</i>	Eighty women.
<i>Deux cents hommes,</i>	Two hundred men.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I was in the company	of seven gentlemen and
<i>compagnie, f.</i>	<i>MM.</i>

* It will be seen by the following, that the English particle *a* or *one*, is not expressed in French : ex.

<i>Je l'ai vu et lui ai parlé cent fois, mille fois,</i>	I have seen him and spoken to him a hundred times, a thousand times.
--	--

† Mentioning the date of the year, we must write, *mil*, and not *mille*: ex. *L'an mil huit-cent quinze*, the year 1815.

nine ladies. -- He has spoken to three officers and
dame *parlé*, p.p.
 two generals. -- If I had a hundred guineas, I would²
avais, v. *guinée*, *en*
 lend² you¹ eighty. -- The army of our
prêterais, v. *armée*, f. *nos*, pro.
 allies was composed of a hundred thousand
allié, m. *était composée*, p.p.
 men of foot, and twenty thousand of horse. ---
infanterie *cavalerie*.
 They took fifteen hundred men prisoners,
prirent, v. *prisonnier*,
 killed four thousand, wounded a thousand,
en tuèrent, v. *en blessèrent*, v.
 and (carried away) above two millions in specie. ---
emportèrent, v. *plus de* *espèces*.
 The battle (was fought) in one thousand eight hun-
bataille, f. *se livra*, v. *en*
 dred and fourteen, at three o'clock (in the) morning.
heures, f. *du* *matin*.

These numbers are employed as substantives, in some cases, as in the game of cards, and in dates : ex.

<i>Le huit de cœur,</i>	The eight of hearts.
<i>Nous partîmes de Boston</i>	We left Boston on the fif
<i>le quinze,</i>	teenth.
<i>Je reviendrai le douze,</i>	I shall return on the twelfth.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Will you but tell² me¹, if you have the seven of
seulement dire
 clubs ? - Yes, I have² it¹, and the ten of spades too. - The
trèfle ? *ai* *le* *pique* *aussi*.
 nine of diamonds (is missing) in this pack. -- I (shall be)
carreau *manque* *ce jeu*. *serai*
 absent for a week or two, but you may be certain, that
pourrez
 I shall be here on the twenty-fifth. -- Tell my sister
Dites à
 that I expect² her¹ on the seventeenth. --- You may
attends la

date your letter the twenty-sixth. --- The
dater, v. du

sixteenth (will be) her birth-day. ---- The ten of
sera son jour de naissance, m.

diamonds is not good. -- I have the ace of spades. --
carreau as pique.

We (shall have) a holiday on the twenty-fifth instant. --
aurons du courant.

Congress met on the third of December. ---
s'est assemblé

We received the President's Message on Friday, the
reçûmes

fifth of this month, it is most excellent.
ce très

In every instance therefore the cardinal numbers must
 be used in French when speaking of the days of the month,
 though the ordinal be used in English ; excepting for *le*
premier, the first, speaking of the first day of every month ;
 as,

<i>Le premier de Mai,</i>	The first of May.
<i>Le deux de Novembre,</i>	The second of November.
<i>C'est aujourd'hui le quatre</i>	To day is the fourth of
<i>d'Août,</i>	August.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

My friend will come (to see²) us¹ on the fifth of
viendra, v. voir, v. ∞

next² month¹. -- Lady² - day¹ falls
prochain, adj. mois, m. Notre Dame jour, m. tombe, v.

on the twenty-fifth of March. -- In the leap²
∞ Mars, m. bissextile, adj.

year¹ the month of February has one day more,
année, f. Février, m. de plus, adv.

which is the twenty-ninth. -- The first of November
qui, pro. Novembre, m

is (all-saints-day,) and the fifth of the same month
la toussaint même, adj. mois, m.

is the day of the ²Gun powder ¹plot. -----
des poudres, pl. conspiracy, f.

Come on the first day of July.

Venez, v. Juillet, m

2. *The ordinal numbers.* This class of numerals, beside the simple notation, signifies the order or rank of things, viz.

<i>Le premier, ou unième,</i>	The first.
<i>Le second, ou deuxième,</i>	The second.
<i>Le troisième,</i>	The third.
<i>Le quatrième,</i>	The fourth.
<i>Le cinquième,</i>	The fifth.
<i>Le sixième,</i>	The sixth.
<i>Le septième,</i>	The seventh.
<i>Le huitième,*</i>	The eighth.
<i>Le neuvième,</i>	The ninth.
<i>Le dixième,</i>	The tenth.
<i>Le onzième,*</i>	The eleventh.
<i>Le douzième,</i>	The twelfth.
<i>Le treizième,</i>	The thirteenth.
<i>Le quatorzième,</i>	The fourteenth.
<i>Le quinzième,</i>	The fifteenth.
<i>Le seizième,</i>	The sixteenth.
<i>Le dix-septième,</i>	The seventeenth.
<i>Le dix-huitième,</i>	The eighteenth.
<i>Le dix-neuvième,</i>	The nineteenth.
<i>Le vingtième,</i>	The twentieth.
<i>Le vingt-unième,</i>	The twenty-first.
<i>Le vingt-deuxième, &c.</i>	The twenty-second, &c.
<i>Le trentième,</i>	The thirtieth.
<i>Le trente-deuxième, &c.</i>	The thirty-second, &c.
<i>Le quarantième,</i>	The fortieth.
<i>Le cinquantième,</i>	The fiftieth.
<i>Le soixantième,</i>	The sixtieth.
<i>Le soixante-dixième,</i>	The seventieth.
<i>Le quatre-vingtième,</i>	The eightieth.
<i>Le centième,</i>	The hundredth.
<i>Le cent unième,</i>	The hundred and first.
<i>Le cent deuxième,</i>	The hundred and second,
	&c.
<i>Le deux centième,</i>	The two hundredth.
<i>Le millièmè,</i>	The thousandth.

These ordinal numbers are declined with the article

* No elision is to be made in the article before *onze, onzième; huit, huitième;* for we say, *le, du, au, la, de la, à la, &c. onze, onzième, &c.*

definite *le, la, &c.* and are placed before their substantives · ex.

Le premier jour du mois, The first day of the month.

EXERCISE ON THIS AND THE RULE PAGE 70.

On the eleventh of June I received twelve letters,

le *Juin* *ai reçu, v.*

but the eleventh ²has afforded³ me¹ more
 procuré, p.p. *me, pro.* *plus, adv.*
pleasure than the others. ---- Mrs. B. is the fifth
 autre, pro. *Mme*

lady whom I saw to day. ---- The spring
 que, pro. ai vue, p.p. *aujourd'hui, adv.* *printemps, m.*
begins on the twenty-first or twenty-second of
commence, v. *le*

March. ---- He cannot spend the sixth
Mars *ne peut pas, v.* *dépenser, v.*

part of his fortune. ---- The eleventh of No-
partie, f. *sa, pro.* *fortune, f.*

vember, which is the eleventh month of the year,
 année, f.

was ¹the³ dullest⁴ day² of the⁶ whole⁵ month⁷
fut *triste, adj.* *tout, adj.*

Speaking of sovereigns, we use the *absolute* number in French, though the ordinal be used in English, except the *first* and *second* ; and we place it after the substantive, as in English, without expressing the article *the* : ex.

<i>George Trois,</i>	<i>George the Third.</i>
<i>Louis Seize,</i>	<i>Lewis the Sixteenth.</i>
<i>Henri Quatre,</i>	<i>Henry the Fourth</i>
<i>Henri Premier,</i>	<i>Henry the First.</i>
<i>George Second,</i>	<i>George the Second.</i>

and not, *Henri Un, George Deux.*

We say, for the following *solitary names* of an *Emperor* and a *Pope*, as a distinction from other sovereigns,

<i>Charles Quint,</i>	<i>Charles the Fifth.</i>
<i>Sixte Quint,</i>	<i>Sixtus the Fifth.</i>

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Edward	the Sixth, the son	of Henry the
<i>Edouard, m.</i>	<i>fils</i>	

Eighth, and the	grand - son of Henry the Seventh,
	<i>petit, adj.</i>

was² 'but³ nine years old when he began
avait, v. ne que *an* *quand, c. commença, v.*
 to reign. ----- Henry the Fifth, king of England,
à régner, v. *roi, m.*
 the son of Henry the Fourth, and father of Henry
 the Sixth, married Catherine, the daughter of
 épousa, v. *Catherine*
 Charles the Sixth, king of France ; conquered the
 conquit, v.
 greatest part of that kingdom, and died (in the)
 partie, f. *ce, pro. royaume, m.* *mourut, v.* *au*
 midst of his victories. --- (Long live) George
milieu *ses, pro.* *victoire, f.* *Vive, v.*
 the third, grand-son to George the Second. ----
 petit, adj.
 Charles the Fifth, emperor of Germany and king of
 Allemagne, *roi, m.*
 Spain ; and Sixtus the Fifth, one of the popes, were
 pape, m. étaient, v.
 two great men.
 grand, adj.

The definite article *the* is also suppressed in French before the ordinal number, when it is preceded by a noun used to quote a *chapter*, *article*, or *page* of a book ; but, should the ordinal number precede the noun, the construction is the same in French as in English, and the article is expressed : ex.

<i>Livre troisième,</i>	Book <i>the</i> third.
<i>Le troisième livre,</i>	The third book.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

What you (look for) you (will find²) it¹
Ce que, pro. *cherchez, v.* *trouverez, v.* *le, pro.*
 in the Second Book of Samuel, chapter the third,
 Samuel, chapitre
 verse the ninth, page the first, and line tenth.
verset, *page, f.* *ligne*
 ----- We read in Telemachus, book the
 lisons, v. dans *Télémaque,*
 seventh, page the hundred and twenty-fifth, that
 que

Mentor pushed Telemachus into the sea,
poussa, v. mer, f.
 threw³ himself¹ (into it²) afterward with
jeta, v. se, pro. y, adv. ensuite, adv.
 him. --- Our master forgives the first time,
lui, pro. Notre, pro. pardonne, v. fois, f.
 threatens the second, and always² punishes¹
menace, v. toujours, adv. punit, v.
 the third.

RECAPITULATORY or *promiscuous* **EXERCISES**
upon all the preceding RULES. Review them well, before you write.

Ignorance is the mother of admiration,
Ignorance, f. est, v. mère, f. admiration, f.
 error, and superstition. ----- The covetous de-
erreur, f. superstition, f. avare, adj. pl. mé-
 spise the poor. ----- Humility is the basis of
prisent, v. pauvre, adj. pl. Humilité, f. base, f.
 Christian virtues. - Pride is generally the effect
Chrétien, adj. Orgueil, m. effet, m.
 of ignorance. - - Give me some bread, meat,
Donnez, v. moi, pro.
 turnips, and water. - - Merit and favor are
navet, Mérite, m. faveur, f. sont, v.
 the two springs of envy. - - - Interest, pleasure,
source, f. envie, f. Intérêt,
 and glory, are the three motives of the actions
motif, m. action
 and conduct of men. - - Is² it³ ¹not⁴
conduite, f. Est, v. ce, pro. nepas, adv.
 Peter's book ? - - - Your father has gone to London,
allé, p. p.
 where he has bought some horses and cows, which
vache, f. que, pro.
 he intends to send to Canada or Jamaica.
se propose, v. d'envoyer, v. ou
 - - - The father's house and the son's garden
maison, f. jardin, m.
 (are adjoining.) - - - - He found the windows
se joignent, v. trouva, v.

and the doors shut. - - - Truth is the bond of
Vérité, f. lien, m.
 union, and the basis of human happiness
union, f. base, f. humain, adj. bonheur, m.
 without it (there is no) confidence in
sans, p. elle, pro. il n'y a point confiance, f.
 friendship, and no security in promises. - -
amitié, f. point, adv. sûreté promesse, f.
 The love of liberty and independence is the
amour, m. liberté, f.
 character of noble minds. - - - - - Iron, steel,
caractère, m. âme, Fer, m. acier, m.
 and brass are more useful than gold and
cuivre, m. utile, adj.
 silver. - - The smith has (at last) repaired
serrurier, m. enfin, adv. réparé, p. p.
 the two jacks, and the cook (is
tourne-broche, m. cuisinière, f. fait
 roasting) the meat. - - I have seen the inside of the
rôtir, v. dedans, m.
 church. - - - Bring me my powder-box, and
église, f. ma, pro.
 my toupee-iron. - - I take a lesson three times
mon, pro. prends
 a week. - - - The study of grammar is² 'neither' so
étude, f. ne ni, c.
 dry nor so dull, as (it is thought.) - - -
sec. adj. triste, adj. on se l' imagine, v.
 Have some prudence and patience, and you (will have)
Ayez, v. aurez, v.
 success. - - - - A good conscience is to the soul
succès, m. conscience, f. âme, f.
 what health is to the body. - - - Merit and
ce que, pro. santé, f. corps, m.
 virtue are the only source of true
unique, adj. véritable, adj.
 nobility. - - - Religion, commerce, and arms
noblesse, f. Religion, i. commerce, m. arme, f.
 are proper instructions for a young prince. - -
propre, adj. instruction, f. à
 Her father has been made a knight
Son, pro. élé, p. p. fait, p. p. chevalier, m.

of the order of the Bath, and her grandfather
ordre, m. Bain, m.
 was a knight of the order of the Garter. - - -
était, v. Jarretière, f.
 He has not (so much) profit, but more honour. - -
tant, adv. profit
 Fortune's favours are seldom the prize of
faveur, f. rarement, adv. prix, m.
 virtue. - - - Gaming is the son of avarice, and the father
Jeu, m.
 of despair. - - - This cloth is equal to some
désespoir, m. Ce, pro. drap, m. comparable, adj.
 silk. - - - I see the coast of England. - - - The example
voie, f. vois, v. côte, f. exemple, m.
 of a good life is a lesson for the rest of man-
vie, f. pour, p. reste, m. genre-
 kind. - The French fleet was destroyed
humain, m. Français, adj. flotte, f. fut, v. détruite, p.p.
 by the brave Admiral Nelson, on the first of August,
Amiral, m. Août, m.
 one thousand seven hundred and ninety-eight. - - -
 The eldest² son¹ of the king of England
aîné, adj.
 bears the title of Prince of Wales, as
porte, v. titre, m. Galles, comme, adv.
 presumptive heir to the crown. - - - Lewis
présomptif, adj. héritier couronne, f. Louis
 the sixteenth was the grand-son of Lewis the fif-
petit, adj.
 teenth. - - - William, surnamed the Con-
Guillaume, m. surnommé, p.p. Con-
 queror, king of England and duke of Nor-
quérant, m. duc, m. Nor-
 mandy, was one of the greatest generals of the
mandie,
 eleventh century. - - - He (was born) at Falaise, and
siècle, m. naquit, v. à
 was the natural son of Robert, duke of Nor-
naturel, adj. Nor
 mandy, and of Arlotte, a furrier's daughter. - - He
mandie, fourreur, m. fille.

died at Hermentrude, in France, on the ninth of
mourut, v. à
 September, one thousand eighty-seven. - - - Mrs. Nel-
 son's servant knows the price of all the provisions.
servante, f. sait, v. prix, m. denrée, f.
 - She bought yesterday some chickens at one shilling
poulet, m. à
 and three pence a piece. - - She came from America
vint, v. Amérique
 in three weeks. - - - Thomas was formerly a mu-
en, p. était autrefois, adv. mu-
 sician, now he is a dancing-master,
sicien, à présent, adv. danse maître,
 tomorrow he (will be) a painter. - - This
demain, adv. sera, v. peintre. Cette, pro
 water is very agreeable to the smell. - - - We
odorat, m.
 (are going) to Coxheath, to see the camp. - - - I
allons, v. à voir, v. camp, m.
 have in my wardrobe five coats, sixteen waistcoats,
 twenty-two pair of stockings, and forty-six hand-
mou-
 kerchiefs. - - - The road to Roxbury is very bad
choir. chemin, m.
 in winter. - - - Bring us good wine, good beer,
en, p. hiver.
 and the oil-bottle. - - 'The front of the king's
façade, f.
 palace (is not) so beautiful as I thought. - - - Gene-
n'est pas croyais, v. Génér-
 rosity excites admiration. - - - Charles the second,
rosité, f. excite, v. admiration, f.
 the son of Philip the fourth, the grandson of Philip
Philippe
 the third, and the great grand-child of Philip the
arrière petit - fils
 second, left his kingdom to Philip the fifth. - - -
laissa, v. son, pro.
 On the eighteenth of February, one thousand four
à Février,
 hundred and seventy-eight, the duke of Clarence
duc

brother to king Edward the fourth, was drowned in
frère, m. Edouard fut, v. noyé, p. p.
 a butt of malmsey-wine. - The inhabitants of the
tonneau, m. malvoisie habitant, m.
 city of Dublin have presented a petition to
ville, f. ont, v. présenté, p. p. adresse, f.
 the King. - - - Good cider is preferable to bad
cidre
 wine. - - - That man always wears a green hat, a white
a, v.
 shirt, red shoes and black stockings. -- He has
chemise, f. bas, m.
 many children, and plenty of money. -- The
bien, adv. beaucoup, adv. argent, m.
 longer the day is, the shorter is the night. -- You have
jour, m. nuit, f.
 a fine hat. -- Shame is a mixture of the grief
Honte, f. mélange, m. chagrin, m.
 and fear which infamy causes. -- Religion,
crainte, f. que, pro. infamie cause, v.
 morality, government, fine arts, in a word
morale, f. gouvernement, m. beau en, p.
 (every thing) is overturned. -- Homer was the
tout renversé, p. p. Homère fut, v.
 first poet who personified the divine at-
poète, m. personnifia, v. divin, adj. at-
 tributes, human passions and physical
tribut, m. humain, adj. physique, adj.
 causes -- Pride and vanity are often the source
vanité, f. souvent, adj.
 of the misfortunes of mankind. - - - - - We sell
malheur, m. vendons, v.
 good bread, excellent meat, and very large
gros, adj.
 fishes ; but¹ we² have⁴ neither⁵ gold nor
poisson ; mais, c. avons, v.
 silver. -- (Is there) any beer in the cellar ? --
Y a-t-il cave, f.
 Mrs. B. is a good, virtuous, prudent, and
vertueux, adj.
 generous lady : she has a daughter as beautiful as an
filles, f.

angel, but she has neither so much docility nor af
ange,m.

fability as her cousin. --- Pindar (was born) at
Pindare,m. nâquit,v.

Thebes, a city of Greece. --- Malta is a small island,
Grèce. Malthe île,f.

but it produces some corn, cotton, honey,
elle,pro. produit,v. coton,m. miel,m.

figs, and the finest oranges in the world. - - The
figue,f. beau,adj. orange,f.

inhabitants of that fine country are all catholics,
pays

and go every Sunday to hear high mass. - The
vont,v. tous les Dimanches ∞

pleasure of the mind is greater than the pleasure
esprit

of the body, and the diseases of the mind are
corps,m. maladie,f.

more pernicious than the diseases of the body. - -
pernicieux,adj.

Health, honours, and fortune united together,
Santé,f. uni,p.p. ensemble,adv

cannot satisfy the heart of man. - - -
ne peuvent,v. satisfaire,v. cœur,m.

(It is) in the sixth page of the second book, chapter
C'est,v.

the third. - - Miss W.'s father, a banker in the
 Strand, is one of the richest men in town, but
Strand,m. *

she is prouder and more haughty than
orgueilleux,adj. hautain,adj.

if she were the handsomest woman in Europe. - - -
était,v. *

Their son arrived yesterday at Portsmouth from
Leur,pro. arriva

Peru and Martinico, in the St. George, a ninety-
Pérou Martinique,

gun ship. - - - Hypocrisy is a homage which
canon vaisseau,m. hommage,m. que,pro.

* See the remarks on the prepositions *in* and *by*, in the note, in
 the degrees of comparison, page. 74.

vice pays to virtue. -- A judicious answer
vice, m. *rend*, v. *judicieux*, adj. *réponse*, f.
 does more honour than a brilliant repartee. --
fait, v. *brillant*, adj. *répartie*, f.
 Give me a knife and fork. --- My father has bought
 one-and-thirty fine grey horses. --- (He is) an
gris, adj. *C'est*, v.
 intrepid man, and a man of honour and pro-
intrépide, adj. *pro-*
 bity. --- Mr. C***, the queen's jeweller, has a
bité *joaillier*,
 very prudent wife, and the most faithful, indus-
fidèle, adj. *indus-*
 trious, and honest servant in London. ---
trieux, adj. *honnête*, adj. *domestique*
 He found beauty, youth, riches, wisdom,
trouva, v. *jeunesse*,
 and even virtue, united in her per-
même, adv. *réuni*, p.p. *sa*, pro.
 son. - Thomas has discretion, but he has no
discrétion, f. *ne point*, adv
 wit. -- They have a quantity of apples and pears. --
quantité, f.
 Vienna, the capital of the empire of Germany,
Vienne, *Allemagne*,
 is a fine city. --- The more pleasing plays
agréable, adj. *spectacle*, m.
 are, the more dangerous they are. -- The rich,
dangereux, adj. pl.
 the poor, the young, the old, the learned, and the
savant, adj.
 ignorant, are all subject to death. -- True friends are
sujet, adj. *mort*, f. *Vrai*, adj.
 almost as rare as good writers. -- The famous
rare, adj. *écrivain*, m. *fameux*, adj.
 mine of Potosi, in Peru, is above two hundred
mine, f. *du* *plus*, adv.
 and fifty fathoms deep. -- Henry the first, king of Eng-
toise *Henri*
 land, and brother to William Rufus, died the richest
le Roux, mourut, v

prince in Europe. - - Paul is taller than you by an inch,
 but Mrs. Nichol's brother is the tallest of all.
Mme.

SECT. III

OF PRONOUNS.

There are seven sorts of PRONOUNS

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Les pronoms personnels,</i> | Pronouns personal. |
| 2. <i>Les pronoms conjonctifs,</i> | Pronouns conjunctive |
| 3. <i>Les pronoms possessifs,</i> | Pronouns possessive. |
| 4. <i>Les pronoms démonstratifs,</i> | Pronouns demonstrative |
| 5. <i>Les pronoms relatifs,</i> | Pronouns relative. |
| 6. <i>Les pronoms interrogatifs,</i> | Pronouns interrogative |
| 7. <i>Les pronoms indéfinis,</i> | Pronouns indefinite. |

OF PRONOUNS PERSONAL.

Pronouns personal are those which directly denote the persons, and supply the place of them.

There are three persons :

The first is the person who speaks : ex.

<i>Je parle,</i>	I speak.
<i>Nous parlons,</i>	We speak.

The second is the person spoken to : ex.

<i>Tu parles,</i>	Thou speakest.
<i>Vous parlez,</i>	You speak.

The third is the person spoken of : ex.

<i>Il, or elle parle,</i>	He or she speaks.
<i>Ils, or elles parlent,</i>	They speak.

Both Genders.

SINGULAR.

Je, or moi, I.
Tu, or toi, thou.

PLURAL.

Nous, we.
Vous, you or ye.

Masculine.

Il, or lui, he, it.

Ils, or eux, they.

* See the Note, page 74.

Elles, or *eus*, they.

The above pronouns are never to be used but as nominatives to the verbs. The rest are declined with the article indefinite : ex.

First Person for both Genders.

PLURAL.

de nous, of or from us.

à nous, to us.

Acc. *moi, me.*

nous, us.

Second Person for both Genders.

PLURAL.

de vous, of or from you.

Dat. *à toi,* to thee.

à vous, to you.

Acc. *toi*, thee.

vous, you.

Third Person.

SINGULAR.

d'elle, of or from her.*

Dat. *à lui*, to him.

à elle, to her.*

Acc. *lui*, him.

*elle, her.**

PLURAL.

Masculine.

Feminine.

G. A. *d'eux*, of or from them.

d'elles, of or from them.

Dat. *à eux*, to them.

à elles, to them.

Acc. *eux*, them.

elles, them.

There are two other pronouns of the third person,
viz.

SINGULAR and PLURAL. Both Genders.

1st. G.A. *de soi*, of or from { oneself, himself, herself,
 { themselves

Dat. *à soi*, to oneself, himself, &c.

Acc. *soi*, oneself, himself, &c.

N. B. Though it has been said, that the personal pronouns are used for the names of persons, it must not

* *Her*, when a personal pronoun is to be rendered by *elle, la, or lui*, but, when joined to a noun, by the pronoun possessive, *son, sa, ses*.

thence be concluded, that they are never employed for the names of animals or inanimate objects : this seldom happens in the first and second persons ; but the personal pronouns, *il, elle, ils, elles*, may denote every object in nature, either animate or inanimate : ex.

Ce chien est fort beau, mais That dog is very handsome,
il est trop gras, but it is too fat.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

This picture is very old, but it is
Ce, pro. portrait, m. ancien, adj.
 well painted. - - The house which I bought
bien, adv. peint, p. p. que, pro. ai acheté, p. p.
 is well situated, but I assure² you¹ that it
situé, adj. assure, v. que, adv.
 costs² me¹ much. - - - The books which
coûte, v. me, pro. beaucoup, adv.
 you saw in my library are good
vîtes, v. ma, pro. bibliothèque, f.
 books, but they are badly bound. - - - Your
mal, adv. relié, p. p. Vos, pro
 buckles (would be) much more in the fashion, if
boucle, f. seraient, v. à mode, f.
 they were smaller. - - - My hat is quite
étaient, v. Mon, pro. tout, adv.
 new, but it is too big. - - - Their
neuf, adj. trop, adv. grand, adj. Leur, pro.
 coach is old, but it is as good as if
*carrosse, m. vieux, adj. si, c.**
 it were new.
était, v. neuf.

2d. The general and indefinite pronoun, *on*, one, is always considered as a nominative of the masculine gender, and can never be used (in French) but in the singular, though the meaning be plural : ex. When we say *On chante*, *on mange*, we sing, they sing ; one eats, or people eat ; we mean, some men or women sing, eat.

* *Si* loses the *i* before *il, he ; ils, they*.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

People imagine that when they are
On, pro. *s'imaginer*, v. *que quand*, adv. *on est*, v
 rich, they are happy ; but they (are mistaken)
on heureux, adj. *on se trompe*, v.
 very often ; for, the more one has, the
très, adv. *souvent*, adv. *car*, c.
 more one wishes to have. - - - - When we are
veut, v. *avoir*. *on*
 (raised up) to honours, or we are invested
élevé, p.p. *ou que*, c. *revêtu*, p.p.
 with some dignity, we (are to) expect
de quelque, adj. *dignité*, f. *doit*, v. *s'attendre*, v
 to be criticised. - - - - (Some persons) reported
à être critiqué, p.p. *On*, pro. *rapporta*, v
 last week, that in France they
dernier, adj. *semaine*, f. *en*
 talk of peace.
parle, v.

The word *même*, self, is very often joined to the personal pronouns, to denote, in a more special manner, the person spoken of : as,

Moi-même, myself.

Toi-même, thyself.

Lui-même, himself.

Elle-même, herself.

Soi-même, oneself.

Nous-mêmes, ourselves.

Vous-mêmes, yourselves.

Eux-mêmes, or *elles-mêmes*,
 themselves.

OBSERVATIONS on the PRONOUNS *Je* and *Moi*, *Tu*, and *Toi*, *Il* and *Lui*, *Ils* and *Eux*.

Je and *moi* are used in two different senses, though both in the nominative case ; *Je* is always followed or preceded immediately by a verb to which it is the nominative case, and has no need to be joined to another pronoun : but *moi* always requires to be followed by one pronoun or more, either expressed or understood : ex.

Qui a pris mon livre ?

Who took my book ?

C'est moi,

It is *I*. That is,

C'est moi qui l'ai pris,

It is *I* who took it.

Moi must be used instead of *Je* before an infinitive

mood, or at the end of a sentence, when it is intended to express something sudden, as *grief*, &c. ; when *I*, in English, is followed by the pronoun relative *who* or *whom*, or is preceded by the verb *être*, to be, used impersonally, as *c'est*, it is ; and lastly, whenever any difference or distinction is intended between persons ; in which case it must be immediately followed by *Je* : ex.

Moi <i>lui</i> parler !	<i>I</i> speak to him or her !
Moi <i>qui</i> vous aime,	<i>I</i> who love you.
<i>Il</i> était à pied, et moi, j'étais à cheval,	He was on foot, and <i>I</i> was on horseback.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Who (was calling ²) me ¹ ? -- It	was not
appelait, v. me, pro. Ce	était ne pas, adv
I ---- The boy wants to speak ² (to you ¹ .) --- I	
désire, v. & parler, v. vous.	
who am older than he, I, go and speak ²	
âgé, adj. lui, pro. aller, v. &	
(to him ¹ !) No, I will not go, (let him come)	
lui, pro. Non, adv. veux, v. y aller, qu'il vienne, v.	
himself. --- It is I who (am to) be rewarded,	
dois, v. récompensé, p. p.	
instead of him. --- My father commanded the	
au lieu lui, pro. commandait, v.	
horse, and I commanded the foot. --- He	
cavalerie, f. commandais infanterie, f.	
could not do ² it ¹ in one day, and I	
put, v. faire, v. le, pro. en, p.	
did it in the space of three hours. ---	
ai fait, v. dans, p. espace, m. heure.	
When the enemy appeared, my companions	
parut, v. mes, pro.	
(ran away) and I remained alone.	
priront la fuite, v. restai, v. seul, adj.	

The same rule is to be attended to with respect to *toi*, *lui*, *eux*, &c. : as,

Toi <i>qui</i> me parles,	Thou who speakest to me
Lui <i>que</i> je méprise,	He whom I despise.
Eux <i>que</i> je respecte,	They whom I respect.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

How	darest thou answer	thy
<i>Comment,adv.</i>	<i>oses,v.</i>	<i>répondre,v.</i> à,p. <i>ton,pro.</i>
master in	so ³ insolent ⁴ a ¹ manner ² ? Thou	
	<i>de</i> <i>si,adv.</i> <i>insolent,adj.</i>	<i>manière,f.</i>
whom he	loves, thou for	whom he takes
<i>que,pro.</i>	<i>aime,v.</i>	<i>pour,p.</i> <i>qui,pro.</i> <i>prend,v.</i>
so much pains. ----	He and they, not (being able)	
	<i>peine,sing.</i>	<i>pouvant,v.</i>
(to agree,) were	obliged to part. ----	
<i>s'accorder,v.</i>	<i>furent</i>	<i>obligé,p.p.</i> <i>de se séparer,v.</i>
It is I who wrote	the letter, but it is he	
	<i>ai écrit,p.p.</i>	<i>lettre,f.</i>
who ² carried	it ¹ . --- It is ² ¹ neither ³	I, nor
	<i>a portée,p.p.</i>	<i>la,pro.</i> <i>Ce</i> <i>ne ni,c.</i> <i>ni,c.</i>
thou, nor he, who have	broken the windows,	
	<i>avons,v.</i>	<i>cassé,p.p.</i> <i>fenêtre,f.</i>
but it is they who have ²	done ³ it ¹ .	
	<i>ont,v.</i> <i>fait,p.p.</i> <i>le,pro.</i>	

After these remarks, it is also necessary to observe here, that *je*, I, and *nous*, we, never admit of an adjective or participle immediately after them, except in *acts* or *deeds*, *notes*, or *bills*, *receipts*, and the like : ex.

Je soussigné demeurant à I, the undersigned, living in
Londres, déclare, &c. London, declare, &c.

Nous, soussignés, reconnais We, the undersigned, ac
sons avoir reçu de Mons. knowledge to have re-
*D**, la somme de—* ceived from Mr. D**, the
sum of—

OF CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS

These pronouns are called *conjunctive*, because they are *always joined* to some verb by which they are governed, and are generally used for the dative or accusative case of the personal pronouns. There are three persons in the conjunctive as in the personal, which are,

Le Masc. him, it ; *la fem.* her, it ; and *les masc.* and *fem.* them : ex.

<i>Je le vois tous les jours,</i>	I see <i>him</i> every day.
<i>Je le sais,</i>	I know <i>it</i> .
<i>Nous la connaissons,</i>	We know <i>her</i> .
<i>Il les enverra ce soir,</i>	He will send <i>them</i> to-night.

The pronoun personal may be placed before or after the verb, agreeably to the English construction ; but the conjunctive pronouns are to be placed (in French) before the verbs by which they are governed, though they come after them in English : ex.

<i>Je parle,</i>	I speak.
<i>Avons-nous parlé,</i>	Have we spoken ?
<i>Il me parle,</i>	He speaks <i>to me</i> .
<i>Nous les connaissons,</i>	We know them.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Your brother bought yesterday a very good book,
acheta, v.
 and after having² read³ it¹, he gave² it¹
après, p. avoir, v. lu, p. p. le, pro. donna, v.
 to my sister. --- You speak of my cousin,
ma, pro. mon, pro.
 do you know him ? --- I see her, and speak
connaissiez, v. vois, v. parle, v.
 to her (every day). --- Do you² know¹ your
tous les jours. savez, v. vos, pro.
 lessons ? --- We know them all. --- I (will carry)
leçon, f. savons, v. tout, adj. mènerai, v.
 them to my brothers, but I (will write)
chez, p. mes, pro. écrirai, v.
 to them before. --- I find him more reason-
auparavant, adv. trouve, v. raison-
 able than his sister. --- Your dog (is
nable, adj. sa, pro. chien, m. a
 thirsty,) shall² I³ give² him¹ water ? --- They are
soif, donnerai, v. lui
 tired, and I give them some rest.
fatigué, p. p. donne, v. repos, m.

In the *second* person singular and the *first* and *second* persons plural of a verb in the imperative mood conjugated *affirmatively*, the conjunctive pronouns come after the verb : but if the verb be conjugated *negatively*, the pronouns follow the above rule : ex.

Donnez-lui de l'argent, Give him money.
Ne lui donnez pas de pain, Do not give him any bread.

EXERCISE ON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

Send them some apples, but do not send
Envoyez, v. *vous*
 them any plums. - - I give you these books,
prune, f. *donne, v.* *ces, pro.*
 but do not lend them to your brother. - - -
vous *prêtez, v.* *votre, pro.*
 You may tell it to my father, but do not
pouvez, v. *dire, v.* *mon, pro.* *vous*
 tell it to my mother. - - Believe me, go
dites, v. *ma, pro.* *Croyez, v.* *allez, v.*
 and speak to them, but do not insult them. - -
vous *parler, v.* *vous* *insultez, v.*
 Have you returned (to her) the handkerchief
rendu, p. p. *mouchoir, m.*
 which she has lent you ? - - Send it to-morrow,
que *prêté, p. p.* *demain, adv.*
 do not forget it. - - Bring me some cho-
vous *oubliez, v.* *Apportez, v.* *cho-*
 colate, but bring³ me² ¹no⁴ sugar.
colat, m.

When two imperatives are joined by either of the conjunctions, *et*, and ; *ou*, or ; the conjunctive pronoun or pronouns may precede the last imperative by which it is governed ; but that construction is not now much used : ex.

Cherchez le, et lui dites de venir ici, or *dites lui de,* &c. Look for him and tell him to come hither.

After the verbs *se fier à*, to trust to, *penser à*, *songer à*, to think of, *viser à*, to aim at, *courir à*, *accourir à*, to run to, *venir à*, to come to, and some of the reflexive verbs followed by a preposition governing a dative case, the pronouns must be placed after the verb, especially if

used in opposition or contradiction to each other ; or denote the order in which a thing ought to be done . and if there be more than one dative pronoun, the first only may be placed before the verb, and the others after : ex.

<i>Fiez-vous à moi,</i>	Trust to me.
<i>Nous-pensons à vous,</i>	We think of you.
<i>Cela s'adresse à toi,</i>	That is addressed to thee.
<i>Je cours à lui,</i>	I run to him.
<i>Il me parle aussi bien qu' à vous et à eux,</i>	He speaks to me as well as to you and them.

EXERCISE ON THESE AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

Bring me my hat, or send it to me by the carrier. - - - Trust to him, but do not
voiturier, m. Fiez-vous, v.
 trust to them, and do not believe them. - - - Think
croyez, v. Pensez, v.
 of us, and write to us as soon as you can. - - -
écrivez, v. aussitôt, adv. pourrez, v.
 Go and see her, and carry her these
Allez, v. voir, v. portez, v. ces, pro.
 flowers. - - - Send me my cloak, or bring it
fleurs, f. pendule, f.
 to me yourself. - - - Do not give it to
vous-même, pro. donnez, v.
 my sister, give it to me. Why do you prefer her to
préfèrent, v.
 me, and give her all your affection ?

When two or more of the conjunctive pronouns come together in the same sentence, they must be arranged in the following order.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Me, m. & f me, or to me,</i>	<i>Nous, m. & f. us or to us,</i>
<i>Te, m. & f. thee, or to thee,</i>	<i>Vous, m. & f. you, or to you,</i>
<i>Se, m. & f. oneself, himself, herself,</i>	<i>Se, m. & f. themselves,</i>
<i>are to be placed before all others ;—next,</i>	
<i>Le, m. him, it,</i>	<i>Les, m. & f. them,</i>
<i>La, f. her it,</i>	

And then,

<i>Lui</i> , m. & f. to him, to her,	<i>Leur</i> , m. & f. to them
<i>Il me le promet</i> ,	He promised <i>it to me</i>
<i>Je vous les donnerai</i> ,	I will give <i>them to you</i> .

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

My brother (will send) them to you, or he
enverra, v.

(will bring) them to you himself. --- He likes
apportera, v. *aime*, v.

your² house³ (very much¹) ; for we showed
votre, pro. *fort*, adv. *car*, c. *fîmes voir*, v.

it to him. --- Carry it to them. --- He will² ¹not³
Portez, v. *veut*, v. *ne pas*

sell⁶ it⁴ to them⁵, but he will give it to
vendre, v. *veut donner*, v.

you. --- If they ask a favour, will you
Si, c. *demandent*, v. *grâce*, f. ∞

refuse it to them ? --- Why do you
refuserez, v. *Pourquoi*, adv. ∞

give it to him ? Had you not promised
donnez, v. *Avez*, v. *promis*, p.p.

it to her ? --- He speaks to me, and not to you. ---
parle, v. *non pas*

If they behave themselves well, I will
comportent, v.

reward them. --- He had promised it to
récompenserai, v. *avait*, v.

him, but he gave it to me.
a donné, p.p.

N. B. There are three other conjunctive pronouns, commonly called particles relative or supplying pronouns; they are *en*, *y*, and *le*, and follow the foregoing rules for placing them, *y* taking the precedence of *en*, when they meet together in a sentence.

En always denotes a genitive or ablative, and relates to some object mentioned before: it is rendered in English by *of* or *from*, *him*, *her*, *it*, *them*; *about him*, *her*, *it*, &c.; *with* or *without him*, *her*, *it*, &c.; *at it*, &c.; *for it*, &c.; *upon it*, &c.; *any*, *one*, *ones*, *none*, *some*, *some of*, &c.; *thence*, *thereof*; and sometimes it is elegantly understood

in English, especially when immediately followed by a numerical adjective or a noun of quantity, though it must be absolutely expressed in French : ex.

Nous en parlons,

We speak of him, of her, of it, of them ; about him, about her, about it, about them.

J'en suis fâché,

I am sorry for it.

Donnez-lui en,

Give him some, (of it.)

Lui-en avez-vous porté ?

Did you carry him or her any ? (of them.)

Ne lui en envoyez pas,

Send him or her none.

Nous en venons,

We come from it or thence.

Combien avez-vous de domestiques ? Nous en avons six,

How many servants have you ? We have six, (of them.)

Avez-vous un jardin à la campagne ? Oui, nous en avons un très-joli,

Have you a garden in the country ? Yes, we have a very pretty one, (of them.)

In the third, fourth, and fifth sentences, it should be observed, that the pronouns of *it*, or of *them*, &c. are elegantly understood in English, according to the object or objects mentioned before.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I have heard that your uncle is arrived,
ouï dire, v. arrivé, p. p.
 and I¹ am³ very⁴ glad⁵ of it². - - She spoke³ to
aise, adj. parla, v.
 him¹ of it². - - - Talk³ no¹ more⁴ of it², for I'
Parlez, v. ne plus car, c.
 will³ not² hear⁶ of it⁵ (any more)⁴. -
veux, v. ne entendre parler, v. plus, adv.
 I¹ thank⁴ you² for it². - - Do you⁴ 'not⁵ see³
remercie, v. or voyez, v.
 the⁶ beauty⁷ of it² ? - - They are sorry for
sont, v. fâché, adj.
 it - - Since you have no pears in your garden,
Puisse, c. poire
 'I will send) you some. - - - They¹ have⁴ stolen⁵
enverrai, v. ont, v. volé, p. p.

from us² the⁶ greatest⁷ part⁸ of them³. - - My
 brother has written a letter to your sister, and
 shown³ me¹ the⁴ two⁵ first⁶ lines⁷ of it². - - -
 Will you lend me some books? With all
 my heart, I (will lend) you some very pretty
 ones. - - Do you² think¹ that³ she⁴ has⁷ spoken
 to him⁵ of it⁶? - - If I had money, I (would give)
 you some, but you know, as well as I do,
 how scarce³ it¹ is² now. - - - - Send⁴
 me² 'none^{3 5}. - - - - Have² you³ any¹? - - - - Do 'you⁴
 remember³ it²?
souvenez, v. en.

Y is used for the dative only : it is Englished by *to it, to them, of it, in it, upon it, thither, there, &c.* and very often not expressed in English, though it must be in French. It seldom supplies the place of animate objects, except when connected with the verb *fier*, to trust ; *penser*, to think ; and the like, in a reply : ex.

<i>J'y consens,</i>	I agree <i>to it</i> .
<i>Nous y penserons,</i>	We shall think <i>of it</i> .
<i>Ne vous y fiez plus,</i>	Trust <i>them</i> no more.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I¹ 'never⁵ (will⁴ consent) (to³ it,) and¹
ne jamais, adv. consentirai, v.
 I¹ 'neither⁴ will³ speak⁶, nor⁷ write⁹ to
ne ni veux, v. parler, v. ni, c. écrire, v.
 'him⁸. - - - Believe me, go and see them, do
Croyez, v. allez, v.
 'not 'confide² (in³ it.) - - - We¹ have⁴ forced⁵
fiez vous, v. avons, v. forcé, p. p.

them² to it³. - - - - I (will carry²) my³ brother⁴ thither¹
mènerai,v.
 myself⁵ - - He¹ (will carry⁵) them³ to you² thither⁴ him-
portera,v.
 self. - - Did you think of what you had
Avez,v. *pensé*,p.p. *à ce que*,pro. *aviez*,v.
 promised me ? - - - - No, but¹ I² will think⁴
promis,p.p. *Non*,adv. *penserai*,v.
 (of it³.) - - (It is) a good book ; we¹ read³ excellent⁴
y *C'est*,v. *on*,pro. *lit*,v.
 things⁵ in it². - - Our orchards are very fruit-
chose,f. *Nos*,pro. *verger*,m. *fer-*
 ful ; we see all sorts of fruits in
tile,adj. *on*,pro. *voit*,v. *sorte*,f. *fruit*
 them. - - Since those people have deceived
Puisque,c. *ces*,pro. *gens*,pl. *trompé*,p.p.
 you, do not trust them (any more). - - Often when a
ou *fiez*,v. *plus*,adv. *Souvent*,adv.
 friend is dead we¹ think⁴ of him³ ²no
mort,adj. *on*,pro. *pense*,v.
 (longer⁵.)
plus,adv.

Le, which in English is either not expressed, or most commonly rendered by *so*, likewise prevents the repetition of one or more words, and supplies the place of the same. It is indeclinable when it relates to, and holds the place of, one adjective or more, a verb, or a whole member of a sentence : ex.

Vous m'avez cru belle, mais You have thought me hand-
je ne le suis pas, some, but I am not (*so*.)
Nous étions embarrassés, et We were embarrassed, and
nous le sommes encore, are so yet.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

My brothers were ill yesterday.
Mes,pro *étaient* *malade*,adj. *hier*,adv.
 and are so still to-day. - - - - I am
encore,adv. *aujourd'hui*,adv.
 satisfied with my fate, but my sister is not.
content,adj *de* *sort*,m. *ma*,pro.
 I had heard that your sister was married,
avais v *ouï dire*,p.p.*que* *était*,v. *marié*,p.p

but my cousin tells me that she is not. - - - -
mon, pro. dit, v.
 Our master rewards us when we deserve
Notre, pro. récompense, v. méritons, v.
 it - - - - Children (ought to) apply to their
doivent, v. s'appliquer, v. leurs, pro.
 studies as much as they can. - - - - I thought
autant, adv. peuvent, v. croyais, v.
 your brother was diligent, but I mistook,
était, v. me suis trompé, p.p.
 for he is not and ¹never⁴ (will be³) so².
ne jamais, adv. sera, v.

On the contrary, *le* is declinable when it relates to, and holds the place of, one substantive or more ; then *le* is used for the masculine, *la* for the feminine, and *les* for the plural : ex.

Etes-vous le fils de mon Are you my friend Mr. D.'s
*ami M. D** ? Oui, je* son? Yes, I am, (*him.*)
le suis,
Etes-vous la mère de ce Are you the mother of that
bel enfant ? Oui, je la fine child ? Yes, I am,
suis, (*her.*)
Etes-vous les tantes de M. Are you Mr. Brown's aunts?
Brown ? Oui, nous les Yes, we are, (*them.*)
sommes,
Est-ce là votre livre ? Oui ce Is this your book ? Yes, it
l'est, is, (*it*)

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

(It is said) that you are the son of my neighbour
On dit, v. que *voisin, m.*
 Mr. Peter ; are you so ? Yes, Sir, I
Pierre, m. Monsieur, m.
 am. - - - Are you the sister of Mrs. Adams ? Yes,
Mme
 I am. - - She is very amiable, ¹and so³ are⁴ you² also⁵. - -
aimable, adj. aussi
 Are you the ladies whom my mother expects?
dame, f. que attend, v.
 Yes, we are. - - ⁴Are ¹these ²young ³people the
(Sont-ils) ces, pro. jeune, adj. gens, pl.

scholars whom you have taught ? Yes, madam,
écolier, m. enseignés, p. p.
 they are. - - (Is that) the horse which you bought
Est-ce là cheval, m. que avez acheté
 from my brother ? Yes, it is. - - - (Are these) the
Sont-ce là
 houses which you built ? Yes, they are.
avez fait bâtir, v. sont.

N. B. It must be observed, that the following pronouns, *me, te, se, le, la,* and *les*, can never be used after a preposition ; as we cannot say, *j' étais, avec le, avec la,* I was with *him*, with *her* ; but we must use the personal pronouns, *moi, toi, soi, lui, elle,* and *eux*, or *elles*, and say, *j' étais avec lui, avec elle, &c.*

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The nosegay which I gathered in our
bouquet, m. que ai cueilli, p. p.
 garden is for her, and not for him. - - He
pour, p. non pas, adv.
 was with me when we received a letter from
était, v. reçûmes, v.
 them. - - If he do not come soon, we (will set
sort vient, v. bientôt, adv. parti-
 out) without him. - - - Your sisters have dis-
rons, v. sans, p. Vos, pro. mécon-
 pleased me ; I am very angry with them.
tenté, p. p. suis fâché, adj. contre, p.
 - - Your brothers have broken these windows ; I
ont cassé, p. p. ces, pro.
 am sure of it, for I was behind them, and
sûr, adj. car, c. étais derrière, p.
 John was with me.
Jean était.

Y and *en* always go last in a sentence, except the pronoun of the first person *moi*, which, in the imperative mood of a verb conjugated affirmatively, is placed after *y* and *en*: ex.

Il vous y en enverra,

He will send some to you
thither.

Apportez-y en moi,

Bring me some *hither.*

N. B. The above pronouns, when governed by two or more verbs must be repeated, in French, before every governing verb ; though most generally expressed but once in English, and after the last verb : ex.

<i>Votre fils vous aime et vous</i>	Your son loves and fears
<i>craint,</i>	<i>you.</i>
<i>Je le plains et l'encourage,</i>	I pity and encourage him

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

You have very fine roses in your garden : when
avez, v.

I am in the country, pray send me some thither.
serai, v. à de grâce envoyez, v.

-- May God bless and reward her ! said
Que Dieu bénisse, v. récompense, v. dit, v
the prince. -- I ¹neither³ will² sell⁵ nor⁷ give¹⁰
ne ni veux, v. vendre donner, v.

⁵them⁹ ('to you⁸.) --- Our master rewards and punishes
punit, v.

us when we deserve it. ---- Often beauty seduces
séduit, v.

and deceives us' ---- That child has good parents, he
trompe, v. Cet

cherishes, honors and respects them.
chérît, v. honore, v. respecte, v.

N. B. Bear constantly in mind the place of these words in a sentence, first the preposition, next the negation *ne*, then the pronouns in the order above mentioned :
ex.

Faites-moi souvenir de ne *Remind me not to give him*
lui en point donner, *any.*

OF PRONOUNS POSSESSIVE.

These pronouns are called *possessive*, because they always denote property or possession.

There are two sorts of possessive pronouns, viz. absolute and relative.

The *absolute* are so called, because they must always precede the substantive to which they are joined, and agree with it (and not with the possessor, as in English) in *gender*, *number* and *case*.—They are,

SINGULAR.

Masc. Fem.

*Mon, Ma, or Mon,**Ton, Ta, or Ton,**Son, Sa, or Son,*} before a
vowel, or *h*
mute: as,

Both Genders.

*Notre,**Votre,**Leur,*

PLURAL.

Both Genders.

*Mes, my.**Tes, thy.**Ses, his, her or its**Nos, our.**Vos, your.**Leurs, their.*They are declined with the article indefinite *de, à* : ex

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *mon père, my father.*Gen. Abl. *de mon père, of or from my father.*Dat. *à mon père, to my father.*

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *ma mère, my mother.*Gen. Abl. *de ma mère, of or from my mother.*Dat. *à ma mère, to my mother.*

PLURAL.

Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *mes frères, my brothers.*Gen. Abl. *de mes frères, of or from my brothers.*Dat. *à mes frères, to my brothers.*

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *mes sœurs, my sisters.*Gen. Abl. *de mes sœurs, of or from my sisters.*Dat. *à mes sœurs, to my sisters.*

The others are declined as the preceding.

These pronouns ought to be repeated before every substantive in a sentence, though but once expressed in English ; they must agree in gender and number with the noun before which they are placed, that is, with *the thing possessed* and not *the possessor* ; they must also be used in French, when speaking to any of our relations or friends, though they be suppressed in English : ex.

J'ai perdu mon chapeau et mes gants, I lost my hat and gloves.

Bon jour mon père, Good day, father.

Etes-vous là ma sœur ? Are you there, sister ?

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Give me my dictionary and grammar. - - - She
dictionnaire, m. grammaire, f.
 had lost her gloves and fan. - - - - - Have
avait, v. perdu, p. p. éventail, m. Avez, v.
 you found your pen ? - - - - - His daughter is
trouvé, p. p. plume, f. fille, f.
 older than my son, but her son (is not)
plus âgée fils, m. n'est pas, v.
 so tall as my nephew. - - - - - Her brother says
grand, adj. neveu, m. dit, v.
 that he will³ ¹not⁴ refuse³ you² what you ask
refusera, v. ce que demandez, v.
 of him. - - - Dear father, pray forgive me. - - - My
de grâce
 ambition is the only cause of my impru-
ambition, f. seul, adj. cause, f. impru-
 dence. - - - I have seen your father, mother, bro-
dence, f. ai, v. vu, p. p.
 thers, and sisters. - - - Her affection for me is
affection, p. pour, f.
 false. - - - - Good night, cousin : I hope that you
faux, adj. soir, m. espère, v. que
 (will come) soon to see my country
viendrez, v. bientôt, adv. voir, v.
 house and gardens. - - - - - Your horses and carriage
cheval, m. carrosse, m.
 are very beautiful ; but the queen's horses and carriages
beau, adj.
 are much more so.
beaucoup, adv.

When, in English, these pronouns are used in a sentence, speaking of any part of the body, they are not to be expressed in French ; but the preposition *in* and the pronoun are rendered by the article definite : the personal pronoun being sufficient to determine in French the possession : ex.

J'ai mal aux yeux,
 and not *dans mes yeux.*

I have a pain *in my eyes*

Il se cassa le bras,
 and not *son bras.*

He broke *his arm.*

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

My mother has (a pain) in her head. - - - I have
 a, v. mal à, p. tête, f.
 (a pain) in my ear, and she has (a pain) in her
 oreille, f.
 teeth. - - - When I eat meat, I have always
dent, f. mange, v. toujours, adv.
 a pain in my stomach. - - - The man who fell from
 estomac, m. tomba, v.
 the roof of our house, disjoined his wrist,
 toit, m. se démit, v. poignet, m.
 broke his right leg, sprained
 droit, adj. jambe, f. se donna une entorse
 his left foot, dislocated his shoulders,
au gauche, adj. pied, m. se disloqua, v. épaule, m.
 and hurt his head. - - - - When I run fast,
 se blessa, v. cours, v. vite, adv.
 I (am afraid) of falling and breaking my
 crains, v. tomber, v. de me casser, v.
 arm or neck.

Its, their, having reference to inanimate or irrational objects, and placed in another member of the sentence from that wherein the object referred to is itself expressed, are not made into French by *son, sa, ses*, &c. but by the pronoun *en* placed before the verb, and the articles *le, la, les* : ex.

Paris est une grande ville, Paris is a large city, but its
mais les rues en sont trop streets are too narrow
étroites, (that is, the streets of it.)

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Windsor is a fine town : I admire its
 ville, f. admire, v.
 situation, walks, and streets. - - - This
situation, f. promenade, f. rue, f. Cette, pro.
 house is well situated ; but its architecture
 situé, adj. architecture, f.
 does not please me much. - - - - His coach is
ou plait, v. beaucoup, adv. carrosse, m.
 beautiful ; (every body) admires its painting
 tout le monde, m. admire, v. peinture, f.

and ornaments. - - - The shops of London are
 (very fine : foreigners especially see their
superbe, adj. *étranger*, m. *sur-tout*, adv.
 riches and cleanliness with much pleasure and astonish-
 ment. - - - The walks of your country seat) are well
allée, f. *château*, m.

kept : I like their regularity.
tenu, p. p. *régularité*, f.

The *relatives* are never joined to any substantive ; for the substantive to which they refer is always implied in the pronoun. They are,

Masculine.		Feminine.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Le mien,</i>	<i>les miens,</i>	<i>la mienne,</i>	<i>les miennes,</i> mine.
<i>Le tien,</i>	<i>les tiens,</i>	<i>la tienne,</i>	<i>les tiennes,</i> thine.
<i>Le sien,</i>	<i>les siens,</i>	<i>la sienne,</i>	<i>les siennes,</i> his or hers.

Masculine.		Feminine.	
SING.	PLURAL.	SING.	PLURAL.
<i>Le nôtre,</i>	<i>les nôtres,</i>	<i>la nôtre,</i>	<i>les nôtres,</i> ours.
<i>Le vôtre,</i>	<i>les vôtres,</i>	<i>la vôtre,</i>	<i>les vôtres,</i> yours.
<i>Le leur,</i>	<i>les leurs,</i>	<i>la leur,</i>	<i>les leurs,</i> theirs.

They are declined with the article definite : ex.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.		Feminine.
Nom. Acc.	<i>Le mien,</i>	<i>la mienne,</i> mine.
Gen. Abl.	<i>Du mien,</i>	<i>de la mienne,</i> of or from mine.
Dat.	<i>Au mien,</i>	<i>à la mienne,</i> to mine.

PLURAL.

Masculine.		Feminine.
Nom. Acc.	<i>Les miens,</i>	<i>les miennes,</i> mine.
Gen. Abl.	<i>Des miens,</i>	<i>des miennes,</i> of or from mine
Dat.	<i>Aux miens,</i>	<i>aux miennes,</i> to mine.

The rest are declined as the preceding.

When any one of these relative pronouns is used after the verb *être*, to be, signifying *to belong to*, it must be expressed in French by one of the pronouns personal in the dative ; and when joined to a noun substantive, it ought to be rendered by a pronoun possessive absolute, and the substantive must be put in the genitive plural : ex.

Ce livre est à moi,

This book is *mine*, (that is,
belongs to me.)

C'est un de mes amis,

He is a friend of mine, (that
is, one of my friends.)

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Your daughter is handsomer than mine ; but
beau,adj.
mine has more wit than yours. --- Her house is
esprit
more convenient than ours ; but yours is not so
commode,adj.
well situate as theirs. ----- This hat is mine and
Ce,pro.
not yours ; but this sword is yours and
non pas *cette*,pro.
not his. ---- I lost a book of mine, and a friend
ai perdu,p.p.
of yours found it. ---- He sold me a knife ;
a trouvé,p.p *couteau*,m.
but this knife was not his, but it was a friend of his
était *c'était*
who had lent it to him.
avait prêté,v.

OF PRONOUNS DEMONSTRATIVE.

These pronouns are called *demonstrative*, because they distinguish, in a precise manner, the persons or things to which they are applied. They are,

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

*Ce, cet,**
Celui, he, that,
Celui-ci,
Celui-là,

Feminine.

cette, this, that.
celle, she, that.
celle-ci, this.
celle-là, that.

PLURAL.

Masculine.

Ces,
Ceux,

Feminine.

ces, these, those.
celles, they, these, those.

* *Cet* is used before a noun masculine beginning with a vowel, or H mute : ex. *cet oiseau*, this bird : *cet honneur*, this honour.

<i>Ceux-ci,</i>	<i>celles-ci,</i> these.
<i>Ceux-là</i>	<i>celles-là,</i> those.
<i>Ce qui, ce que,</i> what.	
<i>Ceci,</i> this ; <i>cela,</i> that.*	

The last two are always of the masculine gender, and of the singular number.

These pronouns are declined with the article indefinite, *de, à*: ex.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>ce livre,</i> this or that book.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de ce livre,</i> of or from this book.
Dat.	<i>à ce livre,</i> to this book.

PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	<i>ces livres,</i> these books.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de ces livres,</i> of or from these books.
Dat.	<i>à ces livres,</i> to these books.

SINGULAR.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>cette plume,</i> this or that pen.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de cette plume,</i> of or from this pen.
Dat.	<i>à cette plume,</i> to this pen.

PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	<i>ces plumes,</i> these pens.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de ces plumes,</i> of or from these pens
Dat.	<i>à ces plumes,</i> to these pens.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>celui,</i> he, him, that
Gen. Abl.	<i>de celui,</i> of or from him.
Dat.	<i>à celui,</i> to him.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>celle,</i> she, her, that.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de celle,</i> of or from her.
Dat.	<i>à celle,</i> to her.

* The word *that*, coming between two verbs, and followed by a noun or pronoun, is then a conjunction, and must be rendered into French by *que*, even when implied in English : ex.

Je sais que votre frère est marié, I know *that* your brother is married ; or, I know your brother is married.

PLURAL.

Masc	Fem.
N. Acc. <i>ceux,</i>	<i>celles,</i> they, them, those, such as
G. Abl. <i>de ceux,</i>	<i>de celles,</i> of or from those.
Dat. <i>à ceux,</i>	<i>à celles,</i> to those.

The others are declined as the preceding.

N. B. *He, she, they, him, her, them,* being immediately followed in a sentence by *who, whom,* or *that,* used in an indeterminate sense, not relating to any individual mentioned before, and only implying *any person, one,* or *any body,* must not be rendered in French by the personal pronouns, *il, elle,* &c. but by the above pronouns, *celui, celle,* &c.

The same rule must be observed with respect to *such as, such that,* used in English in the same sense as *he who, they who:* ex.

Celui ou celle qui pratique la vertu vit heureux,	<i>He or she who</i> practises vir- tue lives happy.
Ceux qui méprisent la sci- ence, n'en connaissent pas le prix,	<i>Such as</i> despise learning, do not know its value, (the value of it.)

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

He who supports	idleness makes himself
<i>encourage, v.</i>	<i>se rend, v.</i>
despicable. - - - - She whom you saw at my	
<i>méprisable, adj.</i>	<i>que, pro. vîtes, v. chez, p.</i>
brother's is not yet	married. - - - - - You
<i>encore, adj.</i>	<i>marié, p. p.</i>
punish him who is not guilty. - - - Men com-	
<i>punissez, v.</i>	<i>coupable, adj. ordi-</i>
monly ² hate ¹ him whom they fear. - - - - -	
<i>nairement, adv. haïssent, v.</i>	<i>que, pro. craignent, v.</i>
She whom you hate,	is my best friend. - - - You
<i>haïssez, v.</i>	<i>amie, f.</i>
have punished him who did not deserve it,	
<i>puni, p. p.</i>	<i>meritait, v.</i>
and rewarded her who was guilty. - - - We	
<i>récompensé, p. p.</i>	
(ought to) pray for them who persecute	
<i>devons, v</i>	<i>qui, pro. persécutent, v</i>

us. - - - Of all virtues, that which most² dis-
 tinguishes¹ a christian is charity. - - - This book and
tingue, v.

that which I lent you are the two best. - -

que, pro. ai prêté, p.p.

Such as seem (to be) happy, are not

qui, pro. paraissent, v. être, v.

always so.

*toujours, adv. **

Ce, cette, ces, this, that, these, those, must always pre-
 cede the substantive to which they are joined, and agree
 with it in gender, number, and case. On the contrary,
celui, celle, celui-ci, celle-ci, celui-là, celle-là, this, that, &c.
 either in the singular or plural, are *never* joined to any
 noun ; for the noun to which they refer is always implied
 in the pronoun : ex.

J'ai vu le portrait du père I have seen the father's
et celui du fils, picture, and *that* of the
 son.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

She who dines with us, is my brother's wife. - - -
dîne, v. avec, p. femme, f.

She brought her picture, and that of her
a apporté, p.p. portrait, m.

husband. - - - - I have seen the king's palace, and
mari, m. palais, m.

that of the queen. - - - - That gold watch, which
montre, f. que, pro.

you showed me, is not yours, it is that of
avez montrée, p.p. c'est, v.

your brother. - - - - I have lost my buckles and
perdu, p.p.

those of your cousin. - - - - Your books and those of
cousin, m.

your little sister are torn. - - - - I know this
petit, adj. déchirés, p.p. connais, v.

cap, it is that of your mother.

bonnet, m. c'est, v.

* See the Rule, page 106.

N. B. The pronoun *that*, either in the singular or plural, is often suppressed in English, and supplied by an apostrophe and an *s*, thus ('s), at the end of the noun substantive, as above ; but it must be expressed in French by the above pronouns *celui*, *celle*, and according to the gender and number of the object to which it refers ex.

Jl a pris mon chapeau et celui de mon père, He has taken my hat and my father's (*that is*, and *that* of my father.)

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

You have torn my gown, and my sister's. - - -
déchiré,p.p. *robe*,f.
 I have found my hat and my brother's in the
trouvé,p.p.
 room. - - - - The thieves came by night
chambre,f. *voleur*,m. *entrèrent*,v. *de nuit*,adv.
 into my father's house : they (broke open) my room
dans *forcèrent*,v.
 and my mother's, and stole my watch and
volèrent,v.
 my sister's. - - - You may, if you please, take
pouvez,v. *voulez*,v. *prendre*,v.
 your grammar and your brother's ; but leave
laissez,v
 mine and my friend's. - - - - Our oranges and Mr.
orange,f.
 Savage's are the best that you can
Sauvage, *on*,pro. *puisse*,v
 find.
trouver,v.

Sometimes the particles *ci*, *là*, here, there, are also joined to the substantive following the pronouns, *ce*, *cette*, *ces*, to distinguish with more precision the objects to which they are applied : ex.

Ce chapeau-ci, this hat ; *cette ville-là*, that town, &c

N. B. The two following expressions, *the former* *celui-là*,m. *celle-là*,f. *ceux-là*,m. *celles-là*,f. ; *the latter*, *celui-ci*,m. *celle-ci*,f. *ceux-ci*,m. *celles-ci*,f. referring to substantives mentioned in a preceding sentence, are

elegantly used in French, and agree with the nouns, in stead of *le premier*, *le second*, the repetition of which they avoid : ex.

<i>Un Français et un Ecos-</i>	A Frenchman and a Scotch-
<i>sais se battirent hier à</i>	man fought yesterday with
<i>l'épée, celui-là fut blessé</i>	swords ; <i>the former</i> was
<i>à l'épaule, et celui-ci au</i>	wounded in the shoulder,
<i>bras,</i>	and <i>the latter</i> in the arm.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Learn this lesson : it is not so difficult
Apprenez, v. *difficile, adj.*
 as that. --- I prefer this way to that road. ---
préfère, v. *chemin, m.* *route, f.*
 This room is much larger than that parlour. ---
grand, adj. *salon, m.*
 These candles are better than those. ---
chandelle, f.
 (There was) a great battle between George
Il y eut, v. *combat, m.* *entre, p.*
 and Stephen ; the former had a broken² nose¹,
Etienne, *eut, v.* *le cassé, p. p.* *nez, m.*
 and the latter lost a tooth. --- In the engagements
perdit, v. *bataille, f.*
 which took place between the Austrians
qui, pro. *eurent, v.* *lieu, m.* *Autrichien, m.*
 and the French, the former lost two
Français, m. *perdirent, v.*
 thousand men, and the latter fifteen hundred -
homme,
 Among the peaches which you sent² me¹ at two
Parmi, p. *pêche, f.* *que, pro.* *avez envoyées* *à*
 different times, I observed that the former
différent, adj. *fois, f.* *ai remarqué, v.*
 were better than the latter.
étaient, v.

Ce qui, in the nominative case, *ce que*, in the accusative what. This pronoun is never joined to any noun : it always may be turned into *that which*, or the *thing which* ;

and *ceci, cela*, this, that, are only used when speaking of things, the word *thing* being always understood : ex.

Je sais ce qui est arrivé, I know *what* has happened.

Savez-vous ce que je pense ? Do you know *what* I think ?
Ceci me plait, *This* pleases me ; i. e. *this thing, &c.*

Cela me fait peur, *That* frightens me ; i. e. *that thing, &c.*

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

May I know what causes your grief
puis,v. savoir,v. cause,v. chagrin,m.
 and sadness ? --- Your father has (a good deal)
tristesse,f. beaucoup, adv
 of friendship for you ; for, he ¹never⁴
car,c. ne jamais,adv.
 refuses³ you² what you ask of him. ---
refuse,v. demandez,v. & lui.
 You seem much dejected ; tell me what
paraissent,v. bien,adv. abattu,adj. dites-moi
 vexes you. ---- Go and tell my father what
fâche,v. Allez,v. & dire,v.à,p.
 has passed here, and do not forget what you
s'est passé,v. ici,adv.. & oubliez,v.
 have seen, and what you have heard. ---- Give
entendu,p.p.
 me this, and take that. ---- I prefer this to
prenez,v. préfère,v.
 that.

OF PRONOUNS RELATIVE.

These pronouns are called *relative*, because they have always a reference to some other noun or pronoun in the discourse, either expressed or implied. They are declined as follows :

SINGULAR and PLURAL.

Both Genders.

Nom.	<i>qui,</i>	who, which, that.
Gen.	<i>de qui, or dont,</i>	of whom, whose,* of which
Dat.	<i>à qui,</i>	to whom, to which.
Acc.	<i>que, qui,†</i>	whom, which, that.
Abl.	<i>de qui, dont,</i>	from whom, from which.
Acc.	<i>quoi, que,</i>	what.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de quoi, or dont,</i>	or from what.
Dat.	<i>à quoi,</i>	to what.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>lequel,</i>	<i>laquelle,</i> which.
Gen. Abl.	<i>duquel, or dont,</i>	<i>de laquelle,</i> of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>auquel,</i>	<i>à laquelle,</i> to which.

PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	<i>lesquels,</i>	<i>lesquelles,</i> which.
Gen. Abl.	<i>desquels, or dont,</i>	<i>desquelles,</i> of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>auxquels,</i>	<i>auxquelles,</i> to which.

The noun, or pronoun, to which the pronoun relative has a reference, is called the *antecedent*, with which it must agree in gender and number : ex.

Je connais un homme qui doit aller voir le camp, I know a man *who* is to go and see the camp.

In this sentence *qui* has a reference to *homme*, man, because I can say, *lequel homme*, which man, &c.

J'ai lu la lettre que vous m'avez envoyée, I have read the letter (*that*) you sent me.

In this last sentence *que* has a reference to *lettre*, letter, because it may be said, *laquelle lettre*, which letter, &c.

* *Whose*, being used interrogatively, must be rendered in French by *à qui* : ex.

A qui est ce livre ? Whose book is this ?

† *Qui*, whom, is never used in the accusative but when it is governed by some of the prepositions : ex.

Avec qui, With whom. *Pour qui,* For whom.
or when it signifies *what person* : ex.

Amenez qui vous voudrez, Bring whom you please.
that is, *what person* you please.

has touched me to the quick. - - - The town to
touché,p.p. *vif*,m. *ville*,f.
 which he is gone is precisely the same
allé,p.p. *précisément*,adv *même*, adj.
 place through which we went in (coming up)
place,f. *par*,p. *où* *passâmes*,v. *en*,p. *venant*,p.act.
 to London. - - - (This is) the door through which
Voici,adv.

the thieves went into the house. - - - The pri-
voleur,m. *entrèrent*,v.
 son in which they used to shut up
on,pro. *avait coutume*,v. *de renfermer*,v.
 the prisoners, has been demolished.
prisonnier,m. *détruite*,p.p.

Quoi, what, and sometimes *that* or *which*, is never used
 in the nominative case : in the other cases it is generally
 used in an indeterminate signification, and is never ex-
 pressed except in speaking of inanimate things, and espe-
 cially when it has for its antecedent, *ce* or *rien*: ex.

C'est à quoi je vous conseille It is *what* I advise you to
de penser, think of.
Il n'y a rien à quoi il ne soit There is nothing for *which*
disposé, he is not disposed.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Of what does your sister complain? - - - What !
se plaint-elle,v.
 you dare answer me thus ! - - - For what do
osez,v *répondre*,v *ainsi*,adv. *Pour*,p. *se*
 you³ call² me¹? - - - Why did you
appelez,v. *Pourquoi*,adv. *avez*,v.
 bring that man before me? what is he
amené,p.p. *devant*,p.
 guilty of? - - - What is your brother sorry
coupable,adj *fâché*,adj.
 for? - - - At what were¹ you² playing,¹ when I came
de *à* *jouiez*,v. *suis*
 in? - - - To what shall² we¹ apply² ourselves? -
entré,v. *appliquerons*,v. *nous*,pro.
 (There³ is⁴) nothing⁵ for which he is² not¹
Il y a,v. *ne rien*,adv. *a* *soit*,v. *ne*

fit. - - - - In what do you intend to spend
propre,adj. à *proposez-vous*,v. de,p. *passer*,v
 your holidays ?
vacance,f.pl.

When we speak of irrational beings or inanimate things in the genitive, dative, or ablative cases, we make use of *lequel*, *laquelle*, which, &c. instead of *qui* ; also after a preposition, and when who, whom, or which, refer to one or more objects on which the choice is to be formed : ex.

Le cheval auquel vous donnez à boire, The horse to which you give some drink.
La fenêtre sur laquelle vous appuyez, The window upon which you lean.
Apportez lequel vous voudrez, Bring which you please

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The trade to which you apply,
commerce,m. *vous vous appliquez*,v
 and the profession to which you are devoted,
profession,f. *dévoué*,p.p.
 are very honourable. - - - (Is that) the horse for
Est-,v.ce,p.là,adv.
 which you gave a hundred guineas ? - - Lying
avez donné,p.p. *Mensonge*,m.
 is a vice for which young people (ought to)
gens,pl. *doivent*,v.
 have the greatest horror. - - - The table upon
horreur,f. *table*,f. *sur*,p.
 which you write, is broken. - - - The reasons
écrivez,v. *cassée*,p.p.
 upon which you ground your system are
appuyez,v. *système*,m.
 satisfactory. - - - (There are) four drawings ; which
satisfaisant,adj. *Voilà*,adv. *dessins*,m.
 do you choose ? - - - (Here are) two pears ; which
choisissez,v. *Voici*,adv. *poire*,f.
 will you have ? - - They are two sisters ; which
voulez,v. *sont*,v.
 do you like the best ?
aimez,v. *le mieux*,adv.

OF PRONOUNS INTERROGATIVE.

They are called *interrogative*, because they are used only in asking questions, and have no antecedent : they are declined with the article indefinite.

SINGULAR and PLURAL.

Both Genders.

Nom. Acc.	<i>qui</i> , who, whom.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de qui</i> , of or from whom.
Dat.	<i>à qui</i> , to whom, whose.
Nom. Acc.	<i>quoi</i> , or <i>que</i> , what ; *
	Or, <i>qu'est-ce qui</i> , <i>qu'est-ce que</i> .
Gen. Abl.	<i>de quoi</i> , of or from what.
Dat.	<i>quoi</i> , to what.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Feminine.

N. A.	<i>quel</i> , or <i>lequel</i> ,	<i>quelle</i> , or <i>laquelle</i> , what, which.
G. A.	<i>de quel</i> , <i>duquel</i> ,	<i>de quelle</i> , <i>de laquelle</i> , of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>à quel</i> , <i>auquel</i> ,	<i>à quelle</i> , <i>à laquelle</i> , to what, which.

PLURAL.

Masculine.

Feminine.

N. A.	<i>quels</i> , or <i>lesquels</i> , <i>quelles</i> , or <i>lesquelles</i> , what, which.
G. A.	<i>de quels</i> , <i>desquels</i> , <i>dequelles</i> , <i>desquelles</i> , of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>à quels</i> , <i>auxquels</i> , <i>à quelles</i> , <i>auxquelles</i> , to what, which.

Qui, who, whom, as an interrogative pronoun, always refers to persons, and never to things ; and it may be expressed by *quelle personne* ? what person ? *Quoi* and *que*, what, have always a reference to things and never to persons, and may be expressed by *quelle chose* ? what thing ? According to the French idiom, *quoi* can never be put before a verb as its accusative ; it is always *que* : ex.

Qui est-là ?

Who is there ?

De quoi parlez-vous ?

What are you speaking of ?

Que voulez-vous ? or *qu'est-ce que vous voulez ?*

What do you want ? (*that is*,
What is it that you wish ?)

* When *what*, in English, signifies *How much*, it must be expressed in French by *combien*.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Who was the first king of France ? --- Who can
fut, v. *peut, v.*
 give credit to a young man who does not speak
ajouter, v. foi *dit, v.*
 the truth ? --- Of whom were¹ you² speaking¹, when
vérité, f. *parliez, v.*
 I came ? --- To whom did you lend my
vins, v. *avez, v.* *prêté, p. p.*
 slate ? --- Whom do you seek ? --- Who told
ardoise, f. *cherchez, v.* *a dit, v.*
 it to you ? --- From whom do you know it ? --- What¹
savez, v.
 are² you³ doing² ? --- What do you say ? --- What
faites, v. *dites, v.*
 do you ask of me ? --- Who is the man
demandez, v. *est, v.*
 who can boast of being without defect ? ---
peut, v. se vanter, v. d'être, v. sans, p. défaut ?
 What is the name of your father ? --- What is his
nom, m.
 occupation ? --- What are his amusements ? --- What
occupation, f. *sont, v. plaisir, m.*
 is his business ? --- In what city does he² live¹ ? ---
sont, v. affaires, f. pl. ville, f. demeure, v.
 What is the country in which he was born ?
pays, m. a pris naissance.

In the last instances it may easily be seen, that *quel*, or *quelle*, what, is always joined to some substantive with which it must agree in gender and number.

In order to avoid repetition, *lequel*, *laquelle*, which are elegantly used as substantives for *quel*, or *quelle*, and the substantive to which it is joined ; and then *lequel*, must always be followed by a genitive, either expressed or understood : ex.

<i>Une de mes sœurs est mariée,</i>	One of my sisters is married.
<i>Laquelle est-ce ? that is,</i>	<i>Which is it ? that is</i>
<i>laquelle de vos sœurs</i>	<i>which of your sisters</i>
<i>est-ce ?</i>	<i>is it ?</i>

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

One of your cousins is arrived from the
cousin, m. arrivé, p. p.
continent ; which is it ? ---- An aunt of yours was
continent, m. était, v.
ill last week ; which was
malade, adj. dernière, adj. semaine, f.
it ? ---- I have heard that two horses of yours
ouï dire, v.
were lost : tell me which. -- My brother
étaient, v. perdu, p. p. dites, v.
wrote to me, that two of your sisters (are going)
écrivit, v. vont, v.
to learn French : which are they ? ---
apprendre, v. Français, m. sont, v.
'They (were speaking) of a relation of his, and
parlaient, v. parent, m.
of one of my friends ; which were they ?
amie, f.

OF PRONOUNS INDEFINITE.

These pronouns are called *indefinite* or *indeterminate*, because they generally are substituted for the name of a vague and indeterminate object. Among them some are used as nouns adjective, being always joined to a noun substantive ; others are sometimes used as pronouns without a substantive, and sometimes as adjectives with a substantive.

<i>Aucun, m. aucune, f.</i>	None, not any, any one.
<i>Autre,</i>	Other, any other.
<i>Autrui,</i>	Others, other people.
<i>Chacun, m. chacune, f.</i>	Each, every one, every body.
<i>Chaque,</i>	Every, each.
<i>L'un l'autre, sing. m.</i>	One another, each other.
<i>Les uns—les autres,</i>	{ Some—others. Some—some
<i>L'un et l'autre, sing. m.</i>	
<i>L'un ou l'autre, sing. m.</i>	Both.
<i>Ni l'un ni l'autre, sing. m.</i>	Either.
<i>Nul, m. nulle, f.</i>	Neither.
	No one.

Pas un, m. pas une, f.

Personne,

La plûpart de, des,

Plusieurs,

Quelconque,

Quelque,

Quelque chose,

Quelque—que,

Quel—que, sing. m.

Quelle—que, sing. f.

Quelque chose qui or que,

Quoi que,

Quoi que ce soit que,

Tout ce qui, or que,

Quelqu'un, m. quelqu'une, f.

Quiconque,

Qui que ce soit, or fût,

Quoi que ce soit, or fût,

Rien,

Tel, telle, tels, telles,

Tel qui, tels qui,

Telle qui, telles qui,

Tout,

Tout le monde,

Tout—que,

Not one.

Nobody, none, no one, any one, any body.

Most.

Many, several.

Whatever, whatsoever.

Some, any

Something, any thing.

Whosoever, whatsoever,

whatever, however,

howsoever, though, &c

Whatever, whatsoever.

Some, some one, some. body, any body.

Whatever, whatsoever.

Whoever, nobody in the world, nobody at all, any body whatever, no man living, let him be who he will, or be who he may, &c.

Whatever, nothing in the world, nothing whatever.

Nothing, any thing.

Such a one, such.

Such as he, she, they, who, that, &c.

Every, every thing.

Every body, any body.

As—as, for all, although, however, &c.

OBSERVATIONS on some of the above PRONOUNS.

Aucun, aucune, is never used but in the singular, and always requires *ne* before the verb ; it relates to a person or thing mentioned before ; but in interrogative sentences, and when it expresses a doubt, it is used without a negation : ex.

Aucun ne s'est encore avisé de vous contredire, Y a-t il aucun (ou aucune) de vous qui le souffrît ?	None has yet thought of contradicting you. Is there any of you who would suffer it ?
---	---

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

None of the books which you saw	me	
buying,	pleases me. ---	Of all the apples
acheter, v.	plait, v.	pomme, f
which you gave	me, none is yet	
	avez, v. données. p. p.	encore, adv.
fit to eat. ----	Is there	any of you who
bon, adj. à, p. manger, v.	Y a-t-il,	
applies to study	as much as he can ? ---	Among
s'applique, v. étude. f.		le peut, v.
all the ladies	you know,	is there any one who
dame, f	connaissiez, v.	
(would have)	married him ? --	Phillip is cer-
eût voulu, p. p	épouser, v.	Philippe cer-
certainly	a very wicked	man, for none
tainement, adv.	méchant, adj.	car, c.
of his friends speak	well of him. ----	Do you
	parle, v.	
know any news ?	No, sir,	I know
savez, v nouvelle	monsieur,	sais, v.
none -- I was in	trouble,	and none of
étais, v. dans, p.	embarras, m.	
my friends have relieved	me.	
a, v. secouru, p. p.		

Nul, pas, un, are always accompanied by a negation, and can only be used as a nominative to the verb: *Personne* is likewise attended with a negation, except in sentences of doubt, admiration, or interrogation: ex.

Nul ne peut se flatter d'être agréable à Dieu,	No one can flatter himself to be agreeable to God.
Pas un ne le croit,	Not one believes it.
Personne s'est-il jamais ex- primé avec plus de grâce que Sheridan ?	Did ever any body express himself with more grace than Sheridan ?

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

No one in this world is free from
en, p. monde, m. exempt, adj.
 fault - - - No one can pretend to be per-
défaut, m. prétendre, v. être, v. par-
 fectly happy in this land of mi-
faitement, adv. dans, p. terre, f.
 sery. - - All the sailors perished at sea ;
matelot, m. ont, v. péri, p. p. sur, p. mer
 not one escaped. - - - The soldiers are all re-
a échappé, p. p. soldat, m. re-
 turned ; not one has remained behind. - - -
venu, p. p. est, v. resté, p. p. derrière, adv.
 Nobody can boast of being without im-
se, pro. vanter, v. être, v. sans, p.
 perfections. - - As nobody speaks to you,
Comme, adv. parle, v.
 you ought not to speak to any body. - - - Did
devez, v. & parler, v. A-t-il
 ever any body know in what happiness
jamais connu, p. p. en, p. bonheur, m
 consists ?
consiste, v.

Autre refers to persons and things, and is an adjective that precedes its substantive, unless used as a noun ; but *autrui* refers to persons only, and is invariable, and can only be used in the genitive or dative case : ex.

Cette plume n'est pas bonne, This pen is not good, give
donnez-lui en une autre, him another.
Ne prenez pas le bien d'au- Do not take other people's
trui, goods.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Your brother has lost his books ; shall I
perdu, p. p. &
 give him others ? - - - As you broke my
donnerai, v. avez cassé, p. p.
 penknife, you will give me another. - - Other peo-
canif, m. donnerez, v.
 ple's opinions are not the rule of mine. - - -
sentiment, m. règle, f.

Do not speak ill of other people, if you
parlez, v. mal, adv.
 will have nobody speak ill of you. --
voulez, v. que, c. parle, v.
 Always² remember¹ that principle of na-
souvenez-vous de ce principe, m. na-
 tural law, do not to others what you
tuel, adj. loi, f. faites, v.
 would not wish that (they should do) to you. --
voudriez, v. on fît, v.
 What are other people's troubles, if (they be com-
peine, f. si, c. on les com-
 pared) with ours.
pare, v. aux

Chaque and *chacun* are not used indifferently ; *chaque* always requires a substantive after it, and *chacun* represents a noun not expressed in the sentence, both relating to persons or things :

Chaque langue a ses idiomes Each language has its pe-
particuliers, culiar idioms
Chacun à son tour, Every one in his turn.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Every thing in its time. -- Every virtue has
chose dans, p. temps, m.
 its reward, and each vice has its punishment. --
récompense, f. châtiment, m.
 Let every soldier keep his post, to
Que se, pro. tienne, v. à poste, m. pour, p
 avoid any surprise from the enemy. --
éviter, v. tout, adj. surprise, f. de la part de l'ennemi.
 Every one thinks and acts for himself. -- Do not
pense, v. agit, v. soi.
 speak all at once, but each in your turn. --
à la fois, adv. à
 England expects (that) every man (will do) his duty
attend, v. fera, v. devoir, m.
 in case of danger. -- Trees bear their fruits
en Arbre, m. portent, v.
 each in its season. -- (Let us give) to every
dans, p. Rendons, v.

one what belongs to him. --- Let every one
appartient, v. Que
 meddle with his own business.
se, pro. mêle, v. de propre, adj. affaires, pl.

L'un l'autre are susceptible of gender and number, and express a reciprocity in the action, and may be applied to persons or things; and if there be a preposition in English, it must be placed between them: ex.

Ils se haïssent l'un l'autre, They hate *each other*.
Ils parlent mal l'un de l'autre, They speak ill *of one another*.
Les voleurs se défient les uns des autres, Thieves mistrust *one another*.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Fire and water destroy one another. -- My
se, pro. détruisent, v.
 sisters can not bear each other. --
peuvent, v. se, pro. souffrir, v.
 I love one another, said our Lord
Aimez-vous, v. dit, v. Seigneur, m
 to his disciples. -- The seasons follow each
disciple, m. saison, f. se, pro. suivent, v.
 other without interruption. --- Honest men
sans, p. gens
 (ought to) esteem one another. --- They
devraient s'estimer
 do justice to one another. --- It is rare
se, pro. rendent, v. rare, adj.
 to hear two authors speak well of one
d'entendre auteur, m. dire, v. du bien, m.
 another. -- Multiplication teaches to multiply
Multiplication, f. enseigne, v. à multiplier, v.
 two numbers by each other. -- The columns
nombre, m. par, p. colonne, f.
 were close against one another.
étaient, v. serré, adj. contre, p.

L'un et l'autre always requires the verb in the plural, and may likewise be applied to persons or things: *ni l'un ni l'autre* require the verb to be put in the singular, if that pronoun be placed before the verb, and in the

plural if it come after it ; but in both cases the verb must be preceded by the negation *ne* : ex.

L'un et l'autre ont raison, Both are in the right.
Ni l'un ni l'autre ne répond, Neither of them answer.
 or *ils ne répondent ni*
l'un ni l'autre.

When the preposition relates to *both*, it must be placed before *l'un* and *l'autre*, and repeated ; and *both* is not expressed in French, when it precedes two nouns or pronouns united by the conjunction *and* : ex.

Il reçoit de l'argent de l'un - He receives money from
et de l'autre, both.
Son frère et sa sœur sont Both his brother and sister
morts, are dead.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Both serve to the same purpose. --- I
servent, v. même, adj. usage, m.
 called on your cousins, and I heard
ai passé, p.p. chez *cousine, f.* *ai appris, p.p.*
 that both had been married a week be-
que *avaient, v.* *marié, p.p.* *semaine, f.* au-
 fore. --- Honor your father and mother,
paravant, adv. *Respectez, v.*
 and endeavour to please both. --- Do you speak
tâchez, v. *de plaire, v.* à *parlez, v.*
 of my brother or sister ? I speak of both. --- Apples
parle, v. *Pomme, f.*
 and pears are good fruits, but peaches are pre-
poire, f. *pêche, f.* *pré-*
 ferable to both. --- I wrote to both, but neither of
férable, adj. *ai écrit, v.*
 them answered my letters. - Yesterday I expected
à *a répondu, p.p.* *attendais, v.*
 my two best friends, but neither of them came. --- I
vint, v.
 will give it to neither of them. --- Both religion
donnerai, v.
 and virtue are the bonds of civil society
lien, m.

Quelque—que. *Quelque* immediately joined to a noun followed by *que*, expresses an indeterminate quality or quantity ; it is declinable before a substantive, and indeclinable before an adjective, and requires the verb to be put in the subjunctive mood : ex.

Quelques fautes que vous ayez faites, on vous pardonnera, *Whatever faults you may have committed, they will forgive you.*

Quelque grandes que soient vos fautes, on vous pardonnera, *However great your faults be, they will forgive you.*

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Whatever efforts people make to hide
effort, m. on, pro. fasse, v. pour, p. voiler, v.
 truth, it (is discovered) sooner or later. -- What-
se découvre, v. tôt, adv. tard, adv.
 ever services you (may have) done to your
service, m. ayez, v. rendus, p. p.
 country, it will reward you for them. --- What-
*patrie, f. récompensera, v. **
 ever capacity a man may have, he ought not to
puisse, v. doit, v. se
 boast. -- However equitable your² offers³ be¹,
vanter, v. offre, f. soient, v.
 I do not believe they will be accepted. -- 'Though³
crois, v. soient, v. acceptée, p. p.
 kings⁵ be⁴ (ever so) powerful,² they die
soient, v. puissant, adj. meurent, v.
 as well as the meanest of their subjects. -- However
bas, adj. sujet, m.
 learned those ladies may be, they sometimes²
savant, adj. quelquefois, adv.
 mistake¹.
se, pro. trompent, v.

Quel que, quelle que must be thus divided, when it is immediately followed by a verb or a personal pronoun, and agree in gender and number with the noun to which it relates ; it likewise requires the verb to be put in the subjunctive mood : ex.

* See the Rule, page 103.

Quelle que soit votre faute, *Whatever* your fault may
on vous pardonnera, be, they will forgive you.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Whatever the enemy be, whose malice³ you¹
ennemi,m. malice,f.
dread,² you ought to rely on your
appréhendez,v. devez,v. vous reposer,v. sur,p.
innocence. - - - Laws condemn all criminals,
condamnent,v. criminel,m.
whoever they may be. - - Whatever your inten-
puissent,v. inten-
tions (may be,) I think that you (are in the wrong.)
tion,f. soient avez tort
Whatever the reasons be which you (may allege,)
raison,f. alléguiez,v.
they are not sufficient. - - - Whatever these books
suffisant,adj. livre,m.
be, send them to me. - - - Whatever her fortune be,
fortune,f.
he says he 'never⁴ (will marry³) her².
dit,v épousera,v.

Quelque chose qui, or que, quoi que, quoi que ce soit que, tout ce qui, or que always relate to things, and never to persons ; with this difference, that, in French, we generally begin with either *quelque chose que* or *qui, quoi que, or quoi que ce soit que*, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood : ex.

Quelque chose qu'on vous *Whatever* may be said to
dise, ne le croyez pas, you, do not believe it.
Quoi que ce soit qu'on vous *Whatever* they may say to
dise, ne le croyez pas, you, do not believe it.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Whatever may happen to you in this world,
puisse,v. arriver,v. monde,m.
'never³ murmur² against Divine Providence, for
murmurez,v. contre,p. car,c
whatever we may suffer, we deserve it. - - What-
souffrions,v. méritons,v.
ever I (may do,) you always blame me. - - - Who is
fasse,v. blâmez,v.

the man who has stolen his money ? I know not ;
volé, p.p. sais, v.
 but whoever he (may be,) and whatever he may say,
soit, dise, v.
 if my father catch him, he shall be punished. - - -
attrappe, v. puni, p.p.
 In whatever your master employs you do it
à emploie, v. faites, v.
 heartily. - - - - Whatever you may say, your
de bon cœur, adv. disiez, v.
 brothers shall be punished, if they deserve it.
*seront, v. * méritent, v.*

On the contrary, we always make use of *tout ce qui*, or
que, when *whatever* can be turned into *all that which*, or
every thing which ; and may be placed either at the begin-
 ning or in the middle of a sentence, according to its situa-
 tion in English, with the following verb in the indicative
 mood : ex.

Il fera toujours, tout ce qu'il He will always do *what-*
vous plaira, *ever, or every thing, you*
please.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

In whatever you do, be guided by ho-
faites, v. guidé, p.p. hon-
 nesty and probity ; and in whatever you say,
nêteté, f. dites, v.
 never deviate from the path of truth. - -
vous écarterez, v. sentier, m.
 Whatever is pleasing is not always useful. - - -
agréable, adj. utile, adj.
 Tell me whatever you think of me, and I will
Dites, v. pensez, v. di-
 tell you whatever I think of you. - - - Never speak
rai, v.
 of whatever has passed between us both. - - She is
s'est passé entre, p. deux.
 so curious, that she will know whatever I
curieux, adj. veut, v. savoir, v.
 do. - - Whatever glitters is not gold. - - - I will pay
fais, v. luit, v. or paierai, v.
 you to-morrow whatever I owe you.
dois, v.

* *Si* loses the *i* before *il*, he : *ils*, they.

Quelque always expresses an indeterminate signification, and is generally joined to a substantive with which it agrees in number ; and *quelqu'un*, *quelqu'une*, make *quelques-uns*, *quelques-unes*, in the plural : ex.

<i>Quelque homme,</i>	<i>Some man.</i>
<i>Quelque femme,</i>	<i>Some woman.</i>
<i>Quelqu'un m'a dit,</i>	<i>Some one has told me, &c</i>

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

When he comes to see us, he has
Quand,adv. vient,v. ∫ voir,v.
 always some tale to tell us. -- He promised
conte,m. à faire,v. a promis,p.p.
 to bring me some filberts and chesnuts. --- Have
de aveline châtaigne.
 you heard any news ? -- Somebody knocks
appris,p.p. nouvelle ? frappe,v.
 at the door ; go and open it. -- Is there
allez,v. ∫ ouvrir,v. Y a-t-il
 any of these ladies who has found my colour-box ?
dame,f. ait,v.trouvé couleur.
 - Have you any (raspberry trees) in your garden ? I
framboisier,m.
 have some. -- Has he any vines ? Yes, he has some.
A-t-il, vigne,f. Oui,adv.

Qui que ce soit, speaking of persons only, may be Englished different ways ; but when by *whoever*, *what person soever*, it must always be followed by the pronouns *il*, *elle*, or *qui*, and sometimes by both, unless it be governed by a verb or preposition : ex.

<i>Qui que ce soit qui me</i>	<i>Whoever deceives me, shall</i>
<i>trompe, il sera puni,</i>	<i>be punished.</i>

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Whoever despises the poor, is himself des-
méprise,v. lui-même mé-
 picable. -- Whoever speaks to you, do not answer. --
prisable,adj. parle ∫ répondez,v.
 Whoever (may presume to) ask you any question
sera,v. question

concerning that affair, pretend not² to¹ know³ (any⁴
touchant,p. *feignez*,v. *de*,p. *savoir*,v.
 thing) (about it³). - - Of whomsoever you speak,
parliez,v
 always speak the truth. - - - To whomsoever you
dites,v. *vous*
 apply, every body (will tell) you the
vous adressiez,v. *tout le monde*,m. *dira*,v.
 same thing - - - With whomsoever you be,
chose,f. *Avec*,p. *soyez*,v.
 always³ behave¹ well³.
comportez-vous,v.

When the above pronoun is Englished by *nobody* in
the world, no man living, &c. ; it must be attended with
 the negation *ne* before the verb ; and when speaking in
 the past tense, *qui que ce fût* must be used : ex.

Je n'en parle à qui que ce soit, I mention it to *no man*
living, to no one.
César ne voulait se fier à qui que ce fût, Cæsar would trust to *no-*
body whatever.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Charity bids us to (speak ill) of nobody what-
ordonne,v. *de*,p. *médire*,v.
 ever, and to do harm to no man living. - - - I
de,p. *faire*,v. *du mal*,m.
 spoke to nobody whatever ; for I saw neither
ai parlé,p.p. *ai vu*,p.p.
 father, mother, nor children. - - Never speak to any
parlez,v.
 body whatever of what I told you. - - He acquainted
ai dit *fit part à*
 nobody in the world with his projects. - - - My brother
de *projet*,m.
 was so honest that he mistrusted nobody at all. - - -
était,v. *se défiait de*
 Cromwell would trust his life to nobody whatever.
voulut,v. *confier*,v. *vie*,f.

The above observation is to be made with respect to
quoi que ce soit, quoi que ce fût only used in speaking of in-
 animate objects. *Quiconque* is indeclinable, always used
 in the singular, and said only of persons : ex.

Je ne me plains de quoi que ce soit,
Quiconque vous a dit cela &c.
 I do not complain of any thing whatever.
 Whoever told you that, &c.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

My brother enjoys ^{so²} good³ a¹ health⁴, that
jouit, v. de, p. *si*
 (for these) three years he never complained of
depuis, p. *s'est plaint, p. p.*
 any thing whatever. - - - - - He is so lazy that
 he applies to nothing whatever. - - - - - You
s'applique, v.
 may go and take a walk in the garden,
pouvez, v. aller, v. *ou vous promener, v.*
 but do not touch any thing whatever. - - - Who-
touchez, v. à, p.
 ever believes every thing which (he is told) is
croit, v. *on lui dit, v.*
 often deceived. - - - - - He (is ordered) to stop
trompé, p. p. *a ordre* *d'arrêter*
 every one that shall go that way.
passera, v. *par-là.*

It must be observed, that the numeral adjective *one*, used in English as a pronoun indefinite, and admitting of a plural termination, is not to be expressed in French, when it immediately follows an adjective of colour, or any other expressing the shape or size of the object which it implies ; but the adjective must be put in the same number and gender as the substantive which is understood in English : ex.

Quel habit achetterez-vous ? What coat shall you buy ?
un bleu ou un vert ? a blue one or a green one ?
J'ai trouvé deux nids d'oiseaux ; dans l'un il y avait des œufs, et des petits dans l'autre. I have found two birds' nests ; there were eggs in one, and young ones in the other.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

What kind of a hat will you have ? a black
espèce, f. *ou* *ou* *un noir, adj.*

one, or a white one ? a round one, or a
blanc,adj. rond,adj.
 cocked one ? - - - My father has sold
retroussé,adj. vendu,p.p
 one of his horses, which is it ? the black one, or
un ce
 the grey one ? - - - Were there many flowers in
gris,adj. Y avait-il
 his garden ? Yes, (there were) very fine ones,
il y en avait très,adv. beau,adj.
 which my father had sent him from Hol-
envoyé,p.p.
 land. - - - (Here are) several pair of shoes ; which
Voici,adv. soulier,m.
 will you have ? the red ones, or the white
ou rouge,adj.
 ones ? I prefer the black ones.
préfère,v.

Tout—que. *Tout*, preceding a noun immediately fol-
 lowed by *que*, is indeclinable in the masculine and declin-
 able in the feminine, before nouns beginning with a con-
 sonant, and must be repeated before every noun in the
 sentence : ex.

Tout savant qu'il est il se As learned as he is, he
trompe quelquefois, sometimes mistakes.
Toute savante qu'elle est, For all she is learned, she
elle se trompe quelquefois, sometimes mistakes.
Observe well the above construction.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

For all my sister is ugly, she gets friends
laid,adj. se fait,v.
 every where. - - - As amiable as she is, she
par-tout, adv. aimable,adj.
 does not please me at all. - - - For all they are
plait,v. du tout,adv.
 rich, they give² ¹nothing³ to the poor. - - -
donnent,v. \ pauvre,adj.pl.
 Your mother, although, (or for all) she is young, appears
paraît,v.
 old. - - - As generous as he is, he has not given
âgé,adj. a,v donné,p.p

me one farthing. - - His aunt, for all she is angry
liard,m. *tante*,f. *fâché*,adj.
 with him, will forgive him his faults, as great
contre,p. *pardonna*,v. *lui* *faute*,f.
 as they are. - - As young, amiable, handsome,
beau,adj.
 and rich, as my friend's sisters are, they were
étaient,v
 not yet married the last time I saw
encore,adv. *marié*,p.p. *fois*,f. *vis*,v.
 them.

N. B. This will be seen again among the conjunctions.

To the above pronouns may be added the three following expressions, which are generally used in an indefinite or indeterminate manner :

<i>Je ne sais qui,</i>	I know not who, whom.
<i>Je ne sais quoi,</i>	I know not what.
<i>Je ne sais quel, quelle, &c.</i>	I know not which or what.

Je ne sais qui is only said of persons, and signifies a person we do not know. *Je ne sais quoi* is only said of things, and signifies an object which cannot precisely be named or defined ; *Je ne sais quel* is placed before substantives, both of persons and things ; lastly, we sometimes put *un* before *Je ne sais quoi*, and indifferently, *un* or *le* before *Je ne sais quoi* : ex.

<i>Je ne sais qui me parle,</i>	<i>I know not who</i> speaks to me.
<i>Il parle de je ne sais quoi,</i>	He speaks of <i>I know not what</i> .
<i>Je vis je ne sais quel homme,</i>	I saw <i>I know not what</i> man.
<i>Il parle d'un je ne sais qui,</i>	He speaks of <i>I know not whom</i> .
<i>J'ai lu une comédie intitulée, je ne sais quoi,</i>	I have read a play which has for its title, <i>I know not what</i> .

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

When I paid a visit to my friend, I addressed
rendis,v. *∞* *m'adressai*,v

myself to I know not whom. - - He (keeps company
fréquente, v.

with) I know not whom, and that displeases her. - -
déplait, v. lui.

Whilst she (was speaking) to him, she was
Pendant que, c. parlait, v. fut

accosted by I know not whom. - - There is
abordé, p.p. par, p. Il y a, v.

I know not what mean in that behaviour. - - -
de bas, adj. conduite, f.

He complains of I know not what. - - - When I
se plaint, v.

went in, I saw I know not what man, what wo-
entraî, v.

man, what pictures, what figures. - - She speaks
portrait, m. figure, f.

to I know not whom. - - - There is in that I
là dedans, adv

know not what that pleases me.
plait, v.

RECAPITULATORY or promiscuous EXERCISES upon all the PRONOUNS.

Review well your rules and examples before you write.

I speak French. - - You speak English. -
parle, v. parlez, v.

We do not understand what they say to us. - -
comprenons, v. disent, v.

She speaks to you, and robs you (at the same)
parle, v. vole, v. en même

time. - - We have not seen them. - - Your
temps, m. avons, v. vus, p.p.

mother came to see me yesterday, and I
vint, v. voir, v. hier, adv.

(will go to) see her to-morrow. - - Is there any body
irai, v. demain, adv. Est-il

that esteems her more than I do? - - Attention.
estime, v.

cares, credit, money, I have put² (every¹ thing)
soin, mis, p.p. tout

in use. - - They are happy, but we are
en, p. usage heureux, adj.

not so. -- Every body thinks I am the mother of
 * *croit, v.*

that child ; I assure you I am not ---- Ladies,
 * *Mmes,*

are you the companions of Miss le Noir ? Yes,
êtes, v. compagne, f.

we are. -- My uncle gave me a sword, and
 * *a donné, p. p.*

I owe my life to it. --- Whatever (may be)
dois la soient, v.

your troubles, you (ought to) write to me more
peine, f. devriez, v. écrire, v.

frequently. --- I will lend you the book which she
souvent, adv. prêterai, v.

has sent me. -- Believe me, he is very
envoyé, p. p. Croyez, v.

ill. --- I shall be very glad to go
malade, adj. serai, v. aise, adj. de aller, v.

there with you ; for I have something to tell
avec, p. car, c. à dire, v.

him. -- I love your sister, and I owe her res-
aime, v. res-

pect. -- Give me my hat and cloak. ---
pect, m. chapeau, m. mantelet, m.

I have dined with your father and mother. --
dîné, p. p.

They¹ often⁴ procure³ me² that plea-
souvent, adv. procurent, v.

sure. -- If it be not an indiscretion on my part,
ce est, v. f. de part, f.

pray tell me what passed between you
de grâce, dites s'est passé, p. p. entre, p.

and them. -- They have sent you good apples.
pomme, f.

Yes, there were some good ones and some bad
il y avait, v. mauvais, adj.

ones. -- Write to me ; do not write to her. ---
Ecrivez, v. or

Carry some to your sister. -- I will do whatever
Portez, v. ferai, v.

you please. --- The Thames is a very fine
voudrez, v. Tamise, f. beau, adj.

river ; it divides London into two parts. - -
rivière, f. divide, v. en, p. partie.
 London is the capital of England, as Paris is that
capitale, f.
 of France ; it is a fine city, but some of its streets
** rue, f.*
 are very inconvenient and narrow - - - Brest
incommode, adj. étroit, adj.
 is a fine sea-port, † in France, but its entrance
*mer port, m. * entrée, f.*
 is difficult and dangerous. - - Brother, these
difficile, adj.
 books are mine, and not yours. - - - Your
non pas, adv.
 exercise is better than mine, but it is not so
thème, m.
 well written as your sister's. - - - Do you think of
écrit, p. p. ∞ pensez, v. à
 me ? Yes, I do. ‡ - - - You do not know what vexes
pense, v. fâche, v.
 me. - - - I will not accept of any of the
veux, v. accepter, v. ∞
 terms which they offer me. - - - Whom ought
condition, f. offrent, v. devons, v.
 we to worship ? God, who is the father of
∞ adorer, v. Dieu,
 them that love him, and the protector of those
aiment, v.
 that fear him. - - - Of all those who contend
craignent, v. disputent, v.
 against religion, some do it because it per-
contre, p. f. les uns font, v. parceque, c. em-
 plexes them ; others, because they wish :o
barrasse, v. les autres veulent, v. ∞
 have the glory of perplexing its defenders. - - -
embarrasser, v. défenseur, m.
 Those trees are well exposed to the sun,
arbre, m. exposé, p. p. soleil, m
 nevertheless their fruits are not good. - - - I believe
cependant, adv. crois, v
 your uncle is arrived. - - His ability is not so
oncle, m. arrivé, p. p. habileté, f.

* See page 112.

† See the rule, page 57

‡ Look at page 105.

great as yours. - - - Two rivals are generally
grand, adj. *rival, m.*
 enemies of one another. - - - Sister, who gave you
a donné, p. p.
 that letter? Our uncle's servant. - - - What does
lettre, f. *domestique, m.* *∞*
 he write to you? That his library is at our
écrit, v. *bibliothèque, f.*
 service; and I assure you that he has a very good
très, adv.
 one. - - - His letters please me so much, that I
 * *plaisent, v.*
 wish to increase their number. - - Both my
veux, v *∞ augmenter, v.*
 father and aunt are now at Rome: the former
à présent
 writes once a week, the latter writes
écrit, v. *une fois, v.*
 to me twice a year. - - - He that wants
deux fois *manque, v. de, p.*
 virtue, wants (all things). - - - That lady pleases
tout. *dame, f.* *plait, v.*
 you, for you¹ are³ always⁴ speaking³ of her². - - -
car, c. *parlez, v.*
 The beauty of the mind creates admira-
beauté, f. *esprit, m.* *donne, v.*
 tion; that of the soul gains esteem, and that
âme, f. *donne, v.* *estime, f.*
 -of the body love. - - - Most friends are more
corps, m. *amour, m.*
 attached to our fortune, 'than³ ²they are
attaché, p. p. *que ne, c.*
 to our person. - - - Whoever is without virtue
sans, p.
 seldom² values¹ men; and whoever is
rarement, adv. *estime, v.*
 too good, values them (too much). - - - It
trop, adv. *trop, adv.* *Ce*
 is she who told me that this house is not
a dit, p. p. *maison, f.*
 yours - - You believe that Mrs. D. is in your interests,
 † *croyez, v.* *intérêt, m.*

* See the ex. p. 104.

† Look at pages 96 and 97

and I believe nothing of it. - - - Ambition:
crois, v. ne rien, adv.
 (tramples upon) wisdom, honor, probity, and on
foule aux pieds
 their ruins ; it lays the foundation of its great-
ruine, f. élève, v. fondement, m. gran-
 ness. - - - Whatever her intention (may be,) I¹ do
leur, f. soit, v. S
²not⁶ love⁵ her⁴ the less⁷ for it⁴. - - - I assure you that
aime, v. S
 I have answered both her letter and her brother's. - - -
 Nobody in the world has complained of your con-
s'est, v. plaint, p.p.
 duct. - - - When you read the history of the Roman
Quand, c. lirez, v. histoire, f. Romain, adj.
 emperors, you will find one (of them) whose name
empereur, m. trouverez, v.
 was Nero. - - - The study of geography is absolute-
Néron. géographie, f. absolu-
 ly necessary to him who has a taste for his-
ment, adv. du goût, m
 tory. - - - He that sold us this clock did not
a vendu, p.p. pendule, f. a, v.
 cheat us. - - What do you think of it ? - - -
trompés, p.p. S pensez, v.
 Whoever cheats me shall repent (of it.) - - -
trompe, v. se repentira, v. en
 Every body thinks* we shall have peace. - - - When I
croit, v. aurons, v. paix, f.
 went in the members of the assembly were
entraî, v. étaient, v.
 seated every one in his place. - - - I, who did not
assis, p.p. à S
 know that they were reconciled, was much
savais, v. que, c. reconciliés, p.p. fus, v. fort, adv.
 surprised to see them together. - - - England owes
étonné de voir, v. ensemble, adv. doit, v.
 her riches to her naval strength, and the encourage-
forcés, f. pl.
 ment she gives to her commerce. - - - We speak
donne, v. parlons, v

*See the note at the bottom of page 115.

of what has happened to him. - - - Well ! if he
est, v. arrivé, p.p. *Eh bien, int.*
 spend other people's money, he does not spend
dépense, v.
 yours. - - - This illness is much hid ; nevertheless
maladie, f. fort cachée, p.p. cependant, adv.
 I know its origin and effects. - - - She who
connais, v. *
 (was speaking) to you is not yet married.
parlait, v. *encore, adv.*
 Her father, mother, brothers, sisters, uncles,
oncle, m.
 and aunts ; in short, all her relations are dead,
tante, f. enfin, c. parent, m.
 and have left her a considerable fortune. - - -
ont, v. laissé, p.p.
 Those gentlemen have fine horses, but mine are
messieurs cheval, m.
 finer than theirs. - - Do you know any of
connaissiez, v.
 those ladies ? Yes, I know some of them. - - -
connais, v.
 For all they are young and handsome, they have (a
ont, v.
 great deal) of modesty and virtue. - - - That German
Allemand
 nobleman is both poor and proud. - - - - Desire
gentilhomme orgueilleux, adj. Priez, v.
 him to bring them here. - - - Is that the gown
de amener, v. Est-ce robe, f.
 for which you gave five guineas ? - - - If I
pour, p. avez donné, p.p.
 had been in your place, I (would have)
eusse, v. été, p.p. à aurais, v.
 preferred the white one to the black one. - - - -
préféré, p.p.
 How many books are there in that library ? There
y a-t-il bibliothèque, f.
 are three thousand seven hundred and twenty-seven in
 the library, fifty-two upon the table, and nineteen in my
 room - - Whose house is this ? It belongs
appartient, v.

to I know not whom. - - - There is I know not what
Il y a, v.
 in the colour, which pleases much. - - - To what
dans, p. plait, v.
 (does he apply himself) ? - - - This apple, and that he
*s'applique-t-il, v. **
 gave you, are very good. - - - Give me either
donna, v. donnez, v.
 of them. - - - I will send you some thither. - - -
enverrai, v.
 I cannot sell it to you for so² small³ a¹
ne peux pas, v. vendre, v. pour, p.
 sum⁴. - - I prefer the beauty of the mind to that
somme, f. préfère, v.
 of the body. - - - Some like music and some dancing.
Les uns aiment, v. danse, f.
 - - She says she hates that man ; many think she
dit, v. hait, v. croient
 loves him. - - He whom nobody pleases, is more
aime, v. à plait, v.
 unhappy than he who pleases nobody. - - I
malheureux, adj. à
 was near your sister when that happened
étais, v. auprès de, p. quand, c. arriva, v.
 to her. - - Both his father and mother died
moururent, v.
 on the same day. - - - - - As covetous as he is, he
avare, adj.
 gave me a guinea. - - - There are many people
a donné, p. p. Il y a
 whom we esteem, because we do not know them. - -
parceque, c. connaissons
 Whatever has happened to you, I am very sorry
soit, v. arrivé, p. p. fâché, adj.
 for it. - - He would do it in spite of any
voulut, v. faire, v. en, p. dépit, m.
 body whatever. - - Learning is preferable to riches
Science, f.
 and virtue to both. - - - Some philosophers have
philosophe, m. ont, v

* See the Rule, page 122.

thought that the fixed stars were so many
cru,p.p. *fixe*,adj. *étoile*,f. *étaient*,v. *autant*
 suns. - - See with what care, attention, and per-
Voyez,v.
 severance, every animal (rears up) its (young ones.)
élève,v. *petit*,adj.
 - - (Here are) two grammars, which do you pre-
Voici,adv. *ou*
 fer? I prefer this to that. - - - Both are very
 good. - - - He believes nothing of what you
croit,v. *ne rien*,adv.
 told him. - - - You blame him who does
avez dit,p.p. *blâmez*,v.
 not deserve it. - - - Friend, to whom did you
mérite,v. *avez*,v.
 speak? I spoke to nobody; for I saw
parlé,p.p. *ai parlé*,p.p. *car*,c. *ai vu*,p.p.
 neither of them. - - Each country has its peculiar
particulier,adj.
 customs; in France, they* eat with the fork, in England,
coutume,f. *on*,pro.
 we eat with the knife; in France, they eat the meat
on,pro.
 well done; in England, we eat it half raw.
cuite,p.p. *à moitié crue*,adj.

SECT. IV.

OF VERBS AND THEIR DIFFERENT SORTS

Verbs are usually divided into seven sorts, viz.

1. *Les verbes auxiliaires*, auxiliary.
2. *Les verbes actifs*, active.
3. *Les verbes passifs*, passive.
4. *Les verbes neutres*, neuter.
5. *Les verbes réfléchis*, reflective.
6. *Les verbes personnels*, personal.
7. *Les verbes unipersonnelles*, impersonal.

Some of them are *regular*, that is to say, they follow the general rule of the conjugation to which they belong; others do not, and are called *irregular*.

The *auxiliary verbs* are *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be.

* See page 95.

These two auxiliaries are used to conjugate all the compound tenses of the other verbs.

The *active verbs*.—In this class, the action is transitive, that is, it passes from the subject to the object : ex.

Le maître punit les écoliers The master *punishes the*
 paresseux, *lazy scholars.*

The active verb sometimes governs two cases : one to which the action directly refers, or which is the direct object of the action, and is therefore called the *direct* or *absolute case* ; the other, to which the action refers but indirectly, and is called the *indirect* or *relative case* : ex.

Votre sœur a écrit une Your sister *wrote a long*
longue lettre à mon frère, letter to *my brother.*

A long letter is the direct or absolute case, and *to my brother*, the indirect or relative case, of the verb *wrote*. The direct case can be no other but the *accusative* of a noun or pronoun ; but the indirect is either the *genitive*, *dative*, or *ablative*.

In the *passive verbs*, the action is received or suffered by the subject : ex.

Les écoliers paresseux *Lazy scholars* shall be
seront punis, punished.

In the *neuter verbs*, the action is intransitive, that is, it remains in the agent : ex.

<i>Je dors,</i>	<i>I sleep.</i>		<i>Vous voyagez,</i>	<i>You travel.</i>
<i>Nous étudions,</i>	<i>We study.</i>		<i>Elle soupire,</i>	<i>She sighs.</i>

In the *reflected verbs*, the action returns upon the agent that produces it : ex.

<i>Il se repent,</i>	<i>He repents himself.</i>
<i>Elle se loue,</i>	<i>She praises herself.</i>

These verbs have always *se* before their infinitive, and are conjugated with a double pronoun.

The *personal verbs* are those which are conjugated with three persons, in the singular and plural, throughout all their tenses.

The *impersonal verbs* have *only* the third person of the singular number.

N. B. There is a kind of verbs which may be distin-

guished by the name of *reduplicative*, always expressing a repetition of the action : ex.

Recommencer,	To begin again.
Refaire,	To do again, &c.

In these verbs, the English word *again* is to be rendered in French by the syllable *re* prefixed to the radix of the verb, and NOT by *encore*.

All the above verbs may be *simple* or *compound*.

A verb is *simple* which cannot be divided without losing its meaning : as,

Appeler,	To call ;	Voir,	To see ;
Bâtir,	To build ;	Prendre,	To take ;
Mentir,	To lie ;	Vivre,	To live ;

which would mean nothing, if they were divided.

A verb is *compound* when it is preceded by one or more syllables : as,

Rappeler,	To recall.	Prévoir,	To foresee.
Rebâtir,	To rebuild.	Entreprendre,	To undertake.
Démentir,	To belie.	Survivre,	To outlive, &c.

These last verbs are generally formed by prefixing to them *part* or *the whole* of a preposition.

CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

To conjugate verbs is to give them different inflections or terminations, according to their *moods*, *tenses*, *persons* and *numbers*.

MOODS

Mood or *mode*, in the sense it is taken here, is a grammatical term, which means the *manner* of affirming, or denoting, in the verbs, by different inflections.

There are, in the French language, four moods, absolutely distinct from each other, by the several inflections, or by some other difference. They are,

L'infinitif,	The infinitive.
L'indicatif,	The indicative.
L'impératif,	The imperative.
Le subjonctif, ou conjonctif,	The subjunctive, or con- junctive.

Of the INFINITIVE MOOD.

This mood is so called, because it only expresses the action or signification of the verb in an *indefinite* and *indeterminate* manner, that is, without affirmation, and without any relation as to time, number or person : ex.

<i>Parler,</i>	To speak.
<i>Chanter,</i>	To sing.
<i>Danser,</i>	To dance.

Of the INDICATIVE MOOD.

This mood is thus called, because it not only *indicates* the affirmation in the different tenses of the verbs, but likewise the time, number, and person ; without being preceded or governed by either a conjunction or verb :

<i>J'écris une lettre,</i>	I write a letter.
<i>Il chante une chanson,</i>	He sings a song.

Ecris and *chante* are two verbs in the indicative mood, because they do not require to be preceded by a conjunction* or another verb to make a complete sense. The definition of this mood will be better understood by comparing the little that has been said with what is going to be said with respect to the subjunctive mood.

Of the IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The name which has been given to this mood, is derived from a Latin word which signifies to *command* ; and the imperative is in fact but a manner of denoting in the verbs the action of *commanding*, *entreating*, *praying*, *exhorting*, and sometimes *forbidding* : ex.

<i>Né méprisez, pas les avis</i>	<i>Do not despise the advice</i>
<i>que je vous donne,</i>	<i>which I give you.</i>

It is easy to perceive that this manner of speaking is but an exhortation ; as if I had said,

<i>Je vous exhorte, je vous prie</i>	<i>I exhort, I entreat you, not</i>
<i>de ne pas mépriser mes</i>	<i>to despise my advice.</i>
<i>avis,</i>	

This mood has no first person in the singular, because it is impossible for a man to command himself ; and if it

*Among the conjunctions, some govern the indicative, others the subjunctive : this will be explained hereafter.

have the first person plural, it is because we speak as much to others as to ourselves ; as when we say,

Evitons tout ce qui pourrait offenser les autres, *Let us avoid every thing that might offend others.*

The second person *singular* and the first and second *plural* admit of no pronouns before them ; as to the third, in both numbers, it is always preceded by the pronoun *il* or *elle*, &c. and the conjunction *que*.

Of the SUBJUNCTIVE, or CONJUNCTIVE.

The name of subjunctive, or conjunctive, sufficiently conveys what its use is in a sentence. It may be defined thus ; a manner of expressing the different tenses of the verbs without any affirmation. In fact, the subjunctive never affirms ; it is always preceded by, or subject to some conjunction ; and if it should be met with in a sentence containing an affirmation, that affirmation can only be expressed by the verb that precedes the subjunctive, which is used only to modify that affirmation. In the subsequent sentence,

Je travaille afin que vous vous reposiez, *I work, that you may rest yourself,*

the affirmation is only expressed by *je travaille*, I work, and what follows only expresses the end which I propose by working, viz. to procure you some rest. Again,

Je désire que vous fassiez votre devoir, *I wish that you may do your duty ;*

I affirm that I wish ; but it is clear there is no affirmation in these words, *that you may do your duty*, since I do not say that you do, that you have done, that you will do your duty ; but only that I wish you may do it. My wish is not doubtful ; but it is very doubtful whether you will or may do your duty.

TENSES.

There are, strictly speaking, but three natural and proper *tenses* in the verbs : viz

<i>Le passé,</i>	The past.
<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>Le futur,</i>	The future.

In the French language, the tenses are divided in the following manner, viz. *five* in the infinitive mood ; *three* of them are *simple*, the *two* others *compound*.

In the *simple* tenses, the verb is expressed in one word:
ex.

<i>Parler,</i>	To speak
<i>Chantant,</i>	Singing.
<i>Dansé,</i>	Danced.

The compound tenses are conjugated with some one of the auxiliary verbs, *avoir*, to have, or *être*, to be, joined to a participle passive : ex.

<i>Avoir parlé,</i>	To have spoken.
<i>Ayant chanté,</i>	Having sung.
<i>Etre aimé,</i>	To be loved.
<i>Etant aimé;</i>	Being loved.

SIMPLE TENSES.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>Le participe actif,</i>	The participle active.
<i>Le participe passif,</i>	The participle passive.

COMPOUND.

<i>Le prétérît,</i>	The preterite.
<i>Le participe passé ou composé,</i>	The participle past or compound.

There are ten tenses in the *indicative* mood, viz. *five* *simple*, and *five* *compound*: they are,

SIMPLE.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>L'imparfait,</i>	The imperfect.
<i>Le prétérît,</i>	The preterite.
<i>Le futur,</i>	The future.
<i>Le conditionnel,</i>	The conditional.

COMPOUND OF

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>L'imparfait,</i>	The imperfect.
<i>Le prétérît,</i>	The preterite.
<i>Le futur,</i>	The future.
<i>Le conditionnel,</i>	The conditional.

N. B. The imperative admits of no tense but the present.

The *subjunctive* mood has four tenses ; *two* *simple*, and *two* *compound*.

SIMPLE.

Le présent,
Le prétérít,

The present.
 The preterite.

COMPOUND OF

Le présent,
Le prétérít,

The present.
 The preterite.

Before we proceed any further on the conjugations, it has been thought proper to explain the different uses of the above tenses, as one of the most important articles in a language, the precision of which partly depends on the difference which custom sets between one tense and another with regard to the sense of the sentence. We shall endeavour to be short and concise, and say nothing but what is useful, in hopes that the following explanation will be sufficient to remove a difficulty which constantly puzzles the learner.

TENSES of the INDICATIVE MOOD

SIMPLE.

PRESENT.

This tense is used when the state, action, or impression, mentioned by the verb, *is existing, doing, or happening*, at the very time we are speaking : ex.

<i>Je me porte bien,</i>	<i>I am well.</i>
<i>Votre sœur est malade,</i>	<i>Your sister is ill.</i>
<i>Nous nous promenons,</i>	<i>We are walking.</i>
<i>Vous écrivez,</i>	<i>You are writing.</i>
<i>Ils jouent,</i>	<i>They are playing, &c.</i>

The present is also used,

1. When speaking of actions or things which we *habitually do, are accustomed to do, or can do* : ex.

<i>Nous dinons toujours à deux heures,</i>	<i>We always dine at two o'clock.</i>
<i>Elle étudie l'histoire,</i>	<i>She studies history</i>
<i>Vous parlez Français.</i>	<i>You speak French.</i>
<i>Lit-il l'Anglais,</i>	<i>Does he read English.</i>

2 When speaking of actions which are to be done in

a very short time, we generally use this tense instead of the future : ex.

Je pars ce soir pour la campagne, I set out this evening for the country.

Que faites-vous demain ? What do you do to-morrow?

Instead of

Je partirai ce soir pour la campagne, I shall set out this evening for the country.

Que ferez-vous demain ? What will you do to-morrow ?

3. This tense is also constantly used in French, instead of the preterite and compound of the *preterite*, especially in *orations*, or *set discourses*, and in *poetry*, in order to represent a past action or event as present to the mind of the hearers or readers.

IMPERFECT.

This tense has two uses ; *in the first*, which probably is the origin, of its name, it expresses an action *present* or *doing* at the time of an action *that is past* : as when I say,

Mon frère apprenait sa leçon quand vous arrivâtes, My brother was learning his lesson when you arrived.

In the above sentence, the act of learning, though past with respect to my narration, was present at the moment your arrival took place ; therefore this tense is but imperfectly preterite and imperfectly present.

In the second, the imperfect is employed every time we speak of *actions of habit*, or *actions reiterated* at a time which is not *defined* : ex.

Quand j'étais à Londres, j'allais souvent voir mes amis, When I was in London, I often went to see my friends ;

that is, I often used to go, or I frequently went, &c.

The imperfect is likewise used when we speak of the *character*, or some *inherent* and *distinctive quality*, of persons or things no longer existing ; and after the English conjunction *if*, though the verb be preceded by *should*, *could*, *would* : ex.

- Philippe, père d'Alexandre le Grand, était le plus fin politique de son temps,*
César avait je ne sais quoi de grand dans la physionomie,
Carthage faisait un prodigieux commerce par le moyen de ses vaisseaux, qui allaient jusqu'aux Indes,
Palmire et Persépolis étaient de grandes et belles villes, S'il venait, je le paierais,
George II. était d'une taille plutôt petite que moyenne; il avait les yeux très-saillans, le nez grand, et une belle complexion; il était doux, modéré et humain; sobre et régulier dans sa manière de vivre: il se plaisait dans la pompe et dans l'appareil militaire, et était naturellement brave; il aimait la guerre comme soldat, l'étudiait comme une science, et avait sur ce sujet, une correspondance établie avec quelques-uns des plus grands généraux que l'Allemagne ait produits,
- Philip, the father of Alexander the Great, *was* the deepest politician of his time.
 Cæsar *had* I know not what of great in his physiognomy.
 Carthage *carried on* a prodigious trade by the means of her ships, which *went* as far as the Indies.
 Palmyra and Persepolis *were* large and fine cities. *If* he would come, or came, I would pay him.
 George II. *was* in his person rather lower than the middle size; he *had* remarkable prominent eyes, a high nose, and a fair complexion; he *was* mild, moderate and humane; in his way of living, sober and regular: he *delighted* in military pomp and parade, and *was* naturally brave. he *loved* war as a soldier, *studied* it as a science, and *had*, on this account, a settled correspondence with some of the greatest generals that Germany has produced.

From the above instances it might confidently be believed, that every difficulty attending the use of this tense will be entirely removed; I shall however add, as a farther illustration, that whenever the verb, which in English is in the preterite, can be rendered by the past

tense of the verb *to be*, and that preterite changed into the participle active, or when that preterite can be turned into the verb in the infinitive mood preceded by *I, thou, he, &c. used to*, that past tense must be made in French by the imperfect : ex.

Je lisais, I used to read ; or I was reading.

PRETERITE.

This tense is so called because it always expresses an action done at a time *determined* or *specified* by an adverb, or some circumstance in the speech, and so entirely elapsed, that nothing more remains of the time when that action was doing : ex.

Je fus malade hier pendant deux heures, I was ill yesterday for two hours.

La dernière fois que nous allâmes le voir, nous eûmes un accueil favorable, The last time we went to see him, we had a kind reception.

Vous écrivîtes à votre frère il y a huit jours, You wrote to your brother eight days ago.

Ils essayèrent de grandes pertes l'année, passée, They underwent great losses last year.

FUTURE.

This tense simply expresses that an action will be done at a time that is not yet come : ex.

Je vous verrai demain à Londres, I shall see you to-morrow in London.

Mon frère vous écrira la semaine prochaine, My brother will write to you next week.

In French, as well as in English, we sometimes express an action that is to be done instantly, by the verb *aller*, or *s'en aller*, to go, immediately followed by an infinitive : ex.

Je vais, or je m'en vais écrire à ma tante, I am going to write to my aunt.

Je vais, or je m'en vais partir, I am going to set out.

Which signify,

Je lui, écrirai tout présentement, I will write to her immediately.

Je partirai dans l'instant, I will set out instantly.

To express an uncertainty in a future tense, that is, to express that it is not decided that such a thing will be

done, we make use of the verb *devoir*, immediately followed by a verb in the infinitive mood ; and that is the only instance wherein *devoir* does not imply *obligation*, *necessity*, &c. : ex.

*Le roi doit partir pour
Cheltenham vers le mi-
lieu du mois de Juillet,
et ne doit revenir qu'à
la fin dumois d'Août,
that is,*

*The king is to set out for
Cheltenham about the
middle of July, and is
not to return till the lat-
ter end of August.*

*On suppose que le roi par-
tira, &c. et qu'il ne re-
viendra qu'à, &c.*

*It is supposed that the king
will set out, &c. and will
not return till, &c.*

CONDITIONAL.

The name of this tense is the true definition of it : in fact, it is always used to express some condition or *supposition*, and has always a reference to the *present*, because, by supposing the condition effected, the action, mentioned by the conditional, becomes present : ex.

*Je lirais, si j'avais des
livres,*

*I should read, if I had
books.*

*Vous auriez la fièvre si
vous mangiez de ce
fruit,*

*You would have a fever if
you ate of that fruit.*

*Je serais mortifié, s'il per-
dait son procès,*

*I should be mortified, if he
should lose his law-suit.*

It is sometimes used, instead of the future, after the conjunction *que* : ex.

*Il a promis qu'il vien-
drait,*

*He has promised to come,
or that he would come.*

This tense is often called the *uncertain tense*, because it expresses an action made uncertain by the conditional that follows it ; and some grammarians place it among the tenses of the subjunctive mood, though it is very certain that it never is governed by any of the conjunctions which require a subjunctive mood after them.

COMPOUND TENSES.

COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT.

The compound of the present is employed in two different manners.

1. It expresses an action past in an indeterminate time, but not very far distant from the time we speak : thus we must say,

<i>J'ai vu mademoiselle votre</i>	<i>I have seen your sister, and</i>
<i>sœur et lui ai parlé,</i>	<i>spoken to her.</i>
<i>Le roi de Prusse a conquis</i>	<i>The king of Prussia has</i>
<i>la Silésie,</i>	<i>conquered Silesia.</i>
<i>Cela s'est passé avanta-</i>	<i>That has passed advanta-</i>
<i>geusement pour votre cousin,</i>	<i>geously for your cousin.</i>

In the above sentence, the action is certainly past, but the time when it passed is neither determined nor specified.

2. It expresses a time definite and determinate, but of which there yet remains some part to elapse : ex.

<i>Les fruits ont très-bien</i>	<i>Fruits have very well suc-</i>
<i>réussi, cette année,</i>	<i>ceeded this year.</i>
<i>Nous n'avons pas eu beau-</i>	<i>We have not had much snow</i>
<i>coup de neige cet hiver,</i>	<i>this winter.</i>
<i>Il a plu toute cette semaine,</i>	<i>It has rained all this week,</i>
<i>tout ce mois,</i>	<i>all this month.</i>
<i>Nous avons vu d'étranges</i>	<i>We have seen strange things</i>
<i>choses dans ce siècle,</i>	<i>in this century.</i>

In the above sentences, *this year, this week, this winter, &c.* are times which still last, and are not yet elapsed.

To express an action recently past, we sometimes make use of the verb *venir*, immediately followed by *de*, and the verb in the infinitive mood: ex.

<i>Je viens de le voir passer,</i>	<i>I have just seen him go by.</i>
<i>Le roi vient d'arriver,</i>	<i>The king is but just arrived</i>
<i>Elle vient d'expirer,</i>	<i>She is but just dead.</i>

The same tense may be expressed by the verb *faire*, preceded by the negation *ne*, and followed by the conjunction *que*, with an infinitive preceded by *de*: ex.

<i>Il ne fait que d'arriver,</i>	<i>He is but just arrived.</i>
<i>Je ne fais que de sortir,</i>	<i>I have but just gone out.</i>

N. B. This particle *de* is here indispensable, because, without it, the expression would have quite another sense, and would express a continuation or a frequent reiteration of the action : ex.

Vous ne faites que sortir, *You do nothing but go out.*
Elle ne fait que jouer et *She does nothing but play and*
danser, *dance.*

COMPOUND OF THE IMPERFECT.

This tense expresses an action passed before another which is past also ; but with this difference, that the action expressed by this tense is the principal object of the person who speaks, and the following sentence is subordinate to that expressed by the compound of the imperfect. - So that, though the time of that subordinate sentence be defined, that of the principal sentence is not the less indeterminate, because the former has no influence on the latter. As when we say,

Nous avions dîné lorsqu'il *We had dined, when he ar-*
arriva, *rived,*

our principal object is to express the action of dining as past, without determining at what time, but only before an action which is past also, without, however, the latter being a consequence of the former ; for, we do not mean to say, that he stayed, or waited, till we had dined, to arrive

COMPOUND OF THE PRETERITE.

This tense also expresses an action past or done before another which is likewise past ; and it is determined by the following sentence, which is the principal object of the attention. Thus when we say,

Quand ils eurent achevé *When they had done play-*
de jouer, ils se mirent à *ing, they began sing-*
chanter, *ing.*

We mean at first to convey that they *began singing*, and that it was not till they *had done playing*: in which case, the action of having done playing, is subordinate to this, *they began singing*, and consequently the latter determines the time of the other.

The following observation is very plain, and will in some manner fix the use of the above tense, viz. that it is hardly ever used except after the conjunctions.

<i>Aussitôt que,</i>	} As soon as ;	<i>Après que,</i>	After ;
<i>D'abord que,</i>		<i>Lorsque,</i>	When ;
<i>Dès que,</i>		<i>Quand,</i>	

which *never* precede a compound of the imperfect, unless the verb express a *custom* or *habit*.

Lastly, we must use the compound of the preterite when the adverb *bientôt*, soon, precedes or follows the verb *was* or *had*, to express an action or thing as done and accomplished : ex.

L'affaire fut bientôt faite, The business *was soon* over
J'eus bientôt fini de man- I *had soon* done eating.
ger,

COMPOUND of the FUTURE.

The name of this tense seems at first to convey a contradiction : what is meant by it is, not that an action can be future and past at the same time, but only that the action, which is to come, will be past when another action shall happen, or even before it happens : ex.

Je serai parti quand vous I *shall be gone* when you
reviendrez, (*shall*) come back.
Quand vous aurez fini vos When you (*shall*) *have done*
affaires, vous viendrez me your business, you shall
trouver, come to find me.

In the first sentence, *I shall be gone*, which is a future time with respect to the present we speak in, will be a past time by the time you *will* or *purpose* to arrive, &c.

COMPOUND of the CONDITIONAL.

This tense generally supposes a condition, as the conditional present, with this difference, that the condition taking place, the action expressed by the verb in the conditional is accomplished, and consequently in a past time : ex.

Je vous aurais écrit il y a I *would have written* to you
un mois, si j'eusse su a month ago, if I *had*
votre adresse, *known* your direction.

The *indicative* mood has another tense, formed by the compound of the present of the verb *avoir*, joined to a participle passive, which has not been inserted in the preceding tenses, on account of its being seldom used : ex.

Quand j'ai eu dîné, je suis parti, When I (have) had dined, I set out.

But it is more elegant and natural to say,
Après avoir dîné, je suis parti, After I had dined, I set out.

TENSES of the SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The subjunctive or conjunctive has no future distinguished from the *present*, because the present of the subjunctive likewise expresses a future tense : ex.

Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne, I do not think he *will* come.

Add the following observations to the latter :

1. When the verb which precedes the conjunction is in the present or future of the indicative, and when we do not mean to express an action passed in the second verb, we must put this last verb in the present of the subjunctive mood : ex.

Je souhaite que vous réussissiez dans votre entreprise, I wish you may succeed in your undertaking.

J'attendrai qu'il vienne, I will wait till he come.

2. When the verb which is before the conjunction is in some of the past tenses, or conditional, and we wish not to designate by the second verb a past time more distant than that of the first verb, we must put this second verb in the preterite of the subjunctive :

Alexandre ordonna que tous ses sujets l'adorassent comme un dieu, Alexander ordered, that all his subjects should worship him like a god.

Je voulais que vous écrivissiez à votre sœur, I wished you to write to your sister.

Il souhaiterait que vous prissiez des mesures plus convenables, He would wish you to take more becoming measures.

3. The compound of the present of the subjunctive mood is used when we speak of an action past and accomplished with regard to the tense of the verb which precedes the conjunction ; and this tense is generally the present, compound of the present, or future of the indicative : ex

Il doute qu'aucun philosophe ait jamais bien connu l'union de l'âme avec le corps,

Il a fallu que j'aie consulté tous les médecins,

Je n'aurai garde d'y aller, que je n'aie reçu quelque assurance, d'être bien accueilli,

I doubt whether any philosopher have ever well understood the union of the soul with the body.

I was obliged to consult all the physicians.

I shall by no means go thither, till I have received some assurance of being welcome.

4. After the imperfect, preterite, compound of the imperfect, of the indicative, or one of the two conditionals, we use the compound of the preterite of the subjunctive mood ; likewise after the conjunction *if*, when preceding a compound tense : ex.

J'ignorais que vous eussiez embrassé cette profession là,

Vous n'avez pas cru que je fusse arrivée avant vous,

Nous aurions été fâchés que vous vous fussiez adressé à d'autres qu'à nous,

I did not know you had embraced that profession.

You did not believe I should have arrived before you.

We should have been sorry if you had applied to any others but us.

NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

A tense is composed of numbers ; that is, the singular and the plural.

That there are three persons has already been observed under the personal pronouns ; we have only to remark, that some of these three persons are always joined to the verb as its nominative case, therefore the verb must agree with that nominative in number and person : ex.

Je fais, I do.

Tu fais, Thou dost.

Il fait, He does.

Nous faisons, We do.

Vous faites, You or ye do

Ils font, They do.

The pronoun *vous*, you, denotes the second person singular and plural, with this difference, that when we speak to a person only, the attribute, or qualifying noun must be put in the singular : ex.

Vous êtes marié, and not mariés, You are *married*.

Vous étiez général de l'armée, and not généraux, You were *general* of the army.

But we must say *mariés* and *généraux*, if we speak to many.

When *the verb* has two or three nouns or pronouns as its nominatives, it must be put *in the plural*, though all these nominatives be in the singular ; because *two or more* nouns in the singular are equivalent to a plural, with regard to verbs as well as to adjectives and participles passive : ex.

Mon frère et ma sœur sont partis, My brother and sister *are* gone.

This has already been mentioned in the adjectives.

If, among these nominatives, one is of the first person and the other of the second, or one is of the second and the other of the third, the verb must agree with the first in preference to the second, and with the second in preference to the third ; observing that, in French, the person spoken to, must be named first ; and the person speaking, is to be mentioned the last : we must therefore say,

C'est vous et moi qui avons découvert tout ce complot, It is you and I who *have* discovered all that plot.

Ce n'est ni vous, ni ma sœur qui avez ouvert la porte, It is neither you, nor my sister, who *have* opened the door.

Vous, mon père, et moi, partirons, demain, You, my father, and I *will* set out to-morrow.

The pronoun relative *qui*, in these and the like sentences, always takes place of the first or second person, and only agrees with the others in number ; it is for this reason we must say,

C'est moi qui suis cause de ce malheur, It is *I* who *am* the cause of that misfortune.

C'est vous qui avez révélé ce secret, It is *you* who *have* revealed that secret.

Ce n'est ni lui, ni moi qui l'avons fait, It is neither *he* nor *I* who *have* done it.

There are four conjugations in the French language. Each is distinguished by the termination of the verb in the infinitive mood

The first makes <i>er</i> ,	as <i>donner</i> , to give.
The second <i>ir</i> ,	as <i>punir</i> , to punish.
The third <i>avoir</i> ,	as <i>recevoir</i> , to receive.
The fourth <i>re</i> ,	as <i>rendre</i> , to render.

N. B. It is necessary that the learner should be well acquainted with the manner of conjugating the two following verbs, because of the frequency of their occurrence in sentences, and in forming the compound tenses of all other verbs.

CONJUGATION of the AUXILIARY VERB *AVOIR*, TO HAVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Compound of the Present
<i>Avoir</i> , to have.	<i>Avoir eu</i> , to have had.
Participle active.	Compound of the Past
<i>Ayant</i> , having.	<i>Ayant eu</i> , having had.
Participle passive.	
* <i>Eu</i> , had.	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.	Plural.
<i>J'ai</i> , I have.	<i>Nous avons</i> , we have.
<i>Tu as</i> , thou hast,	<i>Vous avez</i> , you or ye have.
<i>Il a</i> , he has.	<i>Ils ont</i> , }
<i>Elle a</i> , she has.	<i>Elles ont</i> , } they have.
Imperfect. Singular.	Plural.
<i>J'avais</i> , I had.	<i>Nous avions</i> , we had.
<i>Tu avais</i> , thou hadst.	<i>Vous aviez</i> , you had.
<i>Il avait</i> , he had.	<i>Ils avaient</i> , they had.
Preterite. Singular.	Plural.
<i>J'eus</i> , I had.	<i>Nous eûmes</i> , we had.
<i>Tu eus</i> , thou hadst.	<i>Vous eûtes</i> , you had.
<i>Il eut</i> , he had.	<i>Ils eurent</i> , they had.
Future. Singular.	
<i>J'aurai</i> , I shall or will have.	
<i>Tu auras</i> , thou wilt, &c. have.	
<i>Il aura</i> , he will, &c. have.	

* Pronounce *eu* like the French letter *u*, throughout this verb.

Plural.

Nous aurons, we shall, &c. have.*Vous aurez*, we will, &c. have.*Ils auront*, they will, &c. have.

Conditional. Singular.

J'aurais, I should, could, would, or might have*Tu aurais*, thou wouldst, &c. have.*Il aurait*, he would, &c. have.

Plural.

Nous aurions, we should, &c. have.*Vous auriez*, you would, &c. have.*Ils auraient*, they would, &c. have.

COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle passive, *eu*, had, to the preceding .

Compound of the Present.

J'ai eu, &c. I have had, &c.

Compound of the Imperfect.

J'avais eu, &c. I had had, &c.

Compound of the Preterite.

J'eus eu, &c. I had had, &c.

Compound of the Future.

J'aurai eu, &c. I will or shall have had, &c.

Compound of the Conditional.

J'aurais eu, &c. I would, should, could, or might have had, &c.

We say, also :

J'eusse eu, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Aie, have thou.

Plural.

Ayons, let us have.*Ayez*, have ye or you.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que j'aie, that I have, or may have.*tu aies*, thou mayest have.*il ait*, he may have.

Plural.

<i>Que nous ayons,</i>	that we may have.
<i>vous ayez,</i>	you may have.
<i>ils aient,</i>	they may have.

Preterite. Singular.

<i>Que j'eusse,</i>	that I might have or had.
<i>tu eusses,</i>	thou mightest have.
<i>il eût,</i>	he might have.

Plural.

<i>Que nous eussions,</i>	that we might have.
<i>vous eussiez,</i>	you might have.
<i>ils eussent,</i>	they might have.

COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle passive *eu*, had, to the two preceding : ex.

Compound of the Present.

Que j'aie eu, &c. that I may have had.

Compound of the Preterite.

Que j'eusse eu, &c. that I might have had.

The learner ought to conjugate the preceding verb with a negation : ex.

<i>Je n'ai pas,</i>	I have <i>not</i> ;
<i>Nous n'avons pas,</i>	We have <i>not</i> ;

always placing *ne* before the verb, and *pas* after it.

CONJUGATION of the AUXILIARY VERB

ETRE, TO BE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.

Etre, to be.

Participle Active.

Etant, being.

Participle Passive.

Été, been.

Compound of the Present

Avoir été, to have been.

Compound of the Past.

Ayant été, having been.

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present. Singular.

Je suis, I am.*Tu es*, thou art.*Il est*, he is.

Plural.

Nous sommes, we **are**.*Vous êtes*, you are.*Ils sont*, they are.

Imperfect. Sing.

J'étais, I was.*Tu étais*, thou wast.*Il était*, he was.

Plural.

Nous étions, we were.*Vous étiez*, you were.*Ils étaient*, they were.

Preterite. Sing.

Je fus, I was.*Tu fus*, thou wast.*Il fut*, he was.

Plural.

Nous fûmes, we were.*Vous fûtes*, you were.*Ils furent*, they were

Future. Singular.

Je serai, I shall or will be.*Tu seras*, thou wilt, &c. be.*Il sera*, he will, &c. be.

Plural.

Nous serons, we shall, &c. be.*Vous serez*, you will, &c. be.*Ils seront*, they will, &c. be.

Conditional. Singular.

Je serais, I would, could, should, or might be.*Tu serais*, thou wouldst, &c. be.*Il serait*, he would, &c. be.

Plural.

Nous serions, we should, &c. be.*Vous seriez*, you would, &c. be.*Ils seraient*, they would, &c. be.

COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle passive of this verb, *été*, been, to the simple tenses of the Indicative Mood of the verb *avoir* : ex.

Compound of the Present.

J'ai été, &c. I have been, &c.

Compound of the Imperfect.

J'avais été, &c. I have been, &c.

Compound of the Preterite.

J'eus été, &c. I had been, &c.

Compound of the future.

J'aurai été, &c. I shall or will have been, &c.

Compound of the Conditional.

J'aurais été, &c. I should, could, would, or might have been, &c.

We say, also:

J'eusse été, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Sois, be thou.

Plural.

Soyons, let us be.

Soyez, be ye.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que je sois, that I be, or may be.

tu sois, thou mayest be.

il soit, he may be.

Plural.

Que nous soyons, that we may be.

vous soyez, you may be.

ils soient, they may be.

Preterite. Singular.

Que je fusse, that I might be, or were.

tu fusses, thou mightest be.

il fût, he might be.

Plural.

Que nous fussions, that we might be.

vous fussiez, you might be.

ils fussent, they might be.

COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle past of this verb *été*, been, to the two simple tenses of the subjunctive mood of the verb *avoir*: ex.

Compound of the Present.

Que j'aie été, that I may have been, &c.

Compound of the Preterite.

Que j'eusse été, &c. that I might have been, &c.

This verb, as well as the preceding, is to be conjugated with the negation: ex.

Je ne suis pas, I am *not*.
Nous ne sommes pas, We are *not*.

N. B. Here it is peculiarly necessary to observe, that the two above verbs, *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be, are only auxiliaries when they are joined with some participle passive of another verb ; otherwise, *être* may properly be called a *substantive verb* ; that is, a verb which only expresses the affirmation, without any inherent quality ; and the verb *avoir* is an *active one*, which signifies *to possess*.

EXERCISES *on the two* AUXILIARY VERBS.
GENERAL OBSERVATION.

Every verb must agree with its nominative case in *person* and *number* ; but after collective nouns, such as, *amas, foule, infinité, nombre, la plûpart*, &c. followed by a genitive, the verb must agree with that genitive in number: ex.

La plupart de ses amis l'ont abandonné, Most of his friends have forsaken him.

In order to ease the learner, the different simple tenses are marked in the following exercises as far as the irregular verbs, when it is hoped every difficulty will be removed by practice and attention. The second person singular, being *seldom*, or never used in conversation, has been omitted throughout the exercises on the verbs.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I have a book. --- I am happy. --- He has
heureux, adj.

a hat which is too big. - - - We have no
trop,adv. grand,adj.

money. --- We are not ambitious. --- You have
argent. *ambitieux*, adj.

a sword. --- You are very proud. ----- Those girls
orgueilleux, adj.

have modesty ; they are virtuous.

modestie, f. *vertueux*, adj.

IMP. I had a friend. - - - I was grateful. - - - My
reconnaissant, adj.

sister had no work ; she was lazy. - - - We had
 ouvrage, *paresseux*, adj

a holiday ; we were very glad of it. - - - You had
congé, *aise*,adj.

company ; but you were not ready. - - Your brothers
compagnie,f. *mais*,c. *prêt*,adj.

had learning ; they were loved by every body.
savoir,m. *aimé*,p.p. de

PRET. (As soon as) I had a fine horse, I was
Dès que,c.

merry. - - - - - My cousin had a little garden ; he
de bonne humeur. *cousin*,m.

was ingenious. - - - As soon as we had bread, we
était adroit,adj. *pain*,m.

were satisfied - - - - You had fine weather ; you were
rassasié,p.p. *temps*

pleased. - - - - - Your friends had beautiful flowers ;
content,adj.

they were very careful of them
soigneux,adj.

FUT. I shall have discretion ; I shall be prudent.
discrétion,f.

- - Miss White shall have a bird which will be very
oiseau,m.

tame. - - - - - We shall have no books, we shall not
apprivoisé,adj.

be learned. - - - You shall have pens and paper ; you
savant,adj.

will be busy. - - - - - The English will have a good
occupé,adj.

admiral ; they will be victorious.

amiral,m. *victorieux*,adj.

COND. I could have a pretty dog. - - - I would
joli,adj. *chien*,m.

not be troublesome. - - - - - Mr. Thomas would have
importun,adj.

good wine : it would be a delicious thing. We
ce *délicieux*,adj. *chose*,f.

would have a dictionary : we would not be negligent
 - - - - - You would have good officers ; you would be

invincible. - - - - - These ladies would have a better
invincible,adj.

reception ; they would be thankful.

accueil,m. *reconnaissant*,adj.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Have patience and be indulgent.* - - - Let her have a gown ; let her be happy. - - - Let us have at least *au moins*,adv.
 some gratitude ; let us be diligent. - - - - Let them *reconnaissance*,f.
 have partridges ; let them be merry. *perdrix*,f. *joyeux*,adj.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may have riches. - - - - That I may be charitable. - - - - That he may have scholars. - - - - That he may be attentive. - - - - That we may have a *attentif*,adj.
 good house. - - - - That we may be well lodged. - - *bien*,adv. *logé*,p.p.
 That you may have your money ; that you may *argent*,m.
 be paid. - - - - - That they may have apples ; that *payé*,p.p.
 they may be ripe. *mûr*,adj.

PRET. That I might have generosity. - - - That I *générosité*,f.
 might not be poor. - - - - - That he might have no *pauvre*,adj.
 pleasure. - - - - - That he might be uneasy. - - - - - That *plaisir*. *inquiet*,adj.
 we might have our share. - - - - - That we might not *part*,f.
 be deceived. - - - That you might have a couple *trompés*,p.p. *couple*,f.
 of fowls. - - - That you might be pleased. - - - - That *content*,adj.
 they might have no pension. - - - That they might not be rewarded. *récompensés*,p.p

Promiscuous EXERCISES upon the COMPOUND TENSES.

I have had (a great deal) of trouble ; I have not *bien* *peine*,f.

* Remember the last observation, page 172, that the *second person plural* must be used throughout the imperative mood.

been rewarded. - - - Your brother would have had
 leave if he had been diligent. - - - If you had
permission,
 married him, you would have had a tyrant,
épousé, p.p. *tyran, m*
 instead of a husband ; you never could have been
au lieu, p. *mari, m.* *ne jamais*
 happy. - - - If we had fought, we could not
combattu, p.p.
 have been conquered. - - - Thomas has had two
vaincus, p.p.
 holidays, because he has been very active. - - -
congé, parceque, c. *actif, adj.*
 If your friend could have had a better watch, he
montre, f.
 would not have been cheated. - - - Your uncle and
trompé, p.p.
 my brother have been wet. - - - You could have
mouillés, p.p.
 killed a hare if you had had a gun.
tué, p.p. *lièvre, m.* *fusil, m.*

After these exercises the learner ought to conjugate the two foregoing verbs, throughout the several tenses of the indicative mood only, first with an interrogation affirmative, and then with an interrogation negative : ex.

SINGULAR.

Affirmatively.

<i>Ai-je ?</i>	have I ?		<i>Suis-je ?</i>	am I ?
<i>A-t-il ?</i>	has he ?		<i>Est-il ?</i>	is he ?
<i>Mon frère a-t-il ?</i>	has my brother ?			
<i>Sa fille est-elle ?</i>	is her daughter ?			

Negatively.

<i>N'ai-je pas ?</i>	have I not ?		<i>Ne suis-je pas ?</i>	am I not ?
<i>N'a-t-il pas ?</i>	has he not ?		<i>N'est-il pas ?</i>	is he not ?
<i>Ma sœur n'a-t-elle pas ?</i>	has not my sister ?			
<i>Votre cousin n'est-il pas ?</i>	is not your cousin ?			

PLURAL.

Affirmatively.

<i>Avons-nous ?</i>	have we ?		<i>Sommes-nous ?</i>	are we ?
<i>Avez-vous ?</i>	have you ?		<i>Etes-vous ?</i>	are you ?
<i>Ont-ils ?</i>	have they ?		<i>Sont-ils ?</i>	are they ?

Vos frères ont-ils ?

have you brothers ? &c.

Ses filles sont-elles ?

are his daughters ? &c

Negatively.

N'avons-nous pas ?

have we not ?

N'avez-vous pas ?

have you not ?

N'ont-ils pas ?

have they not ?

Ses enfans n'ont-ils pas ?

have not his children ?

Ne sommes-nous pas ?

are we not ?

N'êtes-vous pas ?

are you not ?

Ne sont-ils pas ?

are they not ?

Mes sœurs ne sont-elles pas ? are not my sisters ? &c.

N. B. In the interrogations, it must be observed, that when there is a *noun* standing as a nominative to the verb, the pronouns *il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*, though not expressed in English, must be expressed in French immediately after the verb, according to the person and number ; and when the verb terminates with a vowel, a *-t-* is to be added in the third person singular between the verb and the pronoun, to avoid the *hiatus*, the noun beginning the phrase: ex.

Votre oncle a-t-il des enfans ? Has your uncle any children ?

that is, Your uncle, *has he* any children ?

Mon cousin aura-t-il congé ? Will my cousin have a holiday ?

that is, My cousin, *will he have* a holiday ?

The same rule must be observed in the conjugation of the other verbs : ex.

Votre frère joue-t-il du violon ? Does your brother play on the violin ?

Sa sœur dinera-t-elle ici aujourd'hui ? Will her sister dine here to-day ?

But if the sentence begin with *que* interrogative, or an *adverb* followed by a *noun*, the pronoun is not to be expressed, and that *noun* is to be put after the verb : ex.

Que fait votre sœur ? What is your sister doing ?

Comment se porte Monsieur votre frère ? How does your brother ?

When, in French, we make a general interrogation

concerning a sudden *pain, misfortune, accident, &c.* we say,
Qu'est-ce que c'est ? What is the matter ?

But if speaking *to, or of* a person, we must use the verb
avoir, and follow the above rule : ex.

Qu'avez-vous ? What is the matter with
you ?

Qu'a-t-il ? What is the matter with
him ?

Qu'aviez-vous ? What was the matter with
you ?

Qu'avoit votre sœur ce matin ? What was the matter with
 your sister this morning ?

The learner will have no trouble in going through the
 other simple tenses of the indicative mood ; and as for
 the compounds, it needs only to be *remembered*, that *eu*,
 had, or *été*, been, is to be added to the simple tenses of
 the verb *avoir*, to have : ex.

Ai-je eu ? have I *had* ?

N'ai-je pas eu ? have I not *had* ? &c.

Ai-je été ? have I *been* ?

N'ai-je pas été ? have I not *been* ? &c.

Promiscuous EXERCISES on the preceding RULES.

Have I my books ? - - Am I not unhappy to
malheureux, adj. de
 have lost his friendship ? - - Has he no money ?
perdu, p.p. amitié, f.

Is my sister arrived ? - - Has not your father a great
arrivée, p.p.

deal of friendship for you ? - - - What is the matter
 with you ? - - Have not your parents sent you
envoyé, p.p.

all the money which you wanted ? - - - - Have we
dont aviez, v. besoin.

not a garden ? - - - Are we not very happy ? - - - -

Have you a good gun ? - - - Are you dexterous ? - - -
adroit, adj.

Have not my brother and sister a beautiful coach ? - -

Are not Paul and Thomas two pretty children ?
joli, adj.

Are your brothers arrived ? - - - Are you not glad to see them ? - - - What is the matter with him ?
de voir, v.

Have they not spoken to him ? - - Had you not a
parlé, p.p.

little dog ? - - Was not your paper very good ? - Are not the English ladies generally handsomer than
généralement, adv.

the French ? - - Shall you have occasion for your dic-
besoin, m. de

tionary ? - - - - Shall I not have the pleasure to see
de

you to-morrow ? - - - Were you not in the room ? - - -
demain, adv. chambre, f.

Shall we not have leave ? - - - - Will they not be angry ? - - - - Could you not have had a better watch ?
fâché, adj.

- - - - If France were as rich as England, would
Si, c. était

it not be the best* country in the world ? - - -
ce, pro.

Will you not be ashamed ? - - - - Has not your
honteux, adj.

friend had bad weather ? - - What was the
mauvais, adj. temps ?

matter with him this morning ? - - - - Had not our admiral better seamen than yours ? - - Has he been
matelot

victorious ? - - Would not your hat be too big ? - - - -
victorieux, adj. grand, adj.

Is not your sister older than mine ? - - Are you
âgé, adj.

not happier than if you were married ? - - - - Shall
marié, p.p.

not John have a holiday, if he be diligent ? - - Has not
Jean est

your cousin more money than you ? - - Was not your wine very dear ?

The learner will soon be convinced how necessary it is to know these two verbs perfectly well ; because, inde-

* See the Degrees of Comparison, p. 60 &c.

penderly of being constantly used, the compound tenses of all the others are formed with them. When he is well acquainted with their usage, he will only have to add the participle passive to any of their tenses : ex.

J'ai aimé, I have loved or I did love.

Je n'ai pas chanté, I have not sung or I did not sing.

Ai-je parlé ? have I spoken ? or did I speak ?

N'ai-je pas étudié ? have I not studied ? or did I not study ?

Avez-vous dansé ? have you danced ? or did you dance ?

N'avez vous pas écrit ? have you not written ? or did you not write ?

Je suis puni, I am punished.

Je ne suis pas attendu, I am not expected.

Suis-je aimé ? am I loved ?

Ne suis-je pas perdu ? am I not undone ?

Etes-vous marié ? are you married ?

N'êtes-vous pas convaincu ? are you not convinced ?

REMARK on the Verb *ETRE*, TO BE.

In English, when this verb immediately precedes any noun signifying *old, hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, or afraid*, it should be rendered in French by *avoir*, to have, and the adjective must be changed into its substantive : ex.

Quel âge avez-vous ?

How old are you ?

J'ai sept ans,

I am seven years old.

Avez-vous faim ?

Are you hungry ?

Non, mais j'ai soif,

No, but I am thirsty, &c.

EXERCISES.

How old is your daughter ? She is seven

Quel, pro.

fille, f.

years old. --- My son

will be eleven years old

an, m. ∞

fil, m.

(in the) month of April. ----- I was very

au mois, m.

Avril.

grand, adj.

hungry when I arrived. ----- Were you not

quand, c.

suis arrivé, p. p.

very thirsty ? - - He is not afraid. - - You will

grand, adj.

peur.

soon

be warm. - - - - Are you not cold ? - -

bientôt, adv.

chaud.

froid ?

How old are these two young children ? The *enfant*, m.
one is three years old, and the other is not yet

encore, adv.

four. - - - Was not my sister more than ten years old
when she died ?
quand, adv. *mourut*, v.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Parl-er*, to speak.
Participle active. **ant*, speaking.
Participle passive. *é*, m. *ée*, f. spoken.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present *Avoir parlé*, to have spoken.
Past. *Ayant parlé*, having spoken.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Je parl-e, I speak, or I do speak, or I am speaking.†
Tu es, thou speakest.
Il e, he speaks.

Plural.

*Nous *ons*, we speak.
Vous ez, you speak.
Ils ent, they speak.

Imperfect. Singular.

*Je parl-*ais*, I was speaking, spoke, or did speak
*Tu *ais*, thou wast speaking, &c.
*Il *ait*, he was speaking, &c.

* Verbs in this conjugation, the root of which terminates in *G* or *C*, immediately succeeded by *A* or *O*, require, for the softening of their sound, that an *E* be added to the *G*, and a cedilla to the *ç*. Stars are placed where these alterations are required.

† When in English, a participle active is joined to any of the tenses of the auxiliary verb *to be*, to express the continuation of the action, the auxiliary must be left out in French, and the participle put in the same tense, &c. with the auxiliary that is suppressed ;

<i>Je parle</i> , I am speaking ;	<i>Je priais</i> , I was desiring ;
<i>Vous parlez</i> , You are speaking ;	<i>Nous chantions</i> , we were singing,
<i>Nous danserons</i> , we shall be dancing ;	<i>Ils écriraient</i> , they would be writing ;

and not *Je suis parlant*, *vous êtes parlant*, *j'étais priant*, &c. *nous serons dansant*, *ils seraient écrivant*, &c.

Plural.

Nous ions, we were speaking, &c.
Vous iez, you were speaking, &c.
Ils *aient, they were speaking, &c.

Preterite. Singular

Je parl-*ai, I spoke, or did speak.
Tu *as, thou spokest.
Il *a, he spoke.

Plural.

Nous *âmes, we spoke.
Vous *âtes, you spoke.
Ils èrent, they spoke.

Future. Singular

Je parl-erai, I shall or will speak.
Tu eras, thou shalt or wilt speak.
Il era, he shall or will speak.

Plural.

Nous erons, we shall or will speak.
Vous erez, you shall or will speak
Ils eront, they shall or will speak.

Conditional. Singular.

Je parl-erais, I should, would, or might speak
Tu erais, thou shouldst, &c. speak.
Il erait, he should, &c. speak.

Plural.

Nous erions, we should, &c. speak
Vous eriez, you should, &c. speak.
Ils eraient, they should, &c. speak.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present.	<i>J'ai parlé,</i>	I have spoken
Imperfect	<i>J'avais parlé,</i>	I had spoken.
Preterite.	<i>J'eus parlé,</i>	I had spoken.
Future.	<i>J'aurai parlé,</i>	I shall or will have spoken.
Conditional.	<i>J'aurais parlé,</i>	I should, would, or could have spoken.

We say, also :

J'eusse, parlé, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular
 Parl-*e* speak thou.

Plural.

**ons*, let us speak.
ez, speak ye.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que je parl-e, that I may speak, or I speak.
tu es, thou mayest speak.
il e, he may speak.

Plural.

nous ions, that we may speak.
vous iez, you may speak.
ils ent, they may speak.

Preterite. Singular.

*Que je parl-*asse*, that I might speak, or I spoke.
*tu *asses* thou mightest speak.
*il *ât*, he might speak.

Plural.

*nous *assions*, that we might speak.
*vous *assiez*, you might speak.
*ils *assent*, they might speak.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Que j'aie parlé*, that I may have spoken.
 Preterite. *Que j'eusse parlé*, that I might have spoken.

After the same manner are conjugated about 2700 regular verbs. The following are excepted : viz.

Aller, being very irregular, will be seen among the irregular verbs.

Envoyer is only irregular in the future and conditional present : as, instead of saying *j'envoyerais*, I will send, &c. *j'envoyerais*, I would send, &c. according to this conjugation, we say,

Future.

Singular.

J'enverrai, I will send
Tu enverras,
Il enverra,

Plural.

Nous enverrons.
Vous enverrez.
Ils enverront

Conditional.

Singular.

J'enverrais, I would send.*Tu enverrais*,*Il enverrait*,

Plural.

Nous enverrions.*Vous enverriez*.*Ils enverraient*.

PUER (*sentir mauvais*.) This verb is only used in the infinitive mood, present tense, imperfect, future of the indicative, and conditional. Formerly this verb was irregular in the three persons of the present tense of the indicative mood; as *je pus*, *tu pus*, *il put*; custom has, however, reformed the abuse, and will have it, *Je pue*, *tu pues*, *il pue*.

Verbs ending in AYER and OYER, as *essayer*, to try, *envoyer*, to send, change Y into I wherever the letter y is immediately followed by an e mute: ex. *j'essaie*, *tu essaies*, *il essaie*, *j'envoie*, *tu envoies*, *il envoie*, &c.

In the verbs ending in GER, the g must always be followed by a mute e before the vowels a, o: *Manger*, *je mangeais* nous *mangeons*, *il mangea*.

Verbs ending in CER take a cedilla under the c before the vowels a, o: *Percer*; *jeperçai*, *tu perças*, nous *perçons*.

Verbs ending in ER, which have the final syllable of the infinitive preceded by a close é, change this close é in open è before a mute syllable: *Répéter*, *je repèterai*; *espérer*, *j'espère*, *régner*, *tu règnes*, vous *règnerez*.

Verbs ending in ER, which have the final syllable of the infinitive preceded by a mute e, change this mute e in open è before a mute syllable: *Lever* *je lève*, *je lèverai*; *semer*, *tu sèmes*, vous *sèmerez*.

Verbs ending in ELER or ETER, double the consonants l and t before a mute e: *Appeler*, *j'appelle*, *j'appellerai*, nous *appellerons*, *jeter*, *tu jettes*, *tu jetteras*. vous *jetterez*.

The learner having conjugated a verb affirmatively, and negatively, ought to conjugate two others with an interrogation, affirmative, and negative, in the indicative mood only, and so on through the other conjugations, before he attempts the exercises: ex.

Affirmatively.

Manges-tu ? dost thou eat ?*Mange-t-il* ? dost he eat ?*Parlons-nous* ? do we speak ? &c.

Negatively.

Ne parlé-je pas ?

do I not speak ?

Ma sœur ne chante-t-elle pas ?

does not my sister sing ?

N. B. In many verbs, common usage does not admit an interrogation in the first person singular present, of the indicative mood.—Instead of saying *Mange-je* ? Do I eat ? *Punis-je* ? Do I punish ? &c. we say,

Est-ce que je mange ?*Est-ce que je punis* ? &c.

Some verbs ending in e mute, in the first person singular pre-

sent of the indicative mood, change the *e* mute into acute *é* with an acute accent, and *je* after it ; as, *parlé-je*.

It has before been observed, that the compound tenses are easily formed, by adding the participle passive of the verb to any of the tenses of the auxiliaries *avoir* to have, or *être*, to be, as they have been conjugated, either affirmatively, negatively, or interrogatively : ex.

Afirmatively.

J'ai dansé, I have danced, or I did dance.

Je n'ai pas parlé, I have not spoken, or I did not speak.

Interrogatively-affirmatively.

Avez-vous chanté ? Have you sung, or did you sing ?

Interrogatively-negatively.

N'a-t-il pas mangé ? Has he not eaten, or did he not eat ?

Observe that we make use of

Mener,

To take, to carry,

Amener,

To bring,

Emmener.

To carry, or take away

and all the compound verbs of *mener*, whenever we speak of rational, or irrational beings to which nature has given the faculty of walking, if they be not deprived of it through illness or accident: in all other cases we make use of

Porter.

To carry, to take,

Apporter,

To bring,

Emporter,

To carry, or take away,

and all the compounds of *porter*.

N. B. It must be necessarily observed here, previously to the learner's translating the following exercises that the *English auxiliary* verbs, *have, am, do, did, will, shall, can, yet, may, would, could, should, might*, and often *ought*, are most commonly used, in that language, to avoid that repetition of a preceding verb, or in answer to a question or foregoing sentence ; to avoid the repetition of that verb, and often of one or more pronouns ; But in French, the verb, expressed in the first number, or part of the sentence, must always be repeated, as well as the pronouns which it may govern : ex.

Je vous prie de porter demain cette lettre à Monsieur D.

I beg of you to carry that letter to-morrow to Mr. D.

Je la lui porterai avec plaisir,

I will, with pleasure, (carry it to him,) understood.

Vous ne pourriez pas apprendre cette leçon en dix jours,

You could not learn that lesson in ten days.

<i>Il me semble que je pourrais l'apprendre,</i>	It seems to me as if I could (<i>learn it,</i>) understood.
<i>Attendez-vous vos sœurs aujourd'hui ?</i>	Do you expect your sisters to-day ?
<i>Oui, nous les attendons,</i>	Yes, we do, (<i>expect them,</i>) understood.
<i>Votre frère écrit-il à M. votre père ?</i>	Is your brother writing to your father ?
<i>Oui, il lui écrit à présent,</i>	Yes, he is now, (<i>writing to him,</i>) understood.
<i>Apprenez-vous le Français ?</i>	Are you learning French ?
<i>Oui, je l'apprends,</i>	Yes, I am, (<i>learning it,</i>) understood.
<i>Avez-vous acheté les livres dont vous m'avez parlé ?</i>	Have you bought the books which you mentioned to me ?
<i>Non, je ne les ai pas encore achetés,</i>	No, I have not yet, (<i>bought them,</i>) understood.
<i>Ne devraient-ils pas faire savoir à leur père que leur frère est dans la détresse ?</i>	Ought they not to let their father know that their brother is in distress ?
<i>Certainement, ils devraient le lui faire savoir,</i>	Certainly, they ought, (<i>to let him know it,</i>) understood.

EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES.	I	play	sometimes	but	I ne-
		<i>jou-er, v.</i>	<i>quelquefois, adv.</i>	<i>mais, c.</i>	<i>ne ja-</i>
ver		win. - - -	How much does your brother		
<i>mais, adv.</i>		<i>gagn-er, v.</i>	<i>Combien, adv.</i>	<i>∞</i>	
give	for his board ? - - -	We do not	command ;		
<i>donn-er, v.</i>	<i>pension, f.</i>	<i>∞</i>	<i>command-er, v.</i>		
we entreat. - - -	You always	borrow ;	you		
<i>pri-er, v.</i>	<i>toujours, adv.</i>	<i>emprunt-er, v.</i>			
never lend. - - -	You are always	speaking	when		
<i>prêt-er, v.</i>			<i>quand, adv.</i>		
I write. - - - -	Why	do you not	grant		
<i>écris, v.</i>	<i>Pourquoi, adv.</i>	<i>∞</i>	<i>accord-er, v.</i>		
him that favour ? - - -	What do they ask				
<i>grâce, f.</i>	<i>demand-er, v.</i>				
you ?					

IMP. I was desiring them to sing a song. -
pri-er, v. de chant-er, v. chanson, f.
 She was not speaking to you. - - - Were we not jok-
badi-
 ing ? - - - Were you not scolding them when I came ?
n-er, v. grond-er, v. vins, v
 Yes, I was. - - - They were eating fish.
mang-er, v. poisson, m.

PRET. I spoke to them (a long while.) - - - Did
long temps, adv.
 not the king forgive them ? - - No, he did not.
roi, m. pardonn-er, v.
 We wept for joy when we found her. - - -
pleur-er, v. de joie, trouv-er, v.
 Why did you not play on Friday last ? - - - They
∞ Vendredi dernier, adj.
 fastened the man to a tree, and then
li-er, v. arbre, m. ensuite, adv.
 robbed him of his watch, gold ring, and all the
vol-er, v. ∞ montre, f. bague, f.
 money he had in his pocket. - - The soldiers first
poche, f. d'abord, adv.
 pillaged the town, and then slaughtered without
pill-er, v. puis égorg-er, v.
 pity, the old men, women and children.
pitié vieillard, m.

FUT. I will buy a watch the first time I
achet-er, v. fois, f.
 go to London. - - - Will not your father send
vrai, v. envoi-er, v.
 you to school this winter ? - - - What shall we give
école, f. hiver, m.
 him ? - - - Will you not carry the children to the
men-er, v. enfant, m.
 play ? - - - They will empty the bottle if you
comédie, f. vid-er, v. bouteille, f.
 do not take it away.
∞ emport-er, v. ∞

COND. I would lend them money, if
prêt-er, v. leur
 they were not so idle. - - - - - Would not your
paresseux, adj.

mother despise such² a¹ conduct ? - - Why should
 mépris-er, v. *tel, adj.* *conduite, f.*
 we send them thither ? - - - I am sure you would
 sûr, adj.
 marry her, if she were rich. - - - Would they
épous-er, v. *était riche, adj.*
 not pay us, if they had money ?
 pay-er, v.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Bridle my horse and bring him to
Brid-er, v. *cheval, m.* *amen-er, v.*
 me. - - - Give a chair to that lady. - - Let her not
 chaise, f. *dame, f.*
 (come up,) for I am engaged. - - - Let us carry those
mont-er, v. *car, c.* *occupé, p. p.*
 peaches to Mrs. D***. - - - Do not neglect your
pêche, f. *Mme* *néglig-er, v.*
 affairs. - - - I promise that I will not. - Let them hunt.
affaire, f. *promets, v.* *chasser, v.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may help you. - - Though* he
 aïd-er, v. *Quoique, c.*
 do not approve of my plan. - - - Provided*
 approuv-er, v. *plan, m.* *Pourvu que, c.*
 we avoid their company. - - - That you may
 évit-er, v. *compagnie, f.*
 try that gun. - - - That they may not com
éprouv-er, v.
 mand.

PRET. That I might change† my opinion. - -
 chang-er *d'opinion.*
 That he might eat† an apple. - - - That we might not
 pomme, f.
 fall into their hands. - - - That you might
tomb-er, v. *dans, p.* *main.*
 encourage† the industrious. - - - That they might
encourag-er, v. *industrieux, adj.*

* Conjunctions which require the subjunctive mood, as will be seen hereafter.

† See the notes, page 180.

exercise their talents. -- That I might pronounce. --
exerc-er, v. talent, m. prononc-er, v.
 That we might begin.
commenc-er, v.

Promiscuous EXERCISES on the COMPOUND
TENSES.

I have forgotten to bring your penknife. ---
oubl-er, v. de canif, m.
 He has not yet spoken to us. -- Has she brought
encore, adv. son
 her work with her ? -- Yes she has. -- Have we not gain-
gagn-
 ed our cause ? -- Why have you not yet begun
er, v. commenc-er, v.
 your exercise ? --- You had taken the mustard
thème, m. emport-er, v. moutarde, f.
 away. --- You would have judged more favour-
son juger, v. favo-
 ably of him. - Stay here till*
rablement, adv. Rest-er, v. ici, adv. jusqu'à ce que, c.
 we have dined. --- Could we not have assisted
din-er, v. subj. aid-er, v.
 that family ? -- They have broken all the panes
famille, f. cass-er, v. carreau, m.
 of glass in their windows, because they had
vitre de, p. fenêtre, f. parceque, c.
 not illuminated as it had been ordered. --
illumin-er, v. comme, adv. ordonn-er, v.
 I shall have ²dined ¹soon. --- We would have
bientôt, adv.
 sent* them to prison, if they had resisted. --
envoy-er, v. en prison, f. résist-er, v.
 That we may have denied the fact. --- Had you
ni-er, v. fait, m.
 not imitated their manners ? --- They had not exe-
imit-er, v. manière, f. exéc-
 cuted his commands. --- Had I not light-
cut-er, v. commandement, m. allu-
 ed the fire ? --- They would have carried him to
mer, v. feu, m.
 the concert if I had not hindered* them
empêch-er, v.

* For the agreement of these, see the rules on participles.

(from it). . . - We might have accepted of his
en *accept-er, v* *en*
 offers. - - Why did you not ?
offre, f

SECOND CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Pun-ir, to punish.
Participle active.	<i>issant</i> , punishing
Passive	<i>i, m. ie, f</i> punished

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present.	<i>Avoir puni</i> , to have punished.
Past.	<i>Ayant puni</i> , having punished.

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present. Singular.

Je pun-is, I punish, I do punish, or I am punishing

Tu is,

Il it,

Plural

Nous issons, we punish, &c.

Vous issez,

Ils issent,

Imperfect. Singular.

Je pun-issais, I did punish, or I was punishing, &c

Tu issais,

Il issait,

Plural.

Nous issions, we did punish, &c.

Vous issiez,

Ils issaient,

Preterite. Singular.

Je pun-is, I punished, or I did punish.

Tu is,

Il it,

Plural

Nous îmes, we punished, &c

Vous îtes,

Ils irent,

Future. Singular.

Je pun-irai, I shall or will punish.*Tu iras*,*Il ira*,

Plural.

Nous irons, We shall or will punish.*Vous irez*,*Ils iront*,

Conditional. Singular.

Je pun-irais, I should, would, could, or might punish*Tu irais*,*Il irait*,

Plural.

Nous irions, we should, &c. punish.*Vous iriez*,*Ils iroient*,

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *J'ai puni*, I have punished.Imperfect. *J'avais puni*, I had punished.Preterite. *J'eus puni*, I had punished.Future. *J'aurai puni*, I shall, &c. have punished.Conditional. *J'aurais puni*, I should, &c. have punished

We say, also :

J'eusse puni, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Pun-is punish thou.

Plural.

issons, let us punish.*issez*, punish ye.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que je pun-isse, that I may punish, or I punish.*tu isses*.*il isse*,

Plural.

nous *issions*, that we may punish
vous *issiez*,
ils *issent*,

Preterite. Singular.

Que je pun-*isse*, that I might punish, or I punished.

tu *isses*,
il *ît*,

Plural.

nous *issions*, that we might punish.
vous *issiez*,
ils *issent*,

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Que j'aie puni*, that I may have punished.

Preterite. *Que j'eusse puni*, that I might have punished

After the same manner are conjugated about two hundred regular verbs : the following are excepted, as being irregular :

Acquérir, to acquire.

Assaillir, to assault.

Bouillir, to boil.

Courir, to run.

Cueillir, to gather.

Dormir, to sleep.

Faillir, to fail.

Fuir, to flee, to avoid.

Mentir, to lie.

Mourir, to die.

Offrir, to offer.

Ouvrir, to open.

Partir, to set out.

Se repentir, to repent.

Sentir, to smell.

Servir, to serve.

Sortir, to go out.

Souffrir, to suffer.

Tenir, to hold.

Venir, to come.

Vêtir, to clothe.

And their compounds

EXERCISES UPON THIS CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES.	I always	finish	my work
	<i>toujours</i> ,adv.	<i>fin-ir</i> ,v.	<i>ouvrage</i> ,m
before the	others. - - -	Your friend does not	succeed
<i>avant</i> ,p.		<i>ami</i> ,m.	<i>réuss-ir</i> ,v
in	his undertaking. - -	Do we not furnish	arms
<i>dans</i> ,p.	<i>entreprise</i> ,f.	<i>fourn-ir</i> ,v.	<i>arme</i> ,f
against	ourselves ? - -	Why do you hate	him ? - -
<i>contre</i> ,p.		<i>ha-ir</i> ,v.	

They cure the diseases of the body, and
guér-ir, v. maladie, f. corps, m.
 not those of the mind.

IMP. I was building my house when
bât-ir, v. maison, f. quand, adv.
 you demolished yours. - - - Was he not enjoying
démol-ir, v. jou-ir de, v.
 a good estate? - - - We hated him, because he did
bien, m. parceque, c.

not act kindly towards us. - - On
ag-ir, v. honnêtement, adv. envers, p. Sur, p.
 what were you reflecting? - - The mountains were
réfléch-ir, v. montagne, f.
 resounding with their cries.
retent-ir, v. de cri, m.

PRET. I warranted them very good. - Did not
garant-ir, v.
 your master accomplish his promise? - - - We (leap-
accompl-ir, v. promesse, f. fran-
 ed over) the ditch, and seized the guilty. - - -
ch-ir, v. fossé, m. sais-ir, v. coupable, adj.
 Why did you not applaud that pretty act-
applaud-ir, v. à joli, adj. ac-
 ress? I did, with all my might. - - - Did not the sol-
trice, f. de, p. forces, f. pl. sol-
 diers obey the commands of their gene-
dat, m. obé-ir, v. aux commandement, m.
 ral?

FUT. When shall I banish all these
bann-ir, v. tout, adj.
 thoughts from my mind? - - This plant will soon
pensée, f. plante, f.
 blossom, if you water it often. - - - We shall
fleur-ir, v. arroser, v. souvent, adv.
 warn your relations of it. - - - Shall you not
avert-ir, v. parent, m.
 enjoy, as we do, the pure plea-
jou-ir comme, adv. Or des pur, adj.
 sures of the country? - - - Her children will bless
bén-ir, v.
 her for it.

COND. I would choose this cloth, if I
chois-ir, v. drap, m.

were in your place. --- Would he not blush, if he
à *rougir, v.*
 acted so? --- We would not punish them, if they
ainsi, adv.
 were diligent. --- Would you not act with less
avec, p. moins, adv.
 severity? --- They could furnish us with arms and
sévérité
 troops, if we wanted any. (*write, if we had need*
troupe, f. avoir besoin, v.
 of any.)
en.

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Do not fill the glasses. - - - Let him enjoy
rempl-ir, v. *verre, m.*
the fruit of his labours. - - Well ! let him, I do not
du travail, m. *Eh bien, int.*
hinder him from it. - - - Let us reflect on what we
empêch-er, v.
have to do. - - - Let them define the question.
à faire, v. *défin-ir, v.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may not perish. - - - I wish
pér-ir, v. *souhait-er, v.*
 he may succeed. - - - That we may not (bear hard-
réuss-ir, v. *pât-ir, v.*
 ships.) - That you may not hate us. - - - Provided they
 do not (grow tall.)
grand-ir, v.

PRET. That I might refresh my memory. - - -
rafraîch-ir, v. mémoire, f.
 That she might not roast the meat. - - That we might
rôt-ir, v.
 (become younger.) - - - - That you might punish the
rajeun-ir, v.
 idle. - - - That they might not (grow old.)
vieill-ir, v.

COMPOUND TENSES.

I have filled my cellar with good wine. - - -
rempl-ir, v. cave, f de

Has he not (leaped over) the ditch ? - - We had finished
our work. - - - - They would have seized him. - - - -
ouvrage, m.

We should have perished without any assistance. - -
sans, p. aucun secours.

When shall I have built my house ? - - - I have
bât-ir, v.

(very much) weakened his courage. - - Though
beaucoup, adv. affaibl-ir, v. Quoique, c.

they have adorned their gardens to dazzle
aient embell-ir, v. jardin, m. pour éblou-ir, v.

the vulgar, they have not succeeded, because
vulgaire, m. réuss-ir, v. parceque, c.

they have disobeyed their father and mother
désobé-ir, v. à

THIRD CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Rec-evoir, to receive.
Part. active. *evant*, receiving.
Part. pass. **u, m. ue, f.* received.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Avoir reçu*, to have received
Past *Ayant reçu*, having received.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Je reçois, I receive, I do receive, or I am receiving

Tu ois,

Il oit,

Plural.

Nous evons, we receive, &c.

Vous evez,

Ils oivent,

Imperfect. Singular.

Je rec-avais, I did receive, or I was receiving.

Tu avais,

Il avait,

* Verbs of this conjugation, the root of which terminates in *c*, require for the softening of their sound, that a cedilla be added to the *c*, so (*ç*) whenever it is followed by *o* or *u*

Plural.

Nous *evions*, we did receive, &c.

Vous *eviez*,

Ils *evaient*,

Preterite. Singular

Je rec-us, I received, or I did receive.

Tu *us*,

Il *ut*,

Plural.

Nous *âmes*, we received, &c.

Vous *âtes*,

Ils *urent*,

Future. Singular.

Je rec-evrai, I shall or will receive.

Tu *evras*,

Il *evra*,

Plural.

Nous *evrons*, we shall or will receive,

Vous *evrez*,

Ils *evront*,

Conditional. Singular.

Je rec-evrais, I should, would, could, or might receive

Tu *evrais*,

Il *evrait*,

Plural.

Nous *evrions*, we should, &c. receive.

Vous *evriez*,

Ils *evraient*,

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *J'ai reçu*, I have received.

Imperfect. *J'avais reçu*, I had received

Preterite. *J'eus reçu*, I had received.

Future. *J'aurai reçu*, I shall, &c. have received.

Conditional. *J'aurais reçu*, I should, &c. have received

We say, also :

J'eusse reçu, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Reç-ois, receive thou.

Plural.

evons, let us receive.*avez*, receive ye.*Qu'ils oivent*, let them receive.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present. Singular.

Que je *reç-oive*, that I may receive, *or* I receive
tu *oives*,
il *oive*,

Plural.

nous *evions*, that we may receive.*vous* *eviez*,*ils* *oivent*,

Preterite. Singular.

Que je *reç-usse*, that I might receive, *or* I received
tu *usses*,
il *ût*,

Plural.

nous *ussions*, that we might receive.*vous* *ussiez*,*ils* *ussent*,

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Que j'aie reçu*, that I may have receivedPreterite. *Que j'eusse reçu*, that I might have received.*Recevoir des nouvelles de* To hear from somebody.
quelqu'un.

After the same manner are conjugated seven verbs only : the following are excepted, being irregulars :

Asseoir, to sit down.*Déchoir*, to decay.*Falloir*, (verb impersonal,) to be needful.*Mouvoir*, to move.*Fleuvir*, (v. imp.) to rain.*Pouvoir*, to be able.*Savoir*, to know.*Valoir*, to be worth.*Voir* to see.*Vouloir*, to be willing.

And their compounds.

EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I entertain great hopes from his
conc-evoir, v. *espérance*, f

conduct. - - - I (am to) write to your brother to-
*conduite, f. * écrire, v.*

morrow, to let him know that your father is
pour faire, v. lui savoir, v.

arrived. - - - A commander (ought to) be intrepid
*commandant, m. devoir, v.**

in the midst of dangers. - - - He (is to) go
au milieu, m. f. aller, v.

and breakfast at my uncle's next Sunday,
et déjeuner, v. chez, p. et

and he (is to) come and sup with us. - - - We
venir, v. et souper, v.

† sometimes entertain a hatred for persons who
quelquefois, adv. de la haine, f.

deserve our friendship. - - - Do you not per-
mériter, v. amitié, f. a-

ceive a mountain beyond the tree? - - Yes,
perc-evoir, v. derrière, p.

I do. - - We (are to) remit him the value in
remettre, v. valeur, f. en, p.

goods or in money. - - Are you not to dine
marchandises

with my father and mother to-morrow? - - Men com-
demain, adv.

monly owe their virtues or their vices to edu-
devoir, v.

cation (as much as) to nature. - - - Are these young
autant que, c. f.

ladies to go to the ball? - - - No, they are not. - -
aller, v. bal, m.

A young man (ought to) love the society of those who
société, f.

are the most learned and modest.

IMP. I owed four guineas to your aunt when she
guinée

* When the verb *to be to*, is used in the present or imperfect tenses of the indicative mood, and precedes another verb in the infinitive mood, denoting a futurity in the action, it is *to be* rendered in French by the same tenses of the verb *devoir*, and not by *être*.

Je dois aller au parc, I am to go to the park.

Nous devons lui écrire, We were to write to him.

† See note, page 46, and remember to place compound adverbs after the participles passive.

died - - - Was not your brother to receive that me-
mourut, v.

ney last² Thursday¹ ? - - - We received his tiresome
Jeudi, m. *ennuyant*, adj.

visits, because we were obliged to it. - - - Were you
obliger, v.

not to let³ them² know⁴ it¹ sooner ? - - They were
faire, v. *savoir*, v.

not to stay above six weeks.

rester, v. *plus de*, adv.

PRES. I received yesterday, with (a great deal)
bien, adv.

of pleasure, the books you sent me. - - As soon
envoyer, v.

as we perceived the danger, we warned him of it.
apercevoir *avertir*, v.

- - - They heard* yesterday from your brother.

FUT. I shall entertain a bad opinion of
conc-evoir *mauvais*, adj. f.

you if you do not avoid Mr. R****'s company. - -
éviter, v.

We shall owe him ²nothing ¹more, after this
après, p.

month. - - I hope you will receive all my letters dur-
ing my absence, and they will hear* from their
dant, p.

father (in a short time.)

dans peu, adv.

COND. I should answer your brother's
† *répondre*, v. à

* See the phrase following the verb *recevoir*.

† When the word *should* expresses a duty or necessity, or can with pro-
priety be turned into *ought to*, it is rendered in French by the conditiona-
present of the verb *devoir*: ex.

Je devrais aller le voir,

I should or ought to go and see him.

Vous devriez le secourir dans sa
misère, &c.

You should or ought to help him in
his misery, &c.

The word *should* or *ought*, when joined to the verb *to have*, immediately
followed by a participle passive, must be rendered by the conditional past of
the above verb, with the participle passive turned into the present of the in-
finitive mood : ex.

J'aurais dû l'obliger à rester ici,

I should or ought to have obliged
him to stay here.

Nous aurions dû revenir plutôt,

We should or ought to have come
back sooner

letter, but I have not time. - - - Ought not
le temps, m. †
 your sister to give your² mother³ (an account¹)
rendre, v. *compte*, à, p
 of all her actions ? - - - She would soon per-
bientôt, adv.
 ceive the danger, if she knew the consequences
savait, v.
 of it. - - - Children should every day learn
apprendre, v.
 something by heart. - - - You should not despise
cœur, m. *mépriser*, v.
 the advice that he gives you. - - - Should they,
avis, m.
 after what they have done, expect to
après, p. *fait*, p. p. *s'attendre*, v. à
 receive favours ? - - - Grammar, geography, history, mu-
 sic, are sciences and arts which ladies should never ne-
 glect.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Receive this small present as a token of my
marque, f.
 friendship.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. and PRET. Though I perceive ships
Quoique, c. *vaisseau*, m.
 (afar off,) I cannot distinguish them. - - - He
de loin, adv. *ne saurais*, v.
 wrote to us by the first post, so that we might
écrivit, v. *ordinaire*, m. *afin que*, c.
 receive his orders (in proper time.)
à temps, adv.

Mind these COMPOUND TENSES well !

I have not yet received his answer. - - -
encore, adv. *réponse*, f.
 You should have (been making) your theme this
 * *faire*, v.
 morning, instead of playing. - - - He has entertained
matin, m. *au lieu*, p.
 the hope of living here all his life. - - - She ought
vivre, v. *ici*, adv. *vie*, f. *

*See the note, on preceding page.

to have thanked him for the good advice he
remercier, v. de, p.
 gave her. - - - When did you hear from your sister?
 we have not heard from her since her de-
depuis, p. dé-
 parture. - - - Your uncle should not have obliged
*part, m. oncle, m. **
 him to pay half the expenses. - - - We should
à moitié, f. des frais, m.
 have owed him one hundred livres. - - - I beg²
livre, f. demander, v.
 your¹ pardon, I ought not to have made you
vous faire, v.
 wait so long. - - - Ought not we to have
*attendre, v. long-temps, adv. **
 employed our time better than (we did) - - -
employer, v. nous n'avons fait
 You ought to have been less presumptuous.
présomptueux, adj.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Vend-*re*, to sell.
 Part. Active. *ant*, selling.
 Part. Passive. *u, m. ue, f.* sold.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Je vend-*s*, I sell, I do sell, or am selling

Tu vend-*s*,

Il vend,

Plural.

Nous ons, we sell, &c.

Vous ez,

Ils ent,

Imperfect. Singular.

Je vend-*ais*, I did sell, or was selling.

Tu ais,

Il ait,

Plural.

Nous vend-*ions*, we did sell, &c.

Vous iez,

Ils aient

Preterite. Singular.

*Je vend-is, I sold, or did sell.**Tu is,**Il it,*

Plural.

*Nous îmes, we sold, &c.**Vous îtes,**Ils irent,*

Future. Singular.

*Je vend-rai, I shall, or will sell.**Tu ras,**Il ra,*

Plural.

*Nous rons, we shall, or will sell.**Vous rez,**Ils ront,*

Conditional. Singular

*Je vend-raîs, I should, could, would, or might sell.**Tu rais,**Il rait,*

Plural.

*Nous rions, we should, &c.**Vous riez,**Ils raient,*

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *J'ai vendu, I have sold.*Imperfect. *J'avais vendu, I had sold*Preterite. *J'eus vendu, I had sold.*Future. *J'aurai vendu, I shall, &c. have sold.*Conditional. *J'aurais vendu, I should, &c. have sold*

We say, also ;

J'eusse vendu, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Vend-s, sell thou.

Plural.

ons, let us sell.

ez, sell ye.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Que je vend-e, that I may sell, or I sell.**tu es,**il e,*

Plural.

*nous ions, that we may sell.**vous iez,**ils ent,*

Preterite. Singular.

*Que je vend-isse, that I might sell, or I sold**tu isses,**il ît.*

Plural.

*nous issions, that we might sell**vous issiez,**ils issent,*

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Que j'aie vendu, that I may have sold.*Preterite. *Que j'eusse vendu, that I might have sold.*

After the same manner are conjugated about forty verbs.
 The following are excepted as being irregular.

<i>Absoudre</i> , to absolve	And all those ending in
<i>Battre</i> , to beat.	<i>indre.</i>
<i>Boire</i> , to drink.	<i>Croire</i> , to believe.
<i>Circoncire</i> , to circumcise	<i>Dire</i> , to tell.
<i>Conclure</i> , to conclude.	<i>Ecrire</i> , to write.
<i>Conduire</i> , to conduct.	<i>Faire</i> , to make, to do.
And all the verbs ending in	<i>Frîre</i> , to fry.
<i>uire.</i>	<i>Lire</i> , to read.
<i>Confire</i> , to preserve.	<i>Mettre</i> , to put.
<i>Connaître</i> , to know.	<i>Moudre</i> , to grind.
And all those ending in	<i>Naître</i> , to be born.
<i>ôître.</i>	<i>Paître</i> , to graze, to feed.
<i>Coudre</i> , to sew.	<i>Plaire</i> , to please.
<i>Craindre</i> , to fear	<i>Prendre</i> , to take.

<i>Rire</i> , to laugh.	tongue.
<i>Suffire</i> , to suffice, to be sufficient.	<i>Traire</i> , to milk.
<i>Suivre</i> , to follow.	<i>Vaincre</i> , to conquer.
<i>Se taire</i> , to hold one's	<i>Vivre</i> , to live.
	And their compounds.

N. B. Verbs of this conjugation, the root of which terminates in *p*, as *romp-re*, *corromp-re*, &c. take a *t* in the third person singular, of the present tense, indicative mood : ex. *je romps*, *tu romps*, *ils rompt* : the rest are conjugated as *vendre*.

EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I do not mean to wrong
prétend-re, v. *faire tort, v.*
 him. - - - Is your mother coming down ? - - - We
lui, pro. *descend-re, v.*
 expect our friend, Mr. A***. - - - Do not you
attend-re, v.
 forbid her to go there ? - - - They sell
défend-re, v. *de aller, v.*
 bad fruit.
mauvais, adj.

IMP. Did I not interrupt him, while
interromp-re, v. *pendant que, c.*
 he was answering them ? - - - She was melting into
répond-re, v. *leur* *fond-re, v. en, p.*
 tears, when you arrived. - - - Were we not losing
larme, *arriver, v.* *perdre, v.*
 our time ? - - - You were not spreading your nets. - -
temps, m. *étend-re, v.* *filet, m.*
 Did they corrupt our manners ?
corromp-re, v. *mœurs, f. pl.*

PRET. (As soon as) I had received my money, I
Dès que, c.
 returned them what they had lent me. - - - Did
rend-re, v. *prêter, v.*
 he not hear you ? - - - We (waited for) them a
entend-re, v. *attend-re, v.*
 month. - - (For how much) did you sell it to them ? -
mois, m. *Combien, adv.*

They spilled all the wine.

répand-re, v.

FUT. I shall shear my flock (in the)
tond-re, v. troupeau, m. au

month of May. - - - If you do not take care,
Mai. prenez, v. garde,

the dog will bite you. - - Shall we not lose, if
mord-re, v.

we play? - - You will melt it, if you put
fond-re, v. mettez, v.

it into the fire. No, I will not. - - They¹ shall³ not²
dans, p.

hear³ of me⁷ (any⁴ more.)
entend-re parler, v. plus, adv.

COND. Should I not do him the jus-
rend-re, v.

tice he deserves? - - Would he not interrupt you? - -
mériter, v.

We would defend them if we could. - - Why
défend-re, v. pouvions, v.

would you not answer, if I were speaking to
répond-re, v.

you? - - - Your hens would (lay eggs) every day, if
poule, f. pond-re, v.

they were not so fat.
gras, adj.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Give¹ God³ thanks². - - - Let her not come
Rend-re, v. Dieu grâce à

down. - - Let us (give in) our accounts faith-
rend-re, v. compte, m. fidèle-

fully. - - - Do not lose my book. - - - Let them hear
ment, adv.

he voice of the Lord.
voix, f. Seigneur, m.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. and PRET. Speak loud, that I may hear
haut, adv.

what you say. - - She plays (upon the) harpsichord
clits v. du clavecin, m.

though you forbid her to do it. - - -
quoique, c. lui de faire, v.
 He wrote to us, that we might not expect him.
écrivit, v.

COMPOUND TENSES.

I have lost my book ; have you found
perd-re, v. trouver,
 it ? - - - She has broken her fan - - - Have you
romp-re, v. éventail, m.
 not interrupted me several times ? - - - I had not
 then answered his letter. - - - If they (had
alors, adv. à étaient
 gone) there, would they not have lost their time ?
allés, p.p.
 Yes, they would. - - He says he would have sold us
dit, v.
 very good wine. - - - Had you not forbidden her to
de
 speak ? - - - That they might have (waited for) us.

Recapitulatory **EXERCISES** on the regular verbs of the
 four **CONJUGATIONS**.

Review before you write.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I love attentive scholars, but I punish
attentif, adj. écolier, m. mais, c.
 severely laziness and inattention. - - - Your
sévèrement, adv. paresse, f.
 brother does not receive this news with plea-
nouvelle, f.
 sure. - - - Do we not expect your mother to day ? - -
mère, f.
 We hope (that) you will succeed in your un-
espérer, v.
 dertaking. - - - Why do you not fulfil
Pourquoi, adv. accomplir, v.
 your promise ? - - - Are you to expect the least
promesse, f.
 favour from your parents and friends ? - - - They per-
grâce, f. a

ceive the danger, and they do not endeavour
percevoir, v. tâcher, v.

to shun it
de éviter, v.

IMP. I was speaking of your aunt when you
tante, f.

(came in,) and was doing her the justice she
entrer, v. rendre, v. lui

deserves. - - - Mr. N. did not act towards your
mériter, v. agir, v. envers, p.

son with much tenderness. - - - Mr. P. and I were
filis, m. tendresse.

answering your letters when you arrived. - - - You
arriver, v.

undoubtedly entertained great hopes from his
sans doute, adv. concevoir, v.

last voyage. - - - They were spending their
dernier, adj. dépenser, v.

money in trifles, instead of buying
en, p. bagatelle, au lieu de, adv. acheter, v.

books.

PRET. I built this house in one thousand seven
maison, f.

hundred and seventy-nine. - - Your father yesterday
hier, adv.

received agreeable news. - - - She burst into tears
fondre, v. en

after your cousin was gone. - - - We sent him
après que, c. parti, p. p.

(a great deal) of money unknown to your mo-
à l'insu, p. de

ther. - - - Why did you not finish your work soon-
ouvrage, m.

er? - - (As soon as) they perceived us, they (ran
Dès que, c. prirent la

away.)

fuite.

FUT. I will (give in) my accounts (at the) be-
au

ginning of next week. - - - My friend,
prochain, adj. semaine, f. amie,

Mrs. R. will dine with me next Wednesday. - - - We
Mme Mercredi, m.

shall seize the first opportunity to thank him
saisir, v. occasion, f. pour remercier, v.
 for his kindness. -- You will soon entertain
de bonté, f. bientôt, adv.
 a better opinion of him. -- Will not your sister
sœur, f.

(come down stairs) to-day ?

descendre, v.

COND. I would lay two guineas that your
gager, v.
 uncle is not yet arrived. -- If my father were rich, he
arriver, v. était
 would rebuild his country-house. -- Should we not
rebâtir, v. Devoir, v.
 express our gratitude toward those who
exprimer, v. reconnaissance, f. envers, p.
 do us good ? -- If you would, you could ren-
font, v. bien, m. voulez, v. ren-
 der great services to your country. --- I am cer-
dre, v. f. pays, m.
 tain (that) they would reward you, if you
récompenser, v.

deserved it.

mériter, v.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Discharge with equity the duties of your
Remplir, v. équité devoir, m.
 office. --- Let him receive the punishment due
charge, f. punition, f. dû, p. p.
 to his crime -- Let us give ²God thanks¹ for the
rendre, v. grace à de
 good news we received yesterday. -- Imitate the great
hier, adv.
 actions of your ancestors. -- Let them enjoy the
ancêtres, m. jouir, v. de
 fruit of their labours.
travail, m.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. Write to me by the first post
Ecrivez, v. ordinaire, m
 that I may receive your letter before my de-
afin que, c. avant, p. dé-

parture from London. -- He does not understand you,
part, m. comprendre, v.

though he hear what you say. --
quoique, c. entendre, v. subj dîtes, v.

She is never pleased, though we obey her in
content, adj. lui en, p.

(every thing.) --- I will tell it to you, pro-
tout dirai, v. pour-

vided you do not speak of it to your sister. ---
vu que, c.

He will pay them, provided they wait a little
attendre, v.

longer.

plus long-temps, adv

PRET. I wrote to your father (some time ago)
écrivis, v. il y a quelque temps

that he might engage Mr. W. to come and
afin que, c. en

spend the holidays with us. --- That she might
passer, v. vacance, f.

reflect on her own conduct, and not on that of
propre, adj.

others. -- He would not come to see us, lest,
voulut, v. en de peur que, c.

we should perceive his bad designs. -- Your uncle
ne oncle, m.

ordered that you should sell his two horses to
ordonner, v.

Mr. B. -- I should be very sorry if they fell
que, c. tomber, v. subj.

into bad hands.

en

Promiscuous EXERCISES on the COMPOUND TENSES.

I have spoken to my father of it, but he has not
yet given me any answer. -- Have I not faith-
encore, adv. de

fully executed your orders? --- Has your sister suc-
ceeded in her undertaking? --- Yes, she has, and I
have congratulated her (upon it.) - We have not yet re-
féliciter, v. en

ceived any remittance from America. -- Mrs. N. told
remise,

me you had already sold the half of your
déjà,adv. *moitié,f.*
 goods. --- Why did you not pay those poor
marchandises.
 people ? --- He would have been punished, if
gens,m.&f.pl.
 I had not defended his right. --- They have sold
droit,m.
 him four dozen of handkerchiefs at an exorbitant
mouchoir, *à*
 price ; but they have warranted them fine and
prix,m. *garantir,v.* *fin*
 well worked. --- We thought you would have
travailler,v. *crochions,v.*
 brought your brother with you. --- Have we not
frère
 been obliged to (wait for) Miss A. ? --- If you had
d'attendre,v.
 trusted them with your goods, they would have
confier,v.leur *ou* *marchandise,*
 stolen the greatest part of them. --- It is for
partie,f. *Ce,pro.*
 that reason that my father has not (thought fit)
juger,v.à-propos
 to send them to you. --- Mr. D. had represented to
 him all the danger of it. --- Mrs. F. has gained her
gagner,v.
 cause, but she has lost all her wealth. --- Had I
perdre,v. *bien,m.*
 not finished my work when she came in ? ---
ouvrage,m. *entrer,v.*
 You would have received your money (a month ago,)
il y a un mois
 if the mail had not been robbed. --- Mrs. P. told me
malle,f. *voler,p.p.*
 she would have paid you (some time ago,) if she
il y a quelque temps,
 had sold her goods.

CONJUGATION OF THE PASSIVE VERBS.

Verbs passive are very easily conjugated ; it requires only that the participle passive of the verb, which is to

be conjugated, be joined to the auxiliary verb *être*, to be, through all its moods, tenses, numbers, and persons. It is to be observed, that in French the participle passive varies according to the gender and number of the noun or pronoun, which stands as the nominative to the verb: ex.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>être</i>	aim-é,	ée, to be loved.
<i>être</i>	pun-i,	ie, to be punished.
<i>étant</i>	aim-é,	ée, being loved.
<i>étant</i>	pun-i,	ie, being punished.
<i>avoir été</i>	aim-é,	ée, to have been loved.
<i>avoir été</i>	pun-i,	ie, to have been punished.
<i>ayant été</i>	aim-é,	ée, having been loved.
<i>ayant été</i>	pun-i,	ie, having been punished.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Singular.	M	F.
<i>Je suis</i>	aim-é,	ée, &c. I am loved.
<i>Je suis</i>	pun-i,	ie, &c. I am punished.

Plural.

<i>Nous sommes</i>	aim-és,	ées, &c. we are loved.
<i>Nous sommes</i>	pun-is,	ies, &c. we are punished.

COMPOUND TENSES.

	M.	F.
<i>J'ai été</i>	pardonn-é,	ée, I have been forgiven.
<i>J'ai été</i>	pun-i,	ie, I have been punished.
<i>Nous avons été</i>	aim-és,	ées, we have been loved, &c

OF NEUTER VERBS.

The conjugations of the above verbs are, like all others, distinguished by their terminations, and conjugated in the same manner.

Learners may easily know a neuter verb from an active one ; because the latter generally has, or can always have, a direct case after it ; whereas the neuter verb never has, nor can have, but an indirect case : for instance,

Dormir, to sleep,
Venir, to come,
Voyager, to travel,

are neuter verbs ; because we cannot say,

<i>Dormir une maison,</i>	to sleep a house.
<i>Venir un livre,</i>	to come a book.
<i>Foyager la chambre,</i>	to travel the room, &c

In the same manner,

<i>Jouir,</i>	to enjoy,
<i>Profiter,</i>	to profit by, to take advantage of,
<i>Parvenir,</i>	to attain, to reach.

are neuter verbs, because they can only govern an indirect case : ex.

<i>Jouir d'une grande réputation,</i>	To enjoy a great reputation.
<i>Profiter du temps,</i>	To take advantage of the weather.
<i>Parvenir à son but,</i>	To attain one's end.

As it is impossible for the neuter verbs to govern an absolute case, it follows that every verb of this kind, which governs an absolute case, can no longer be looked upon as a neuter : ex.

<i>Pleurer,</i>	to weep, to bewail,
<i>Sortir,</i>	to go out,
<i>Monter,</i>	to go up, or come up,
<i>Plaider, &c.</i>	to plead,

are neuter verbs, but become active when they govern any object in the absolute case, or accusative : ex.

<i>Elle pleure ses péchés,</i>	She bewails her sins.
<i>Sortez ce cheval,</i>	Bring out that horse.
<i>Il plaida sa cause lui-même,</i>	He himself pleaded his cause

But there are some neuter verbs which can never have an active signification, and which we are obliged to conjugate with the verb *faire*, when we wish to express an action passing from the subject who acts : ex.

<i>Ferai-je bouillir ou rôtir cette viande ?</i>	Shall I boil or roast that meat ?
<i>Faites-la bouillir,</i>	Boil it.

Some of the neuter verbs conjugate their compound tenses with the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to have ; others with the verb *être*, to be.

The general rule to know what neuter verbs conjugate their compound tenses with the auxiliary *avoir*, and which

are the others that are conjugated with the verb *être*, is to pay attention to the participle passive of the neuter verb which is conjugated.

If this participle be declinable, that is, if it can be applied to a man or a woman, or any other animated object, the compounds of its verbs are conjugated with the verb *être* : ex.

Arriver, to arrive,
Mourir, to die,
Naître, to be born,

Tomber, to fall,
Venir, to come, &c.

take the auxiliary verb, *être* ; because we can say,

<i>Un homme arrivé,</i>	a man (<i>who is</i>) arrived.
<i>Une femme morte,</i>	a woman dead.
<i>Un enfant né,</i>	a child born.
<i>Un cheval tombé, &c.</i>	a horse fallen.

If, on the contrary, the participle be indeclinable, that is, if it cannot be said of any animate object, the compound tenses of that verb must be conjugated with the verb *avoir* : ex.

Dormir, to sleep,
Languir, to languish, to linger.

Régner, to reign,
Vivre, to live, &c.

take the auxiliary verb *avoir* ; because we cannot say,

<i>Un homme dormi,</i>	a man slept, (part. pass.)
<i>Une femme languie,</i>	a woman languished, <i>or</i> lingered.
<i>Un enfant régné,</i>	a child reigned.
<i>Un cheval vécu, &c.</i>	a horse lived.

The verb *courir* is in the last class, when it signifies the rapid motion of the body, moving in a certain direction with all the swiftness of its legs ; as we cannot, in this sense, say,

<i>Un homme couru,</i>	a man run, (part. pass.)
<i>Une femme courue,</i>	a woman run.

nor *je suis couru, j'étais couru, &c.* but *j'ai couru, j'avais couru, &c.*

When we say in French, *un homme couru, une femme courue*, we mean a man or woman much sought after, a person or thing we are very eager to see or hear : ex.

Ce prédicateur est fort couru ;
Cette danseuse est fort courue ;

that is, people are very eager to hear that preacher, to see that dancer.

In the above general rule are not included some neuter verbs, which sometimes take the auxiliary *avoir*, and sometimes the auxiliary *être*: these are,

<i>Monter</i> , to go or come up.	<i>Demeurer</i> , to live, to dwell.
<i>Descendre</i> , to go or come down.	<i>Périr</i> , to perish.
<i>Sortir</i> , to go out.	<i>Passer</i> , to pass, to go by.
<i>Rester</i> , to stay, to remain.	<i>Echapper</i> , to escape.

Monter and *descendre*, often govern an absolute regimen, in which case they are considered as active verbs, and conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir*: ex.

<i>J'ai monté les degrés,</i>	<i>I have ascended the stairs,</i> <i>or gone up the stairs.</i>
<i>Nous avons descendu la montagne,</i>	<i>We have come down the mountain.</i>

When the above verbs are employed without regimen their compounds are conjugated with *être*: ex.

<i>Je suis descendu,</i>	<i>I am down.</i>
<i>Elle est déjà montée,</i>	<i>She is up already.</i>

Sortir is conjugated with the verb *être*, when it signifies to quit, to leave the place wherein one was dwelling, or living; but it is conjugated with the verb *avoir*, when we wish to convey the idea that we have been from home, and that we are come back again: ex.

<i>Il est sorti de prison,</i>	<i>He is out of prison.</i>
<i>J'ai sorti ce matin à dix heures,</i>	<i>I went out this morning at ten o'clock.</i>
<i>Avez vous sorti ce matin ?</i>	<i>Did you go out this morning ?</i>
<i>Nous n'avons pas sorti de tout le jour,</i>	<i>We have not been out all day.</i>
<i>Le roi n'a pas sorti de sa chambre,</i>	<i>The king has not been out of his room.</i>

Demeurer and *rester* take the auxiliary *avoir*, when we mean that we were, but are no longer in a place: ex.

<i>J'ai demeuré deux ans à la campagne,</i>	<i>I lived two years in the country.</i>
---	--

Il a resté vingt ans à Rome, He resided twenty years at Rome.

On the contrary, they take the auxiliary *être*, while the persor. or persons are still in a place : ex.

Il est demeuré à Londres He has remained in London to solicit a bishopric.

Nous sommes restés à York We have tarried at York to conclude our affairs.

Périr indifferently takes either the auxiliary *avoir* or *être*: ex.

Il est péri deux vaisseaux Two ships have been lost at sea.

Trois hommes ont péri par Three men have perished by this storm,

cette tempête,
La plûpart des équipages Most of the crews perished in the waves, the rest perished through misery.

sont périés dans les ondes,
le reste est péri de misère,
It seems, however, that the auxiliary *avoir* is more generally used.

Passer sometimes governs an indirect case, or is immediately followed by the preposition *par*, or some other, attended by a noun or pronoun ; in which case its compounds are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *avoir*, whether it be used in its proper signification or in a figurative sense : ex.

Le roi a passé par Ken- The king went through
sington pour aller à Kensington to go to
Windsor, Windsor.

Nous avons passé devant We went by the church.
l'église,

Elle a passé près du Parc She went by St. James'
St. Jâques, Park.

La couronne de Naples a The crown of Naples
passé dans la maison de passed to the house of
Bourbon, Bourbon.

In all other cases, *passer* takes the auxiliary *être*: ex.

Le roi est passé, vous ne The king is gone by, you
sauriez le voir, cannot see him.

Le beau tems est passé, The fine weather is over.
Vos chagrins sont passés, Your sorrows are over.

We sometimes say, *ce mot est passé*, when we mean that it is no longer in use ; but when we say, *ce mot a passé*, we understand *has passed into the language*, which signifies that it has been received or adopted.

Passer is often a reflected passive verb ; then its compound tenses follow the rule of the reflective verbs.

Passer, in several cases, becomes an active verb, and governs an absolute case : ex

<i>Passez cela sur le feu,</i>	Pass <i>that</i> over the fire.
<i>Les ennemis ont passé la rivière,</i>	The enemies have crossed the river.
<i>Passer l'épée, au travers du corps,</i>	To run one through the body.

Echapper has two significations : sometimes it is used in the sense of *éviter*, to avoid, when it is conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir*, and governs the dative case ; sometimes it signifies to come or go out by force or stratagem from a place in which one was confined or shut up ; in this case, it takes the verb *être* for auxiliary : ex.

<i>Vous avez échappé là à un grand danger,</i>	You have escaped a great danger.
<i>Il a échappé à la mort,</i>	He <i>has</i> escaped death.
<i>Ils sont échappés de leur prison, or,</i>	They <i>have</i> escaped from their prison, or, made
<i>Ils se sont échappés de leur prison,</i>	their escape.
<i>On la tenait depuis quelques jours, mais elle est échappée, or, elle s'est échappée,</i>	They had her for some days, but she <i>has</i> escaped, or, made her escape.

N. B Exercises on the neuter verbs will be found among the irregular, whenever they occur.

REFLECTED VERBS.

We call *reflected*, or *reflective*, a verb whose subject and object are the same person or thing ; so that the subject that acts, acts upon itself, and is at the same time the agent and the object of the action : ex.

<i>Je me connais,</i>	<i>I know myself,</i>
<i>Tu te loues,</i>	<i>Thou praisest thyself,</i>
<i>Il se blesse,</i>	<i>He wounds himself,</i>
<i>Nous nous chauffons,</i>	<i>We warm ourselves,</i>

are reflected verbs, because it is I who know, and who am known ; thou who praisest, and who art praised ; he who wounds, and who is wounded, &c.

In order to express the relation of the nominative to the verb with its regimen or object, we always make use of the conjunctive pronouns, *me, te, se, myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself*, for the singular ; *nous, vous, se, ourselves, yourselves, themselves*, for the plural. But it frequently happens, that in *English*, the second pronoun is implied, though it must be expressed in *French* : ex.

<i>Je me souviens,</i>	I remember.
<i>Elle ne veut pas se marier,</i>	She will not marry.
<i>Nous nous plaignons, &c.</i>	We complain, &c.

The reflected verbs may be divided in the following manner, viz.

<i>Verbes réfléchis par la signification,</i>	Verbs reflective by signification.
<i>Verbes réfléchis par l'expression,</i>	Verbs reflective by expression.
<i>Verbes réfléchis directs,</i>	Verbs reflective direct.
<i>Verbes réfléchis indirects,</i>	Verbs reflective indirect.
<i>Verbes réfléchis passifs,</i>	Verbs reflective passive.

A verb reflected by signification is properly a verb wherein the person or thing that acts, is at the same time the object of the action : ex.

<i>Je me chauffe,</i>	I warm <i>myself</i>
<i>Elle se blesse,</i>	She wounds <i>herself</i> , &c.

A verb is reflective by expression when we add to it the double pronoun, without the person or thing that acts being the object of the action : such as,

<i>Je me repens,</i>	I repent,
<i>Il s'en va,</i>	He is going <i>away</i> ,
<i>Elle se meurt,</i>	She is dying,
<i>Nous nous apercevons de notre erreur,</i>	We perceive our error,

which merely signify *Je suis repentant, il va, elle meurt, nous apercevons notre erreur*.

When the conjunctive pronoun is the objective case of the verb reflective by expression, we say it is a *verb reflective direct* ; when the same conjunctive pronoun is the

indirect regimen, (that is, governed in the dative case,) we call it *reflective indirect* : thus,

<i>Je me flatte,</i>	I flatter myself,
<i>Tu te vantes,</i>	Thou boastest,
<i>Il se félicite,</i>	He congratulates himself,
	&c.

are verbs *reflective direct*.—On the contrary,

<i>Il se donne des louanges,</i>	He gives himself praise,
<i>Nous nous promettons un bon succès,</i>	We promise ourselves good success,
<i>Vous vous arrachez une dent,</i>	You draw one of your teeth,

are verbs *reflective indirect*, because it is as if we said, *Il donne des louanges à soi, Nous promettons un bon succès à nous, Vous arrachez une dent à vous, &c.*

Verb reflective passive. This verb is so called, because it not only expresses a passive sense, but that sense can only be rendered by a passive verb : ex..

<i>Cela se voit tous les jours,</i>	That is seen every day.
<i>Cela ne se dit point,</i>	That is not said.
<i>Ce livre se vend bien,</i>	That book sells well.
<i>Ce bruit se répand,</i>	That rumour is spread.
<i>Ces fruits se mangent en hiver,</i>	These fruits are eaten in winter.
<i>Cet homme s'est trouvé innocent du crime dont on l'accusait,</i>	That man has been found innocent of the crime with which he was accused.

It is as if there were *cela est vu tous les jours, cela n'est point dit, &c.* which exactly correspond with the idiom of the English language.

This last verb is of great use in the French language, because, as it has been observed before, there are properly no passive verbs in that language, and we are often obliged to supply the want of them by the above verb, or by the pronoun general *on*, to avoid ambiguity or false sense : if, for instance, instead of saying, *ces fruits se mangent en hiver*, ou, *on mange ces fruits en hiver*, I said, *ces fruits sont mangés en hiver*, one might understand that those fruits are already eaten ; whereas, I only wish to express the proper season for eating those fruits.

Some authors call *réci-proque*, reciprocal, all those reflected verbs ; but this denomination to me has appeared insufficient to determine accurately the nature and use of these verbs. Others limit the reciprocal verb to signify what two persons or two things reciprocally do to each other : thus,

<i>Pierre et Jean se battent,</i>	Peter and John are fighting, or beating each other,
<i>Paul et Robert s'aiment,</i>	Paul and Robert love each other,
<i>Le feu et l'eau se détrui- sent,</i>	Fire and water destroy each other,

are reciprocal verbs, because it is as if we said, *Pierre et Jean se battent réciproquement l'un l'autre, Paul et Robert s'aiment réciproquement l'un l'autre.*

This distinction of the reciprocal verbs may be adopted, observing at the same time, that we often prefix the preposition *entre* to the verb, the better to express the reciprocity : ex.

<i>Pierre et Jean s'entr'ai- ment,</i>	Peter and John love each other.
<i>Ils s'entrelouent,</i>	They praise each other.
<i>Elles s'entrehaïssent,</i>	They hate each other.
<i>Le feu et l'eau s'entredé- truisent, &c.</i>	Fire and water destroy each other.

All the reflected and reciprocal verbs, without exception are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *être*, hence it may be supposed how much French people are shocked to hear any one, who has learned that language, say,

<i>Je m'ai acheté un cheval,</i>	I bought myself a horse ;
<i>Je m'avais blessé,</i>	I had hurt myself ;
<i>Il s'a fait mal,</i>	He has hurt himself ;
<i>Elle s'avait moqué de moi,</i>	She had laughed at me ;
&c.	

expressions too commonly made use of by many English people, who speak without knowledge of the principles of the language ; whereas we must say,

Je me suis acheté un cheval,
Je m'étais blessé,

<i>Il s'est fait mal,</i>	
<i>Elle s'était moqué de moi,</i>	
<i>Nous nous sommes informés,</i>	We have inquired.
<i>Ils se sont promenés,</i>	They have walked.
<i>Il s'est passé d'étranges choses depuis votre départ,</i>	Strange things have happened since your departure.
<i>Il s'est passé bien des années depuis que j'ai ouï parler de cette affaire,</i>	Many years have elapsed since I heard of that affair.

It must be owned, that in the compounds of most part of these verbs, the verb *être* is but the substitute of the verb *avoir* ; but it is impossible to use *avoir* as auxiliary to a verb which has for its objective case a conjunctive pronoun that relates to the principle of the action of that verb, and which precedes the auxiliary ; for, though we say,

Il a voulu se tuer, He would kill himself ;

yet, if we change the place of the pronoun, we must say, *Il s'est voulu tuer*, which is the idiom of the language.

CONJUGATION OF THE REFLECTED VERBS.

The conjugation of the following verb may serve as a model for all the reflected or reciprocal verbs, of the four conjugations.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Se promener, to walk,
Part. act. Se promenant, walking.

M. Sing. F.

Part. pass. promen-é ée, walked.

M. Plural. F.

Part. pass. promen-és, ées, walked.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Pres. S'être promené, to have walked.
Past. S'étant promené, having walked.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Je me promène, I walk, or do walk, or am walking.

Tu te promènes,

Il se promène,

Plural.

Nous nous promenons, we walk, do walk, or are, &c.

Vous vous promenez,

Ils se promènent,

Imperfect. Singular.

Je me promenais, I did walk, or walked, or was walking.

Tu te promenais,

Il se promenait,

Plural.

Nous nous promenions, we did walk, walked, or were walking

Vous vous promeniez,

Ils se promenaient,

Preterite. Singular.

Je me promenai, I did walk, or walked.

Tu te promenâs,

Il se promena,

Plural.

Nous nous promenâmes, we did walk, or walked.

Vous vous promenâtes,

Ils se promenèrent,

Future. Singular.

Je me promènerai, I shall, or will walk.

Tu te promèneras,

Il se promènera,

Plural.

Nous nous promènerons, we shall, or will walk.

Vous vous promènerez,

Ils se promèneront,

Conditional. Singular.

Je me promènerais, I would, should, or could walk.

Tu te promènerais,

Il se promènerait,

Plural.

Nous nous promènerions, we would, should, &c. walk.

Vous vous promèneriez,

Ils se promèneraient,

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Je me suis promen-é, ée*, I have walked

Imperfect. *Je m'étais promen-é ée*, I had walked

- Preterite. *Je me fus promen-é, ée*, I had walked.
 Future. *Je me serai promener-é, ée*, I shall or will have walked.
 Conditional. *Je me serais promen-é, ée*, I should, &c. have walked.

We say, also :

Je me fusse promené, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Promène-toi**, walk thou.

Plural.

*Promenons-nous**, let us walk.

*Promenez-vous**, walk ye.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que je me promène, that I may walk
tu te promènes,
il se promène,

Plural.

nous nous promenions, that we may walk.

vous vous promeniez,

ils se promènent,

Preterite. Singular.

Que je me promenasse, that I might walk.
tu te promenasses,
il se promenât,

Plural.

nous nous promenassions, that we might walk.

vous vous promenassiez,

ils se promenassent,

COMPOUND TENSES.

M. F.

Present. *Que je me sois promen-é, ée*, that I may have walked

Preterite. *Que je me fusse promen-é, ée*, that I might have walked

* When the verb is conjugated with a *negation*, these three pronouns are put before the verb : ex. *ne vous promenez pas*, do not walk ; and *toi* is changed into *te* : *ne te promène pas*.

The learner may here be again reminded, that it is necessary to conjugate this verb with a negation and interrogation : ex.

<i>Je ne me promène pas,</i>	I do not walk.
<i>Vous promenez-vous ?</i>	Do you walk ?
<i>Ne se promène-t-il pas ?</i>	Does he not walk ?

COMPOUND TENSES.

<i>Me suis-je promené ?</i>	Have I walked ? or did I walk ?
<i>Ne vous êtes-vous pas chauffé ?</i>	Have you not warmed yourself ? or did you not warm yourself ?
<i>Mon cousin s'est-il informé ?</i>	Has my cousin inquired ? or did my cousin inquire ?
<i>Votre frère ne s'est-il pas repenti ?</i>	Has not your brother repented ? or did not your brother repent ?

We say in French,

<i>Se promener à cheval, en carosse,</i>	To take a ride, an airing on horseback, in a coach.
<i>Se promener sur l'eau, sur la rivière,</i>	To go upon water, on the river.

EXERCISES UPON THE REFLECTED VERBS.

N. B. Verbs marked thus * are irregular : see the irregular verbs alphabetically arranged under each conjugation.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I rise	(early)	every
<i>Se lever, v.</i>	<i>de bonne heure, adv.</i>	<i>tous les</i>
morning. - - -	Does not your brother remember	
<i>matin, m. pl.</i>	<i>se ressouvenir, v.*</i>	
to have seen	me ? - - My sister	is not well ; she
<i>de vu, p. p.</i>	<i>sœur, f † se porter,</i>	
applies	herself (too much) to study. - - -	We
<i>s'appliquur, v.</i>	<i>trop, adv.</i>	

† When we mean to express the state of a person's health, instead of the verb *être*, we must use the reflected one, *se porter* :

Ma sœur ne se porte pas bien, My sister is not well.

rejoice at the good news (which) he has brought
se réjouir, v. de *nouvelle, f.* *apporté, p. p.*
 us. - - When do you intend to go and see
se proposer, v. *de aller, v.* *ou voir, v.*
 Mrs. H. ? - - - Do you not repent what you
*se repentir, v.** *de*
 have done to her ? - - I believe your brothers
fait, p. p. *croire, v.**
 are not well ; for I have not seen them this
 † *car, c.* *vu, p. p.*
 week.
semaine, f.

IMP. I was riding on horseback in the park,
se promener, v. *parc, m.*
 when I met him. - - Was he not warm-
quand, c. *rencontrer, v.* *se chauf-*
 ing himself when you (came in) ? - - - We did not
fer, v. *entrer, v.*
 imagine he would succeed so well. - - You were
s'imaginer, v. *réussir, v.*
 boasting (too much) of what you have done for
se vanter, v. *trop* *fait, p. p.*
 him. - - - They did not expect that they should
s'attendre, v. *à* *ou* *ou*
 meet us.

PRET. I inquired after you yesterday. - -
s'informer, v. *de* *hier, adv.*
 Did not my son behave well in the last
se comporter, v. *dernier, adj*
 war ? - - Corn was sold yesterday for twelve shil-
guerre, f. *se vendre, v.* *ou*
 lings a bushel. - - We saw ourselves surrounded by
*se voir, v.** *entouré, p. p.*
 more than twenty persons in an instant. - - - Did you
en, p.
 not find yourselves obliged to go
se trouver, v. *obligé, p. p.* *de aller, v.*
 there ? - - - They did not stop one minute.
s'arrêter, v.

FUT. I will not complain of you, if you
*se plaindre, v.**

* Remember that verbs marked thus are irregular.

promise me to behave better. - - Will your
*promettre, v.** *de* *mieux, adv.*
 bird (grow tame) ? - - Shall we submit our-
oiseau, m. *s'apprivoiser, v.* *se soumettre, v.**
 selves to his judgment. - - You will ruin your-
jugement, m. *se ruiner, v.*
 selves if you continue (gaming). - - Will they not
continuer, v. *de jouer, v.*
 perceive it (as soon as) they come into the
s'apercevoir, v. *en* *dès que, c.* *entrer, v. fut.*
 room ?

COND If I were in your place, I would
étais à
 not vex myself. - - - - Would she not (make her
se chagriner, v. *s'échap-*
 escape) ? - - We would embark (this day)
per, v. *s'embarquer, v.* *aujourd'hui, adv.*
 if the weather (would permit.) - - - Would you embark so
temps, m. *le permettait, v.*
 soon ? - - - Why would you expose yourselves to their
tôt, adv. *s'exposer, v.*
 fury ? - - They would agree very well,
fureur, v. *s'accorder, v.* *bien, adv.*
 if they were not so proud.
orgueilleux, adj.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

I give you leave to go out, but
donner, v. *permission de sortir, v.* *mais, c.*
 do not overheat yourself. - - Let him amuse him-
s'échauffer, v. *s'amuser, v.*
 self a little in my garden. - - - Let us remem-
un peu, adv. *jardin, m.* *se ressou-*
 ber what we are to do. - - - Endeavour to
*venir de, v.** *† faire, v.* *S'efforcer, v.* *de*
 please your master, and do not so often mis-
plaître, v. à *maître, m.* *se trom-*
 take in the tenses, numbers, and persons of the
per, v. *temps*
 verb. - - - Let them (fall asleep.)*
s'endormir, v.

† See the note, p. 197.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES.	I must	apply	myself to the
	<i>Il faut que,</i>	<i>s'appliquer, v.</i>	
French	language. - -	I will hide	it, lest
	<i>langue, f.</i>	<i>cacher,</i>	<i>de peur que, c.</i>
she	should	perceive	it. - - - Provided
<i>ne</i>		<i>s'apercevoir, v.</i>	<i>en, pro. Pourvu que, c.</i>
we	remember to ask	him how	his
	<i>de demander, v.</i>	<i>lui, comment, adv.</i>	
mother	does. - - - -	(In order that)	you may not
	<i>se porter, v.</i>	<i>Afin que, c.</i>	
boast	(so much.) - -	I have told them who you	
<i>se vanter, v.</i>	<i>tant, adv.</i>	<i>dit, p. p.</i>	
are, that	they may behave better	another time.	
	<i>afin que, c.</i>	<i>fois, f.</i>	
PRET.	That I might not ruin	myself. - - -	
		<i>se ruiner, v.</i>	
That he	might not meddle	with my affairs. - - -	
	<i>se mêler, v.</i>	<i>de</i>	
That we	might excuse	ourselves. - - -	That you
	<i>s'excuser, v.</i>		
might not	go away. - - - -	That they might not	
	<i>s'en aller, v.*</i>		
repent	too late.		
<i>se repentir, v.*</i>	<i>trop tard, adv.</i>		

COMPOUND TENSES.

(Read with attention the remarks, p. 218.)

I have inquired	after you and your sister. - - -	
<i>s'informer, v.</i>	<i>de</i>	
He says you have not been well while		you
<i>dit, v.</i>	<i>pendant que, c.</i>	
were in the country. - - - -	Has not your cousin	
<i>à</i>	<i>campagne, f.</i>	<i>cousin, m.</i>
laughed	at me ? - - -	Did we not get up
<i>se moquer, v.</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>se lever, v.</i>
(o'clock) ? - - -	They have perceived the trick,	but
<i>heure</i>	<i>du tour, m.</i>	
it was too late. - - -	Did you remember	* me
<i>ce</i>	<i>se ressouvenir, v.</i>	<i>de</i>

I had not applied myself enough. - - - Had
s'appliquer, v. *assez, adv.*
 not your sister imagined, that they would have
s'imaginer, v.
 found themselves obliged to go to France. - - -
se trouver, v. *obligé, p.p.* *de* †
 He has wounded himself in attempting to injure
se blesser, v. *essayer, v.* *de nuire, v.*
 me. - - - We had thought ourselves able
*se croire, v.** *capable, adj.*
 to resist them, but we have (been deceived.)
de résister, v. *leur mais, c.* *se tromper, v.*
 - - - Did you not hide yourselves (in order)
se cacher, v. *afin*
 to surprise them? - - - - When (I shall)
de surprendre, v. *Quand, adv.*
 have walked five or six minutes in the gar-
minute *jar-*
 den, I will rest myself. - - - - Why did you
din, m. *se reposer, v.*
 exhaust yourself as you have done? - - - - Our
s'épuiser, v. *fait, p.p.*
 sailors would have behaved with more reso-
matelot, m.
 lution. - - Would you not have excused yourself? - -
s'excuser, v.
 When they† have repented their faults, I
se repentir, v. de*
 will forgive them. - - If I had been in your place, I
avais *à*
 would not have meddled with their affairs. - - -
se mêler, v. *de*
 Your friend would not have complained of you,
*se plaindre, v.**
 and you never would have (fallen out) for so small
se brouiller, v. *si peu*
 a matter.
de chose.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

These are called *irregulars* because their conjugation

* See the N. B. p. 54.

† After *when* and a few other conjunctions *will*, and *shall*, signs of the future, are implied in English.

deviates from the general rule, either by their terminations, or the want of some of their moods, tenses, persons, or numbers. The *personal pronouns* must now be supplied in French by the student.

VERB OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

ALLER, TO GO.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Aller</i> , to go.
Part.	<i>Allant</i> , going.
Part. pass.	<i>Allé, ée</i> , gone.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Vais, vas, va</i> ,	I go, do go, or am going
Plur.	<i>Allons, allez, vont</i> ,	

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Allais, allais, allait</i> ,	I did go, or was going.
Plur.	<i>Allions, alliez, allaient</i> ,	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Allai, allas, alla</i> ,	I went, or did go.
Plur.	<i>Allâmes, allâtes, allèrent</i> ,	

Future.

Sing.	<i>Irai, iras, ira</i> ,	I shall, or will go.
Plur.	<i>Irons, irez, iront</i> ,	

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Irais, irais, irait</i> ,	I should, could, would, or
Plur.	<i>Irions, iriez, iraient</i> ,	might go.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Va</i> , go thou ; <i>qu'il aille</i> , let him go.
Plur.	<i>Allons, allez, qu'ils, aillent</i> .

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Aille</i> ,	<i>ailles</i> ,	<i>aille</i> ,	that I may go
Plur.	<i>Allions</i> ,	<i>alliez</i> ,	<i>aillent</i> ,	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Allasse</i> ,	<i>allasses</i>	<i>allât</i> ,	that I might go.
Plur.	<i>Allassions</i> ,	<i>allassie</i>	<i>allassent</i> ,	

N. B. The preterite of the verb *être*, *je fus*, *tu fus*, &c. has been used by respectable authors and in conversation for *j'allai*, *tu allas*, but now it is thought unnecessary.

Among the compound tenses of this verb, it is to be remarked, that those which are formed by the participle *allé*, signify that we are or were yet in the place mentioned at the time we are or were speaking. Whence it follows, that the first person of the compound of the present,

Je suis allé,

I have gone, &c.

Tu es allé, &c.

can seldom be used in discourse ; for we cannot naturally say that we are still in a place which can only be mentioned in a past time, after we have left it ; therefore we make use of the compound tenses of the verb *être*, as *j'ai été*, *tu as été*, *j'eus été*, *j'avais été*, *j'aurais été*, &c ; for when we say,

Il est allé à Londres,

He is gone to London.

we give to understand, that he is still in London, or is on his way, going to London : on the contrary,

Il a été à Londres,

He has been at London.

means, that he has been to London, but is returned.

The above verb is also conjugated as a reflected one, with the particle *en* : ex.

S'en aller, to go away.

Je m'en vais, I go or am going away.

Tu t'en vas, thou goest or art going away.

Il s'en va, he goes or is going away.

Nous nous en allons, we go or are going away.

Vous vous en allez, you go or are going away

Ils s'en vont, they go or are going away.

Negatively.

Je ne m'en vais pas, I am not going away.

Il ne s'en va pas, he is not going away.

Nous ne nous en allons pas, we are not going away.

Vous ne vous en allez pas, &c. you are not going away, &c.

Interrogatively.

S'en va-t-il ? Is he going away ?

Vous en allez-vous ? &c. are you going away ? &c.

Ne s'en vont-ils pas ? &c. are they not going away ? &c.

The Imperative Mood is thus conjugated :

Singular.

Va-t'en, go thou *away*.

Qu'il s'en aille, let him go *away*.

Plural.

Allons-nous en, let us go *away*.

Allez-vous en, go *away*.

Qu'ils s'en aillent, let them go *away*.

Its compound tenses are,

Je m'en suis allé, I have gone *away*.

Je m'en elais allé, I had gone *away*.

Je m'en fus allé, I had gone *away*.

Je m'en serai allé, I shall have gone *away*, &c.

Je m'en scrais allé, I should have gone *away*.

We say, also :

Je m'en fusse allé, &c.

VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACQUERIR, TO ACQUIRE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present *Acquérir*, to acquire.

Part act. *Acquérant*, acquiring.

Part pass. *Acquis se*, acquired.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Acquiers*, *acquiers*, *acquiert*, I acquire, or am

Plur. *Acquérons*, *acquérez*, *acquièrement*, acquiring.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Acquérais*, *acquérais*, *acquérait*, I did acquire, or

Plur. *Acquérons*, *acquériez*, *acquéraient*, was acquiring.

Preterite.

Sing. *Acquis*, *acquis*, *acquit* I acquired, or did

Plur. *Acquimes*, *acquites*, *acquirent*, acquire.

Future.

Sing. *Acquerrai*, *acquerras*, *acquerra*, I shall or will

Plur. *Acquerrons*, *acquerez*, *acquerront*, acquire.

Conditional.

Sing. *Acquerrais*, *acquerrais*, *acquerrait*, I should, would,
or could acquire.

Plur. *Acquerrions*, *acquerriez*, *acquerraient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Acquiers*, acquire thou

Plur. *Acquérons*, *acquérez*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Acquière,</i>	<i>acquières,</i>	<i>acquière,</i>	that I may ac-
Plur.	<i>Acquérions,</i>	<i>acquériez,</i>	<i>acquièrez,</i>	quire.

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Acquisse,</i>	<i>acquisses,</i>	<i>acquît,</i>	that I might ac-
Plur.	<i>Acquissions,</i>	<i>acquissiez,</i>	<i>acquissent,</i>	quire.

QUERIR, TO FETCH.

The primitive of the above verb is never used but in the present of the infinitive mood : ex.

Envoyez-moi, quérir, Send for me.

CONQUERIR, TO CONQUER ; **REQUERIR**, TO REQUIRE ; are conjugated like **ACQUERIR**.

BOUILLIR, TO BOIL.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Bouillir,</i>	to boil
Part. act.	<i>Bouillant,</i>	boiling
Part. pass.	<i>Bouilli, ie,</i>	boiled.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Bous,</i>	<i>bous,</i>	<i>bout,</i>	I boil, or am boiling.
Plur.	<i>Bouillons,</i>	<i>bouillez,</i>	<i>bouillent,</i>	

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Bouillais,</i>	<i>bouillais,</i>	<i>bouillait,</i>	I did boil, or was
Plur.	<i>Bouillions,</i>	<i>bouilliez,</i>	<i>bouillaient,</i>	boiling

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Bouillis,</i>	<i>bouillis,</i>	<i>bouillit,</i>	I boiled, or did boil.
Plur.	<i>Bouillîmes,</i>	<i>bouillîtes,</i>	<i>bouillirent,</i>	

Future.

Sing.	<i>Bouillirai,</i>	<i>bouilliras,</i>	<i>bouillira,</i>	I shall, or will boil
Plur.	<i>Bouillirons,</i>	<i>bouillirez,</i>	<i>bouilliront,</i>	

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Bouillirais,</i>	<i>bouillirais,</i>	<i>bouillirait,</i>	I should, would, or
Plur.	<i>Bouillirions,</i>	<i>bouilliriez,</i>	<i>bouilliraient,</i>	could boil.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Bous,</i>	<i>bouille,</i>	boil thou
Plur.	<i>Bouillons,</i>	<i>bouillez,</i>	<i>bouillent,</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Bouille,</i>	<i>bouilles,</i>	<i>bouille,</i>	that I may boil
Plur.	<i>Bouillions,</i>	<i>bouilliez,</i>	<i>bouillent,</i>	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Bouillisse,</i>	<i>bouillisses,</i>	<i>bouillît,</i>	that I might boil.
Plur.	<i>Bouillissions,</i>	<i>bouillissiez,</i>	<i>bouillissent,</i>	

This verb, as well as its compound *rebouillir*, to boil again, is but seldom used, except in the *third person singular* or plural, and in its *infinitive* mood, which is commonly joined to the verb *Faire*, to render it *active*, and use it in all persons : ex.

Faites bouillir cette viande, Boil that meat.

COURIR, TO RUN.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Courir,</i>	to run.
Part. act.	<i>Courant,</i>	running.
Part. pass.	<i>Couru, ue,</i>	to run.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Cours,</i>	<i>cours,</i>	<i>court,</i>	I run, or am running.
Plur.	<i>Courons,</i>	<i>courez,</i>	<i>courent,</i>	

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Courais,</i>	<i>courais,</i>	<i>courait,</i>	I did run, or was run-
Plur.	<i>Courions,</i>	<i>couriez,</i>	<i>couraient,</i>	ning.

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Courus,</i>	<i>courus,</i>	<i>courut,</i>	I ran, or did ru
Plur.	<i>Courûmes,</i>	<i>courûtes,</i>	<i>coururent,</i>	

Future.

Sing.	<i>Courrai,</i>	<i>courras,</i>	<i>courra,</i>	I shall, or will run.
Plur.	<i>Courrons,</i>	<i>courez,</i>	<i>courront,</i>	

Conditional.

Sing. *Courrais, courrais, courrait*, I should, would
 Plur. *Courrions, cournez, courraient*, or could run

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Cours, coure*, run thou.
 Plur. *Courons, courez, courent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Coure, coures, coure*, that I may run.
 Plur. *Courions, couriez, courent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Courusse, courusses, courût*, that I might run
 Plur. *Courussions, courussiez, courussent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

Accourir, to run to.

Concourir, to concur.

Discourir, to discourse.

Encourir, to incur.

Parcourir, to run over.

Recourir, to have recourse
 to.

Secourir, to succour, to
 assist.

COUVRIR, TO COVER.

See **OUVRIER**, TO OPEN.

CUEILLIR, TO GATHER.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Cueillir*, to gather,
 Part. act. *Cueillant*, gathering.
 Part. pass. *Cueilli, ie*, gathered.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Cueille, cueilles, cueille*, I gather or am gathering.
 Plur. *Cueillons, cueillez, cueillent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Cueillais, cueillais, cueillait*, I did gather, or was
 Plur. *Cueilhons, cueilliez, cueillaient*, gathering

Preterite.

Sing. *Cueillis, cueillis, cueillit*, I gathered, or did gath-
 Plur. *Cueillîmes, cueillîtes, cueillirent*, er.

Future.

Sing. *Cueilleraï, cueilleras, cueillera, I shall, or will*
 Plur. *Cueillerons, cueillerez, cueilleront, gather*

Conditional.

Sing. *Cueillerais, cueillerais, cueillerait, I should, would, or could gather*
 Plur. *Cueillerions, cueilleriez, cueilleraient,*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Cueille, gather thou.*
 Plur. *Cueillons, cueillez.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Cueille, cueilles, cueille, that I may gather.*
 Plur. *Cueillions, cueilliez, cueillent,*

Preterite.

Sing. *Cueillisse, cueillisses, cueillit, that I might*
 Plur. *Cueillissions, cueillissiez, cueillissent, gather.*

The compounds of this verb are,

Accueillir, to make wel- | *Recueillir, to gather to-*
come. gether.

DORMIR, TO SLEEP.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Dormir, to sleep.*
 Part. act. *Dormant, sleeping*
 Part. pass. *Dormi, slept.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Dors, dors, dort, I sleep, or am sleeping.*
 Plur. *Dormons, dormez, dorment,*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Dormais, dormais, dormait, I did sleep, or was*
 Plur. *Dormions, dormiez, dormaient, sleeping*

Preterite.

Sing. *Dormis, dormis, dormit, I slept, or did sleep.*
 Plur. *Dormîmes, dormîtes, dormirent,*

Future.

Sing. *Dormirai, dormiras, dormira, I shall, or will*
 Plur. *Dormirons, dormirez, dormiront, sleep*

Conditional.

Sing. *Dormirais, dormirais, dormirait,* I would, could, or
 Plur. *Dormirions, dormiriez, dormiraient,* should sleep.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Dors,* sleep thou.
 Plur. *Dormons dormez.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Dorme, dormes, dorme,* that I may sleep.
 Plur. *Dormions, dormiez, dorment,*

Preterite.

Sing. *Dormisse, dormisses, dormit,* that I might sleep
 Plur. *Dormissions, dormissiez, dormissent,*

The compounds of this verb are,

Endormir, to make sleep. | *Se rendormir,* to fall asleep
S'endormir, to fall asleep. | again.

FAILLIR, TO FAIL.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Faillir,* to fail.
 Part. act. *Faillant,* failing.
 Part. pass. *Failli, ie,* failed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Faux, faux, faut,*
 Plur. *Faillons, faillez, faillent,*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Faillais, faillais, faillait,*
 Plur. *Faillions, failliez, faillaient.*

Preterite.

Sing. *Faillis, fallis, faillit,*
 Plur. *Faillimes, faillites, faillirent.*

Future.

Sing. *Faillirai, failliras, faillira,*
 Plur. *Faillirons, faillirez, failliront.*

Conditional.

Sing. *Faillirais, faillirais, faillirait,*
 Plur. *Faillirions, failliriez, failliraient.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Faille.*
 Plur. *Faillons, faillez.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Faille, failles, faille,*
 Plur. *Faillions, failliez, faillent.*

Preterite.

Sing. *Faillisse, faillisses, faillit,*
 Plur. *Faillissions, faillissiez, faillissent.*

The compound of this verb is ; *Défaillir*, to *Decay*, of which the three persons singular of the present of the indicate mood are not used.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS
 AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Where are you going? --- I am going to the
Où, adv.
 play. --- I would go with you, if I had time. --- Why
comédie, f.
 are they going away so soon? --- Will not your father
 be angry, if you go there without him? --- We were
fâché, adj.
 going to Miss D——'s, when we met you.
chez, p. ∞ *avons rencontré, p. p.*
 -- These men went yesterday from house to house. --
 Believe me, sir, do not go to see them. -- Your father
Croire, v. ∞ *voir, v.*
 told me (*that*) you will go to France and Italy as soon
dire, v.
 as the war (is over.) -- My sister and I, went last
sera finie. *dernier, adj.*
 Wednesday to Vauxhall, ---- If you had gone thither.
 an hour sooner you would have heard fine music
plutôt, adv. *entendre, v.*
 -- Your uncle has acquired a great name in America.
nom, m.
 -- My father went to pay your² uncle³ a visit¹
 ∞ *rendre, v.* ∞
 last week, and he did not welcome him (as a) friend
en, p.
 --- Did he not? I am sorry for it. -- Mr. Dubois,
 the king's silversmith, has brought the watch: it
orfèvre
 now goes very well. --- Go and fetch me
maintenant, adv. ∞
 the letter I left in my room. -- I have (sent for)
laisser, v. *(envoyé quérir)*
 him. ---- Boil this chicken, and roast that goose.
poulet, m. *rotir, v.* *oie, f.*
 --- At last we have conquered. ---- This
Enfin, adv.

water will soon boil. - - - Boil that meat
bientôt,adv.
 again ; it is not done enough. - - - Do not run so
cuit,p.p.
 fast ; you will be tired. - - - They always run,
vite,adv. *fatigué*,p.p.
 when they go to see their aunt. - - - Your brother
∞ *tante*,f.
 runs faster than I. - - - When he heard that his
apprit,v.
 friend was in danger, he ran instantly to him. - -
était *aussitôt*,v. *à*
 Let us not discourse any more on that subject. - - - I
∞ *sujet*,m.
 would assist him with all my heart, if I could. - - - This
pouvais
 gentlemen is a great traveller : he has run over all
Monsieur *voyageur*,m.
 Europe. - - - Let him go away, for I do not wish to
Europe,f. *car*,c. *veux*,v. *∞*
 speak to him. - - - If you do it, you will incur your
faire,v.
 father's displeasure. - - - That would concur to the pub-
déplaisir,m. *Cela*
 lic good. - - - When children are guilty, they generally
bien,m. *coupable*,adj.
 have recourse to some falsehood. - - - For whom are you
quelque *mençonage*.
 gathering those charming flowers? - - I gather them for
fleur,f.
 my mother, - - - Why do they not gather some roses? - -
rose,f.
 Mrs. P. would have gathered some, but the gardener
Mme *jardinier*,m.
 told her he would gather them himself. - - Of all nations
 none has welcomed the poor French clergy better
clergé,m.
 than the English nation. - - - Do not make any noise,
faire,v.
 for my sister (is asleep.) - - I hope she will sleep better to-
car,c. *ce*
 night. - She would sleep much better, if she were in her
soir,m.
 bed. - - If I do not walk a little, I shall fall asleep.
lit,m. *se promener*,v

- - My mother, sister, brother, and I, went yesterday to Medford, to see Miss Keen. - - - Did you go thither on foot? - - -

∞ Mlle à
No, my mother and sister went in a coach, and my
en,p.

brother and I on horseback.

à cheval,m.

FUIR, TO SHUN, TO AVOID, TO FLEE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Fuir*, to flee.

Part. act. *Fuyant*, fleeing.

Part. pass. *Fui*, ie, fled.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Fuis*, *fuis*, *fuit*, I flee.

Plur. *Fuyons*, *fuyez*, *fuient*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Fuyais*, *fuyais*. *fuyait*, I fled, or did flee.

Plur. *Fuyions*, *fuyiez*, *fuyaient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Fuis*, *fuis*, *fuit*,

Plur. *Fuîmes*, *fuîtes*, *fuirent*, or we may say, *Je pris la fuite*, &c.

Future.

Sing. *Fuirai*, *fuiras*, *fuirai*, I shall, or will flee.

Plur. *Fuirons*, *fuirez*, *fuiront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Fuirais*, *fuirais*, *fuirait*, I should, would, or could

Plur. *Fuirions*, *fuiriez*, *fuiraient*, flee.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Fuis*, *fuie*, flee thou

Plur. *Fuyons*, *fuyez*, *fuient*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Fuie*, *fuies*, *fuie*, that I may flee.

Plur. *Fuyions*, *fuyiez*, *fuient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Fuisse*, *fuisses*, *fût*, that I might flee.

Plur. *Fuissions*, *fuissiez*, *fuissent*, or

Je pris la fuite, &c., that I might flee, &c.

S'enfuir, to run away.

Haïr, to Hate.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Haïr*, to Hate.Part. act. *Haïssant*, Hating.Part. pass. *Haï*, *haïe*, Hated.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Hais*, *hais*, *hait*,Plur. *Haïssons*, *haïssez*, *haïssent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Haïssais*, *haïssais*, *haïssait*,Plur. *Haïssions*, *haïssiez*, *haïssaient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Haïs*, *haïs*, *haît*,Plur. *Haïmes*, *haïtes*, *haïrent*.

Future.

Sing. *Haïrai*, *haïras*, *haïra*,Plur. *Haïrons*, *haïrez*, *haïront*.

Conditional.

Sing. *Haïrais*, *haïrais*, *haïrait*,Plur. *Haïrions*, *haïriez*, *haïraient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Hais*,Plur. *Haïssons*, *haïssez*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que Haïsse*, *que haïsses*, *que haïsse*,Plur. *Haïssions*, *haïssiez*, *haïssent*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Haïsse*, *haïsses*, *haît*,Plur. *Haïssions*, *haïssiez*, *haïssent*.*MENTIR*, TO LIE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Mentir*, to lie.Part. act. *Mentant*, lying.Part. pass. *Menti*, lied.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Mens*, *mens*, *ment*, I lie.Plur. *Mentons*, *mentez*, *mentent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Mentais*, *mentais*, *mentait*, I did lie or was lying.Plur. *Mentions*, *mentiez*, *mentaient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Mentis*, *mentis*, *mentit*, I lied, or did lie.Plur. *Mentimes*, *mentîtes*, *mentirent*.

Future.

Sing. <i>Mentirai,</i>	<i>mentiras,</i>	<i>mentira,</i>	I shall, or will lie.
Plur. <i>Mentirons,</i>	<i>mentirez,</i>	<i>mentiront,</i>	

Conditional.

Sing. <i>Mentirais,</i>	<i>mentirais,</i>	<i>mentirait,</i>	I would, could, or
Plur. <i>Mentirions,</i>	<i>mentiriez,</i>	<i>mentiraient,</i>	should lie.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Mens,</i>	lie thou.
Plur. <i>Mentons,</i>	<i>mentez.</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing. <i>Mente,</i>	<i>mentes,</i>	<i>mente,</i>	that I may lie.	
Plur. <i>Mentions,</i>	<i>mentiez,</i>	<i>mentent,</i>		

Preterite.

Sing. <i>Mentisse,</i>	<i>mentisses,</i>	<i>mentit,</i>	that I might lie.
Plur. <i>Mentissions,</i>	<i>mentissiez,</i>	<i>mentissent.</i>	

The compound of this verb is

Démentir, to give one the lie, to belie, to contradict.

MOURIR, TO DIE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Mourir,</i>	to die.
Part. act.	<i>Mourant,</i>	dying.
Part. pass.	<i>Mort, te,</i>	died, or dead.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. <i>Meurs,</i>	<i>meurs,</i>	<i>meurt,</i>	I die, or am dying.
Plur. <i>Mourons,</i>	<i>mourez,</i>	<i>meurent,</i>	

Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Mourais,</i>	<i>mourais,</i>	<i>mourait,</i>	I was dying.
Plur. <i>Mourions,</i>	<i>mouriez,</i>	<i>mouraient,</i>	

Preterite.

Sing. <i>Mourus,</i>	<i>mourus,</i>	<i>mourut,</i>	I died.
Plur. <i>Monrûmes,</i>	<i>mourûtes,</i>	<i>moururent,</i>	

Future.

Sing. <i>Mourrai,</i>	<i>mourras,</i>	<i>mourra,</i>	I shall, or will die.
Plur. <i>Mourrons,</i>	<i>mourrez,</i>	<i>mourront,</i>	

Conditional.

Sing. *Mourrais* mourrais, mourrait, I should, could, or
 Plur. *Mourrions*, mourriez, mourraient, would die.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Meurs*, die thou.
 Plur. *Mourons*, mourez.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que Meure*, que meures, que meure, that I may die.
 Plur. *Mourions*, mouriez, meurent,

Preterite.

Sing. *Mourusse*, mourusses, mourût, that I might die.
 Plur. *Mourussions*, mourussiez, mourussent,
Se mourir, to be dying

OFFRIR, TO OFFER.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Offrir*, to offer.
 Part. act. *Offrant*, offering.
 Part. pass. *Offert*, te, offered.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Offre*, offres, offre, I offer, or am offering
 Plur. *Offrons*, offrez, offrent,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Offrais* offrais, offrait, I did offer, or was
 Plur. *Offrions*, offriez, offraient, offering.

Preterite.

Sing. *Offris*, offris, offrit, I offered, or did offer
 Plur. *Offrîmes*, offrîtes, offrirent,

Future.

Sing. *Offrirai*, offriras, offrira, I shall or will offer
 Plur. *Offrirons*, offrirez, offriront,

Conditional.

Sing. *Offrirais*, offrirais, offrirait, I would, could, or
 Plur. *Offririons*, offririez, offriraient, should offer

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Offre*, offer thou.
 Plur. *Offrons*, *offrez*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present

Sing. *Que Offre*, *que offres*, *que offre*, that I may offer.
 Plur. *Offrions*, *offriez*, *offrent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Offrisse*, *offrisses*, *offrît*, that I might offer.
 Plur. *Offrissions*, *offrissiez*, *offrissent*,

OUIR, TO HEAR.

This verb is never used but in its participle passive joined to some of the tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have preceding the verb *dire*, to say : ex.

J'ai ouï dire que, I have heard that, &c.

In general we make use of *apprendre*, irr. *v*.

*OUVRI*R, TO OPEN.

This verb, as well as its compounds,

Couvrir, to cover. *Recouvrir*, to cover again

Découvrir, { to discover, } is conjugated like *OFFRIR*.
 { to uncover, }

PARTIR, TO SET OUT, TO GO AWAY.

And its compounds,

Départir, *répartir*, to dis-tribute, to impart. | *Repartir*, to set out again, to reply.

Se REPENTIR, TO REPENT ;

SENTIR, TO FEEL, TO SMELL,

And its compounds,

Consentir, to consent, to agree, | *Ressentir*, to be sensible of, to resent,

Pressentir, to have a foresight or presentiment,
 are conjugated like *Mentir*.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

As soon as they saw us coming, they ran away.

Aussitôt que voir, venir, v.

-- Avoid bad company. -- He does not love your
compagnie, f.

sister, because she lies. -- If you forgive me this time,
parceque, c. fois, f.

I never will lie any more. -- I cannot believe him ;
sur, pouvoir, v.

for he contradicts himself at every instant. -- Tell
car, c. à tout moment. Dire, v.

me what she has done to you ; but above all, do not lie.
sur, p.

-- If you do not behave better, your mother will
se comporter, v.

die with grief. -- Mrs. S. died at Paris on the seventh
de chagrin, m. à sur

of August, one thousand seven hundred and eighty.
Août, m.

-- Misfortune often* seeks those who avoid it, and
Malheur, m, chercher, v.

sometimes avoids those who seem to seek it. --
quelquefois, adv. sembler, v. sur

Were I in your place, I would not offer her any money.
Si j'étais à

- Why do you not open the door for your sister ?
Pourquoi, adv. à

-- Your brother was no sooner arrived in London, than
plutôt, adv. à

I offered him my services. -- Your actions never belie
your words. -- Open the window. -- I had heard you
paroles.

were going to Holland (at the) beginning of next
au commencement, m.

month. -- I hope you will never discover what I have
espérer, v.

told you. -- Cover my hat, and put it upon that
dire, v. mettre, v.

chair -- I will set out to-morrow morning at seven
(o'clock.) -- Do not set out without me -- Let us go and
heures.

*See note, page 46.

see Mrs. D**, I have heard she is dying. -- Your sister repents much of having sold her books. -- Gather that
d'avoir

pink, it smells charmingly. -- Her mother says she
aillet,m bien bon,adv.

never will consent to it. -- If you do not take
prendre,v

care, you will repent (of) your imprudence soon or
garde, tôt,adv.

late. -- Let us die for our country, and our death will
tard,adv. patrie,f.

be glorious. -- Every citizen (ought to) be disposed to
glorieux,adj. doit,v.

sacrifice himself for the public good : it is at this
bien,m. ce,pro. à,p.

price only that (a man) acquires a lawful right
on légitime,adj. droit,m.

to the advantages of civil society. -- I should die
 satisfied, if I knew (that) you were happy. --

content,adj. savoir,v. (by the subj.)

You soon felt the effect of it. -- My cousin set o'it
effet,m.

from here yesterday morning at nine o'clock. -- I
ici,adv.

offer you my house : it is at your service. -- You
 may rely upon her : she will never discover
pouvoir,v. compter,v.

your secrets. -- I will never offer you my² horse³ any
 more¹. -- He will feel it in his turn, when he
à tour,m.

is old.
 (by the fut.)

REVÊTIR, TO INVEST INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Revêtir*, to invest with, to give other clothes.

Part. act. *Revêtant*, investing.

Part. pass. *Revêtu, ue*, invested.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Revêts, revêts revêt*, I invest.

Plur. *Revêtons, revêtez, revêtent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Revêtais*, *revêtais*, *revêtait*, I did invest
 Plur. *Revêtions*, *revêtiez*, *Revêtaient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Revêtis*, *revêtis*, *revêtit*, I invested, or did in
 Plur. *Revêtimes*, *revêtîtes*, *revêtirent*, vest

Future.

Sing. *Revêtirai*, *revêtiras*, *revêtira*, I shall, or will in-
 Plur. *Revêtirons*, *revêtirez*, *revêtiront*, vest.

Conditional.

Sing. *Revêtirais*, *revêtirais*, *revêtirait*, I should, would,
 Plur. *Revêtirions*, *revêtiriez*, *revêtiraient*, &c. invest.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Revêts*, invest thou.
 Plur. *Revêtons*, *revêtez*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Revête</i> ,	<i>revêtes</i> ,	<i>revête</i> , that I may invest
Plur.	<i>Revêtions</i> ,	<i>revêtiez</i> ,	<i>revêtent</i> ,

Preterite.

Sing. *Revêtisse*, *revêtisses*, *revêtît*, that I might invest.
 Plur. *Revêtissions*, *revêtissiez*, *revêtissent*.

SERVIR, TO SERVE, TO HELP TO.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Servir</i> , to serve.
Part. act.	<i>Servant</i> , serving.
Part. pass.	<i>Servi</i> , ie, served.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Sers*, *sers*, *sert*, I serve, or am serving.
 Plur. *Servons*, *servez*, *servent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Servais, servais, servait*, I did serve, or was
 Plur. *Servions, serviez, servaient*, serving.

Preterite.

Sing. *Servis, servis, servit*, I served, or did serve.
 Plur. *Servîmes, servîtes, servirent*,

Future.

Sing. *Servirai, serviras, servira*, I shall, or will serve.
 Plur. *Servirons, servirez, serviront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Servirais, servirais, servirait*, I would, should, or
 Plur. *Servirions, serviriez, serviraient*, could serve

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Sers*, serve thou.
 Plur. *Servons, servez*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Serve, serves, serve*, that I may serve.
 Plur. *Servions, serviez, servent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Servisse, servisses, servît*, that I might serve.
 Plur. *Servissions, servissiez, servissent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

Desservir, to do an ill office, to clear a table.

Se servir, to make use, to use.

SORTIR, TO GO OUT,
 is conjugated like ***MENTIR***.

SOUFFRIR, TO SUFFER,
 is conjugated like ***OFFRIR***.

TENIR, TO HOLD, TO KEEP.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Tenir*, to hold.
 Part. act. *Tenant*, holding.
 Part. pass. *Tenu, ue*, held.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Tiens, tiens, tient*, I hold, or am holding.Plur. *Tenons, tenez, tiennent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Tenais, tenais, tenait*, I did hold, or was holding.Plur. *Tenions, teniez, tenaient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Tins, tins, tint*, I held, or did hold.Plur. *Tinmes, tîntes, tinrent*,

Future.

Sing. *Tiendrai, tiendras, tiendra*, I shall, or will hold.Plur. *Tiendrons, tiendrez, tiendront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Tiendrais, tiendrais, tiendrait*, I should, could, orPlur. *Tiendrions, tiendriez, tiendraient*, would hold

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Tiens*, hold thou.Plur. *Tenons, tenez*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que Tienne, que tiennes, que tienne*, that I may hold.Plur. *Tenions, teniez, tiennent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Tinsse, tinsses, tînt*, that I might hold.Plur. *Tinssions, tinssiez, tinssent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

S'abstenir, to abstain.*Appartenir*, to belong.*Contenir*, to contain.*Détenir*, to detain.*Entretenir*, to keep, to en-
tertain.*Maintenir*, to maintain.*Obtenir*, to obtain.*Retenir*, to retain, to keep.*Soutenir*, to maintain, to
hold, to support.**TRESSAILLIR**, TO START, TO LEAP FOR.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Tressaillir*, to start.Part. act. *Tressaillant*, startingPart. pass. *Tressailli, ie*, started.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Tressaille*, *tressailles*, *tressaille*, I start
 Plur. *Tressaillons*, *tressaillez*, *tressaillent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Tressaillais*, *tressaillais*, *tressaillait*, I did start.
 Plur. *Tressaillions*, *tressailliez*, *tressaillaient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Tressaillis*, *tressaillis*, *tressaillit*, I started.
 Plur. *Tressaillîmes*, *tressaillîtes*, *tressaillirent*,

Future.

Sing. *Tressaillirai*, *tressailliras*, *tressaillira*, I shall, or
 will start.

Plur. *Tressaillirons*, *tressaillirez*, *tressailliront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Tressaillirais*, *tressaillirais*, *tressaillirait*, I should,
 would, &c. start.

Plur. *Tressaillirions*, *tressailliriez*, *tressailliraient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Tressailliez, *tressaillons*, *tressaille*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Tressaille*, *tressailles*, *tressaille*, that I may start.
 Plur. *Tressaillions*, *tressailliez*, *tressaillent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Tressaillisse*, *tressaillisses*, *tressaillît*, that I might
 Plur. *Tressaillissions*, *tressaillissiez*, *tressaillissent*, start.

ASSAILLIR, TO ASSAULT, is conjugated as above.

SAILLIR, TO JUT, TO JUT OUT, (term in architecture,) is conjugated like *TRESSAILLIR*, but is only used in the third person of some tenses and its infinitive mood.

N. B. *SAILLIR*, TO GUSH OUT, (speaking of any liquid,) is regular, and conjugated like *PUNIR*.

VENIR, TO COME,
 and its compounds.

Convenir de, à, to agree, to | *Revenir*, to come back, to
 become, to fit, to suit, | return,

<i>Contrevvenir</i> à, to infringe,	<i>Se souvenir de</i> , to remember,
<i>Devenir</i> , to become,*	to remind,†
<i>Disconvenir de</i> , to disagree,	<i>Se ressouvenir de</i> , to recollect,
<i>Intervenir</i> à, to intervene,	<i>Subvenir</i> à, to relieve, to assist,
<i>Parvenir</i> à, to attain to,	<i>Survenir</i> , to befall, to happen unexpectedly, to come to,
<i>Prévenir</i> , to prevent, to prejudice, to anticipate, to prepossess,	
<i>Provenir</i> , to proceed,	

are conjugated like **TENIR**.

VETIR, TO CLOTHE.

This verb is seldom used but in the present of the infinitive mood, and participle passive, *vêtu*, clothed ; therefore the conjugation of its compound **REKETIR**, TO INVEST WITH, TO GIVE OTHER CLOTHES, has just been given in lieu of it.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Your friend Mr. H***, does not serve me well. ---
ami, m. *ami*

Shall I help you to a little bit of lamb,
morceau, m. *agneau*,
or a wing of that chicken? --- We would
aile, f. *poulet*, m.
serve him with all our heart, if we could. --- I
de *pouvoir*, v.

* This verb in English is most generally accompanied by the preposition *of*, governing the noun or pronoun : but it must be observed, that, in French the preposition must be suppressed, and the noun or pronoun becomes the nominative to the verb *devenir* : ex.

<i>Ne vous informez point de ce que je deviendrai,</i>	Do not inquire about what will become of me.
<i>Que deviendra votre cousin si son père l'abandonne ?</i>	What will become of your cousin, if his father forsake him ?
<i>Si cela arrivait, je ne sais ce que nous deviendrions,</i>	Should that happen, I know not what would become of us.

† When this verb, in English, governs a noun or pronoun in the accusative case, it must be put in the infinitive mood, and preceded by the verb *faire* in the same tense, number and person, as the verb *to remind* : ex.

Faites-moi souvenir de passer chez, votre tante,	Remind me to call upon your aunt
Où, je vous en ferai souvenir,	Yes, I will remind you of it

shall go out in half an hour. - - If we go to-day
aujourd'hui, adv.
 to Richmond, we will (make use of) your coach. - - My
se servir de *carrosse, m.*
 sister went out *this morning at nine o'clock, and is not
matin, m.
 yet returned. - - Nobody knows what we suffered in our
revenir, v. *savoir, v.*
 last voyage. - - If I were as ill as you, I would
voyage, m. *malade, adj.*
 not go out of my room. - - - - Why do not you
chambre, f. *Pourquoi, adv.*
 serve your friends, since you may do it? - - -
puisque, c. *pouvoir, v.*
 Should† they forsake you, what would become of
abandonner, v.
 you? - - I would make use of your horse, if you (were
cheval, m. *avoir*
 so kind as to) lend it to me. - - - - The more we are
la bonté de
 above others, the more it becomes us to be
au dessus *de, p.*
 modest and humble. - - My aunt and I came yester-
tante, f.
 day to see you, but you were not at home. - - - I
 hope you will keep your word, and come
tenir, *parole, f.*
 to-morrow. - - I assure you Mr. R**'s father holds
demain, adv. *assurer, v.*
 the first rank in the town, but the son will never
rang, m.
 attain his father's reputation. - - Men acquire, by
Homme, m.
 long labours, knowledge which often becomes
travail, m. *lumière, f.*
 fatal to them. - - - I maintain, and will always
funeste, adj.
 maintain, that you will not be happy without
heureux, adj. *sans, p.*
 virtue. - - We were coming to see you, but you have
 anticipated all my designs. - - She leaped for joy when
prévenir, v. *de*

* See page 161.

† Turn, if they should, &c.

she saw her. - - At last she has agreed to pay her
*Enfin,adv. * de*
 an annual pension of twenty pounds. - - Her mother
 started up at these words, and became furious. - -
à,p. parole,f. furieux,adj.
 Come on Friday morning at nine o'clock. - -
Vendredi
 This house will belong to me after her death. - -
après,p. mort,f.
 You will obtain leave to go out another time,
permission de fois,f
 if you come back soon. - - This box contains all
bientôt
 my jewels. - - - I agree Miss N. is the prettiest of the
bijoux,m.
 family ; but she is so proud that I know not what will
 become of her. - - Who knows whether they will re-
savoir,v. si,c.
 member, (of) it or not ? - They assaulted the town (in the)
au
 middle of the night, and all their officers, even²
milieu,m. même,adv.
 the general¹, agree that they have acquired much
acquérir,v.
 glory. - - Remember that, if you infringe the law, you
 will incur the punishment decreed by the law. - -
peine,f. porté,p.p.
 Your illness proceeds from a great heat. - - - - The
chaleur,f.
 first time (that) you come to see me, I will keep you
 (by the fut.)
 two or three days. - - - Mr. B. desired me to tell you
prier,v. de
 that he will not come back to-day. - - - When the
 surgeon had opened his vein, the blood gushed
chirurgien,m. sang,m.
 out with an extraordinary impetuosity. - - That poor
 man will bless you, if you (give² him¹ other² clothes².)
bénir,v. revêtir,v.
 He is so prepossessed against me, that he will not
contre,p. vouloir,v.

* See the neuter verbs for the formation of the compound tenses,
 page 213.

† See observation, p. 162.

agree he (is in the wrong.) - - We should certainly
avoir tort. *certainement*, adv
have come back yesterday, had we had time. - - You will
hier, adv. *si* *le temps*,
become a great man, if you continue to study with
continuer, v. *de*
the same assiduity. - - He would have come to see us
assiduité, f. *être*, v.
last week, if it had not rained. - - The first time
semaine, f. *plu*, p.p. *fois*, f.
I go out, remind* me to call on your bro-
ther. (by the fut.) *de passer*, v. *chez*, p.
- - - That hat would suit you very well, if you
were a little taller. - - - Do not go out to-day, you
will suffer much if you do. - - I should not suffer
beaucoup, adv.
(so much) if it were fine weather. - - Why do not
tant, adv. *faisait*, v.
you abstain from drinking? - - The king has invested
boire, v.
that nobleman with all his authority. - - - You may
seigneur, m. *de* *Pouvoir*, v.
set out this morning, but remember to come back
at night. - - - Were I in your place, I would detain
ce soir, m. *à* *place*, f.
him here a little longer; for he always keeps
long-temps, adv. *car*, c.
himself shut up in his house. - - - I do not think that
enfermé, p.p. *croire*, v.
colour suits your sister. - - When will she return
(by the subj.) *Quand*, adv.
from the country? - - She wrote she would come next
campagne, f.
Saturday, if the weather were fine.

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

ASSEOIR, TO SIT DOWN.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Asseoir*, to sit down.

Part. act. *Asseyant*, sitting down.

Part. pass. *Assis, ise*, sat down (or seated.)

* See the last note, p. 248.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Assieds, assieds, assied, I sit down*Plur. *Asséyons, asséyez, asséyent,*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Asséyais, asséyais, asséyait, I did sit, or was sitting*Plur. *Asséyions, asséyiez, asséyaient, down*

Preterite.

Sing. *Assis, assis, assit, I sat down,*Plur. *Assîmes, assîtes, assirent,*

Future.

Sing. *Assièrai, assièras, assiéra, I shall, or will sit down.*Plur. *Assièrons, assièrez, assièront,*

Conditional.

Sing. *Assièrais, assièrais, assièrait, I should, would, or*Plur. *Assièrions, assièriez, assièraient, could sit down.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Assieds sit down.*Plur. *Asséyons, asséyez.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que Asséye, que asséyes, que asséye, that I may sit down.*Plur. *Asséyions, asséyiez, asséyent,*

Preterite.

Sing. *Assisse, assisses, assît, that I might sit down.*Plur. *Assissions, assissiez, assissent,*

Asseoir is active, but is most generally conjugated as a reflected verb, which may easily be done, by the learner adding a double pronoun to the different tenses, and forming the compound ones by the verb *être*, as in *se promener*, in page 219 : ex.

Je m'assieds, tu t'assieds, il s'assied ;
Nous nous asséyons, vous vous asséyez, ils s'asséyent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Je me suis assis, tu t'es assis, il s'est assis ;
Nous nous sommes assis, vous vous êtes assis, &c.

The compound of this verb is,

Se rasseoir, to sit down again.

SEOIR, TO FIT WELL, TO BECOME, TO FIT, the primitive of *asseoir*, is never used in the present of its infinitive mood ; and in its other tenses is conjugated only as follows :

Part. act *Séyant*, fitting well, fitting, or becoming.

Part. pass *Sis*, (never used but in the sense of situate or lying.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Il sied, *ils siént*, it becomes, they become, &c.

Imperfect.

Il séyait, *ils séyaient*, it was becoming, &c.

Preterite wanting.

Future.

Il siéra *ils siéront*, it or they will become.

Conditional.

Il siérait *ils siéraient*, it or they would become.

Subj. Pres.

Qu'il siée, *qu'ils siént*, that I may, &c.

The other tenses are never used.

SURSEOIR, TO SUPERSEDE, TO PUT OFF, a compound of *seoir*, is only used in law, and is thus conjugated :

Part. act. *Sursoyant*.

Part pass. *Sursis*, *ise*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Je sursois, &c. *nous sursoyons*, &c.

Imperfect.

Je sursoyais, &c. *nous sursoyions*, &c.

Preterite.

Je sursis, &c. *nous sursîmes*, &c.

Future.

Je surseoirai, &c. *nous surseoirons*, &c.

Conditional.

Je surseoirais, &c. nous surseoirions, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sursois, &c. sursoyons, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que je surseoie, &c. que nous sursoyions, &c.

Preterite.

Que je sursisse, &c. que nous sursissions, &c.

DECHOIR, TO DECAY, TO DECLINE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Déchoir, to decay.*

Part. act. *Déchéant, decaying.*

Part. pass. *Déchu, ue, decayed.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Déchois, déchois, déchoit, I decay.*

Plur. *Déchoyons, déchoyez, déchoyent,*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Je déchoyais, &c. Plur. Nous déchoyions, &c.*

Preterite.

Sing. *Déchus, déchus, déchut, I decayed, or did*

Plur. *Déchûmes, déchûtes, déchurent, decay*

Future.

Sing. *Décherrai, décherras, décherra, I shall, or will*

Plur. *Décherrons, décherez, décherront, decay*

Conditional.

Sing. *Décherrais, décherrais, décherrait, I should, would, or could decay.*

Plur. *Décherrions, décheriez, décherraient,*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Déchois, déchoyons, déchoyez,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que Déchoie, que déchoyes, que déchoye, that I may decay.*

Plur. *Déchoyions, déchoyez, déchoyent,*

Preterite.

Sing. *Déchusse*, *déchusses*, *déchût*, that I might decay
 Plur. *Déchussions*, *déchussiez*, *déchussent*,

CHOIR, the primitive of the above verb is obsolete.

ECHOIR, TO FALL OUT, TO CHANGE, is conjugated like **DECHOIR**. Its part. act. is *échéant*, *échu*, p.p.

MOUVOIR, TO MOVE.

Present. *Mouvoir*, to move.

Part. act. *Mouvant*, moving.

Part. pass. *Mû*, *ue*, moved.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Meus*, *meus*, *meut*, I move.

Plur. *Mouvons*, *mouvez*, *meuvent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Mouvais*, *mouvais*, *mouvait*, I did move

Plur. *Mouvions*, *mouviez*, *mouvaient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Mus*, *mus*, *mut*, I moved, or did move.

Plur. *Mûmes*, *mûtes*, *murent*,

Future.

Sing. *Mouvrai*, *mouvras*, *mouvra*, I shall, or will move.

Plur. *Mouvrons*, *mouvrez*, *mouvront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Mouvrais*, *mouvrais*, *mouvrait*, I should, could, or

Plur. *Mouvriers*, *mouvriez*, *mouvraient*, would move

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Meus*, *meuve*, move thou.

Plur. *Mouvons*, *mouvez*, *meuvent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que *que* *que*
 Sing. *Meuve*, *meuves*, *meuve*, that I may move.

Plur. *Mouvions*, *mouvriez*, *meuvent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Musse*, *musses*, *mût*, that I might move.

Plur. *Mussions*, *mussiez*, *mussent*,

'The compound of this verb is,
Emouvoir, to stir up, to move.

POUVOIR, TO BE ABLE, TO HAVE IN ONE'S POWER.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Pouvoir*, to be able.
 Part. act. *Pouvant*, being able.
 Part. pass. *Pu*, been able.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Puis*, or *peux*, *peux*, *peut*, I am able, I can or
 Plur. *Pouvons*, *pouvez*, *peuvent*, may

Imperfect.

Sing. *Pouvais*, *pouvais*, *pouvait*, I was able, or I could
 Plur. *Pouvions*, *pouviez*, *pouvaient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Pus*, *pus*, *put*, I was able, or I could.
 Plur. *Pûmes*, *pûtes*, *purent*,

Future.

Sing. *Pourrai*, *pourras*, *pourra*, I shall, or will be able
 Plur. *Pourrons*, *pourrez*, *pourront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Pourrais*, *pourrais*, *pourrait*, I should, be able,
 Plur. *Pourrions*, *pourriez*, *pourraient*, could, or might.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Puisse, *Puissions*, *Puissez*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Puisse*, *puisses*, *puisse*, that I may be able, or
 Plur. *Puissions*, *puissiez*, *puissent*, I may

Preterite.

Sing. *Pusse*, *pusses*, *pût*, that I might be able, or
 Plur. *Pussions*, *pussiez*, *pussent*, I might.

When the words *can*, *may*, *could*, or *might*, express an absolute or permissive power, or a possibility of doing a thing, *can* and *may* are rendered by the present tense of the indicative of this verb : ex.

Je puis vous vendre un bon cheval, si vous en avez besoin d'un, I can sell you a good horse, if you want one.

*Vous pouvez aller au bol, You may go to the ball,
mais revenez à dix heures, but come back at ten o'-
clock.*

N. B. *May*, expressing a wish, is rendered by the present tense of the subjunctive: ex.

Puissiez-vous être heureux ! May you be happy !

Could is rendered by one of the following tenses, viz. the imperfect, preterite, definite or indefinite, or conditional present ; and *might* by the last tense : ex.

*Je ne pouvais pas mieux I could do no better.
faire,*

*Il ne put pas venir avec nous He could not come with us
la semaine passée, last week.*

*Vous pourriez vous tromper You might mistake as well
aussi bien que lui, as he.*

Could or *might*, being joined to the verb *to have*, immediately followed by a participle passive, must be rendered by the conditional past of the above verb, with the participle turned into the present of the infinitive mood : ex.

*J'aurais pu vous le dire hier I could have told it to you
au soir, last night.*

*Vous auriez pu le faire, en You might have done it in
trois jours, three days.*

SAVOIR, TO KNOW something.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Savoir</i> , to know.
Part. act.	<i>Sachant</i> , knowing.
Part. pass.	<i>Su, ue</i> , known.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Sais, sais, sait</i> , I know.
Plur.	<i>Savons, savez, savent</i> ,

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Savais, savais, savait</i> , I did know, or knew
Plur.	<i>Savions, saviez, savaient</i> ,

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Sus, sus, sut</i> , I knew, or did know
Plur.	<i>Sûmes, sûtes, surent</i> ,

Future.

Sing.	<i>Saurai,</i>	<i>sauras, saura,</i>	I shall, or will know.
Plur.	<i>Saurons,</i>	<i>saurez, sauront,</i>	

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Saurais,*</i>	<i>saurais, saurait,</i>	I should, would, or
Plur.	<i>Saurions,</i>	<i>sauriez, sauraient,</i>	- could know

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Sache,</i>	know thou.
Plur.	<i>Sachons,</i>	<i>sachez.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Sache,†</i>	<i>saches,</i>	<i>sache,</i>	that I may know.
Plur.	<i>Sachions,</i>	<i>sachiez,</i>	<i>sachent,</i>	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Susse,</i>	<i>susses,</i>	<i>sût,</i>	that I might know.
Plur.	<i>Sussions,</i>	<i>sussiez,</i>	<i>sussent,</i>	

VALOIR, TO BE WORTH.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Valoir,</i>	to be worth.
Part. act.	<i>Valant,</i>	being worth
Part. pass.	<i>Valu,</i>	been worth.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Vaux,</i>	<i>vaux, vaut,</i>	I am worth.
Plur.	<i>Valons,</i>	<i>valez, valent,</i>	

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Valais,</i>	<i>valais, valait,</i>	I was worth.
Plur.	<i>Valions,</i>	<i>valiez, valaient,</i>	

* This tense, conjugated negatively, is often Englished by *cannot* ex.

Je ne saurais vous le dire, I cannot tell it to you.

† We sometimes employ the present of the subjunctive of this verb instead of the indicative ; but it is never to be used without the negation *pas*. and most commonly in answering a question : ex.

Le roi ira-t-il à la comédie ?

Will the king go to the play ?

Pas que je sache,

Not that I know of.

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Valus,</i>	<i>valus,</i>	<i>valut,</i>	I was worth.
Plur.	<i>Valûmes,</i>	<i>valûtes,</i>	<i>valurent,</i>	

Future.

Sing.	<i>Vaudrai,</i>	<i>vaudras,</i>	<i>vaudra,</i>	I shall, or will be
Plur.	<i>Vaudrons,</i>	<i>vaudrez,</i>	<i>vaudront,</i>	worth.

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Vaudrais,</i>	<i>vaudrais,</i>	<i>vaudrait,</i>	I should, &c. be
Plur.	<i>Vaudrions,</i>	<i>vaudriez,</i>	<i>vaudraient,</i>	worth.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Vaux,</i>	<i>vaille,</i>	be thou worth.
Plur.	<i>Valons,</i>	<i>valez,</i>	<i>vaillent,</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Vaille,</i>	<i>vailles,</i>	<i>vaille,</i>	that I may be worth.
Plur.	<i>Valions,</i>	<i>valiez,</i>	<i>vaillent,</i>	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Valusse,</i>	<i>valusses,</i>	<i>valût,</i>	that I might be worth.
Plur.	<i>Valussions,</i>	<i>valussiez,</i>	<i>valussent,</i>	

The compound of this verb is,

Prévaloir, to prevail, is conjugated as *VALOIR* : but we say in the present tense of the subjunctive,

Que je préval-e, es, e, : ions, iez, ent.

VOIR, TO SEE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Voir,</i>	to see.
Part. act.	<i>Voyant,</i>	seeing.
Part. pass.	<i>Vu, ue,</i>	seen.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Vois,</i>	<i>vois,</i>	<i>voit,</i>	I see.
Plur.	<i>Voyons,</i>	<i>voyez,</i>	<i>voient,</i>	

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Voyais,</i>	<i>voyais,</i>	<i>voyait,</i>	I did see.
Plur.	<i>Voyions,</i>	<i>voyiez,</i>	<i>voyaient,</i>	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Vis,</i>	<i>vis,</i>	<i>vit,</i>	I saw, or did see.
Plur.	<i>Vîmes,</i>	<i>vîtes,</i>	<i>virent,</i>	

Future.

Sing. *Verrai, verras, verra, I shall, or will see.*
 Plur. *Verrons, verrez, verront,*

Conditional.

Sing. *Verrais, verrais, verrait, I should, &c. see.*
 Plur. *Verrions, verriez, verraient,*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Vois, see thou.*
 Plur. *Voyons, voyez.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Voie,</i>	<i>voies,</i>	<i>voie,</i>	that I may see
Plur	<i>Voyions,</i>	<i>voyiez,</i>	<i>voient,</i>	

Preterite.

Sing. *Visse, visses, vît, that I might see.*
 Plur. *Vissions, vissiez, vissent,*

Entrevoir, to have a glimpse of. Prêvoir, to foresee.
Revoir, to see again. Pourvoir, to provide.

PREVOIR differs from **VOIR** in the future : ex.

Sing. *Prévoirai, prévoiras, prévoira.*
 Plur. *Prévoirons, prévoirez, prévoiront ; And,*

Conditional. Present.

Sing. *Prévoirais, prévoirais, prévoirait.*
 Plur. *Prévoirions, prévoiriez, prévoiraient.*

POURVOIR makes in the Preterite,

Sing. *Pourvus, pourvus, pourvut.*
 Plur. *Pourvûmes, pourvûtes, pourvurent.*

Future.

Sing. *Pourvoirai, pourvoiras, pourvoira.*
 Plur. *Pourvoirons, pourvoirez, pourvoiront.*

Conditional.

Sing. *Pourvoirais, pourvoirais, pourvoirait.*
 Plur. *Pourvoirions, pourvoiriez, pourvoiraient.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Preterite.

Sing. *Pourvusse, pourvusses, pourvût.*
 Plur. *Pourvussions, pourvussiez, pourvussent.*

VOULOIR, TO BE WILLING.**INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present.	<i>Vouloir</i> , to be willing.
Part. act.	<i>Voulant</i> , being willing.
Part. pass.	<i>Voulu</i> , <i>ue</i> , been willing

INDICATIVE MOOD.**Present.**

Sing.	<i>Veux</i> ,	<i>veux</i> ,	<i>veut</i> ,	I am willing, or I will.
Plur.	<i>Voulons</i> ,	<i>voulez</i> ,	<i>veulent</i> ,	

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Voulais</i> ,	<i>voulais</i> ,	<i>voulait</i> ,	I was willing, or I would.
Plur.	<i>Voulions</i> ,	<i>vouliez</i> ,	<i>voulaient</i> ,	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Voulus</i> ,	<i>voulus</i> ,	<i>voulut</i> ,	I was willing, or I
Plur.	<i>Voulûmes</i> ,	<i>voulûtes</i> ,	<i>voulurent</i> ,	would.

Future.

Sing.	<i>Voudrai</i> ,	<i>voudras</i> ,	<i>voudra</i> ,	I shall be willing, or
Plur.	<i>Voudrons</i> ,	<i>voudrez</i> ,	<i>voudront</i> ,	I will.

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Voudrais</i> ,	<i>voudrais</i> ,	<i>voudrait</i> ,	I should be willing,
Plur.	<i>Voudrions</i> ,	<i>voudriez</i> ,	<i>voudraient</i> ,	or I would

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Veux, *Voulons*, *Voulez*; and
Veuille, *Veussions*, *Veillez*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**Present.**

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Veuille</i> ,	<i>veilles</i> ,	<i>veille</i> ,	that I may be wil-
Plur.	<i>Voulions</i> ,	<i>vouliez</i> ,	<i>veussent</i> ,	ling.

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Voulusse</i> ,	<i>voulusses</i> ,	<i>voulût</i> ,	that I might be wil-
Plur.	<i>Voulussions</i> ,	<i>voulussiez</i> ,	<i>voulussent</i> ,	ling.

When the words *will* or *would* signify a will, choice, or deliberation in the agent, and can be expressed by *choose* or *chose*, *will* is rendered in French by the present of the indicative mood, or future of this verb : ex.

Je veux y aller, et lui parler moi-même, I will, or choose to, go there, and speak to him myself.
Il ne veut pas manger, He will not eat, or does not choose to eat :

and *would* by one of the following tenses, viz. the Imperfect, Preterite, Conditional, or Compound of the Present.

Si je voulais, je vous dirais où elle demeure, If I would, or chose, I could tell you where she lives.
Il voulut absolument partir hier, He would, absolutely, or absolutely chose to, set out yesterday.

Que voudriez-vous que je fisse ? What would you have me do ?

When *would* is joined to the verb *to have* immediately followed by a participle passive, they are to be rendered by the compound of the imperfect or compound of the conditional of the above verb, with the participle passive turned into the present of the infinitive mood : ex.

Si j'avais voulu lui parler, If I would have spoken to him, or had I chosen to speak to him.

Vous n'auriez pas voulu prendre les armes, si, &c. You would not have taken up arms, if, &c.

Nous aurions pu l'arrêter, si nous eussions voulu, We could have stopped him, if we had been willing, or had chosen.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Why do not you sit down, sir ? -- You
Pourquoi, adv.
 come to see me very seldom. -- Let us sit down, upon
rarement, adv.
 the grass. -- Do not make (so much) noise, I cannot
herbe, f. faire, v. tant, adv.
 learn my lesson. -- Do you know what has hap-
apprendre, v. est arri-
 pened to her ? -- No, I do not. -- As soon as he saw
ver, v. Aussitôt que, c.
 he could not make her hear reason, he went
entendre, v. s'en
 away, will he be able to follow me ? -- What will you
aller, v. suivre, v.

do? - - - We went there ourselves, and soon knew
bientôt, adv.
 what she asked. - - See the letter she wrote me. - - We
écrire, v.
 will not sit down till you have determined to
que ne se déterminer, v. subj. à
 set out. - - The first time I saw your sister, she pleased
fois, f. plaire, v.
 me. - - I would sit down upon the grass, if it were not so
 damp. - - - Mrs. P. desired me to tell you she could
humide, adj. prier, v. de dire, v.
 not come to see you this week, but (that) she would cer-
semaine, f. cer-
 tainly come (at the) beginning of next
tainement, adv. au commencement, m.
 month. - - - Cannot you lend me three or four
mois, m. prêter, v.
 guineas? - - - If I would, I could soon know
guinée bientôt, adv.
 whether Mrs. D. has seen your aunt or not. - - -
si, c. tante, f. non.
 The last time I was in the park, I could not distinguish
 her, on account of the trees that were between
à cause, p.
 her, and me; (I had only a) glimpse of her. - - -
je n'ai fait que
 This cloth is not worth five shillings a yard, but the
drap, m.
 colour becomes you very well. - - - Do you not see the
 defects of it? - - - When you know your lesson
défaut, m. (by the fut.)
 come and repeat it to me. - - Did you not know that
répéter, v.
 Mr. A. (was to) marry Miss B.? - - - I knew it, but
épouser, v. mais, c.
 I was not willing to tell your brother of it. - - I be-
parler, v.
 lieve you could learn your lessons much bet-
apprendre, v. beaucoup, adv.
 ter, if you would. - - Could you lend me your horse
prêter, v.
 for two or three days? - - If your brother come with us
jour, m. avec, p.

I lay that he will not come without his sister ? - - This
parier, v.

room can contain about a hundred people. - - Could
environ, p. personne.

they see so great an alteration, without being
changement, m. sans, p.

vexed (at it) ? - - (It is) better to be unfortunate than
fâché, p. p. en, pro. valoir, v. malheureux, adj.

criminal. - - - He who cannot command himself, is inca-
se

pable of commanding others. - - His best coat was not
aux habit, m.

worth two-pence when he arrived from Germany. - - -
sou Allemagne.

We saw them yesterday. - - - They did not foresee
hier, adv.

what would happen to them. - - - - We ought to
arriver, v. devoir, v.

make a judicious choice of those friends, to
faire, v. judicieux, adj. choix, m. &

whom we intend to give our confidence. - - Do you
vouloir, v. confiance, f.

know where Miss B. lives ? - - - - Yes, I do (know it,)
où, adv. demeurer, v.

and I see her every day at her window. - - - - Why will
fenêtre, f.

you not tell it me ? - - - She would marry him, in
épouser, v. en, p.

spite of all her relations. - - It is for this reason
dépit, m. parent, m. Ce, pro.

her father says he will never see her again. - - - I
dire, v.

have spoken of your wine to two friends of mine :
 one has money, but he will not buy : the other would
 buy, but he has no money. - - - Some told me that
 your brother could not pay me, others told me that
 he would not ; in short, I find that, when people
enfin, adv. gens, pl.

will not pay, we have much trouble. - - - We regularly
 pay all that we owe ; but he says, that he will pay no-
 body. - - - - - All the finest talents united are not
réunir, v.

worth one virtue - - Virtue is a quality which we can-

not (too much) praise. --- Severity and rigour may
trop,adv. louer,v. Sévérité,f. rigueur,f.
 excite fear, but not love. --- You saw with what
crainte,f. amour,m.
 goodness she received him. --- I would not tell her
bonté,f. recevoir,v.
 what I think about it, for fear of giving her the least
de,p. inf.
 subject of complaint. --- If you foresee the danger,
plainte.
 why do you not endeavour to avoid it ? --- They were
tâcher,v. déviter,v.
 willing to withdraw, but your brother hindered
se retirer,v. empêcher,v.
 them (from it), and desired them to sit down again
prier,v. de
 --- You can speak to Mr. B. whenever you
parler,v. quand,
 please, but I may not take that liberty. ---
vouloir,v. prendre,v.
 Why may you not ? --- You know the esteem
estime,f.
 and friendship that I have for him : you know
 that his father is one of my oldest friends :
ancien,adj.
 you know yourself the merit of both. --- He would
 not sell me these buckles under four
vendre,v. boucle,f. à moins de,p.
 guineas. --- I will not see (any more) your brother
plus,adv.
 but I will see you again as soon as I can. ---
 (by the fut.)
 Every body thinks, that, if they would have pursued
 * *poursuivre,v.*
 the enemy briskly, they might have ended
vigoureusement,adv. finir,v.
 the war on that day. --- Should we see ourselves re-
ré-
 duced to so great difficulties ? -- If I would have be-
*duire,v. **
 lieved him, he would have persuaded me to go to Italy
croître,v. de

* After the conjunction *Si*, always use the imperfect ; see p. 157 and

with him. - - He could have done his work in less
 than ten minutes, if he had not amused ^{*faire, v.*} himself in ^{*en, p.*}
 reading. - If you want ^{*s'amuser, v.*} that book, you may take ^{*à*}
lire, v. ^{*avoir besoin de*} it, it is at your service. - - If he sold all his horses now,
^{*à*} the best of them would not be worth ten guineas. - - -
 ∞ ∞
 We might have danced till (twelve o'clock) if
^{*jusqu'à, p.*} that had not happened. - - Oh! my children, may you ^{*minuit,*}
 be happy, and never bewail the moment of your
^{*heureux, adj.*} birth! - - I spoke to her (a long while,) but could ^{*pleurer, v.*}
^{*naissance, f.*} not persuade her to come with me. - - - May I go ^{*long-temps, adv.*}
^{*de*} and see him? - - - Yes, you may, but come back
 ∞
 as soon as you can.
aussitôt que, c. (by the fut.)

VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ABSOUUDRE, TO ABSOLVE, TO ACQUIT.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Absoudre</i> , to absolve
Part. act.	<i>Absolvant</i> , absolving.
Part. pass.	<i>Absous</i> , <i>oute</i> , absolved.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Absous</i> ,	<i>absous</i> ,	<i>absout</i> , I absolve.
Plur.	<i>Absolvons</i> ,	<i>absolvez</i> ,	<i>absolvent</i> ,

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Absolvais</i> ,	<i>absolvais</i> ,	<i>absolvait</i> , I did absolve.
Plur.	<i>Absolvions</i> ,	<i>absolviez</i> ,	<i>absolvaient</i> ,

Preterite is wanting.

Future.

Sing.	<i>Absoudrai</i> ,	<i>absoudras</i> ,	<i>absoudra</i> , I shall, or will
Plur.	<i>Absoudrons</i> ,	<i>absoudrez</i> ,	<i>absoudront</i> , absolve.

Conditional.

Sing. *Absoudrais, absoudrais, absoudrait*, I should, &c
 Plur. *Absoudrions, absoudriez, absoudraient*, absolve

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Absous*, absolve thou.
 Plur. *Absolvons, absolvez*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Absolve, absolves, absolve*, that I may absolve.
 Plur. *Absolvions, absolviez, absolvent*,

Preterite is wanting.

SOUDRE, TO SOLVE, (the primitive of this verb,) is used only in the present tense of the infinitive mood.

The other compounds are,

Dissoudre, to dissolve. *Résoudre*, to resolve.

Dissoudre has the same tenses wanting as *absoudre*.

Résoudre has its participle passive, *résolu* : its preterite is,

Sing. *Résolus, résolus, résolut*.
 Plur. *Résolûmes, résolûtes, résolurent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Preterite.

Sing. *Résolusse, résolusses, résclût*.
 Plur. *Résolussions, résolussiez, résolussent*.

ATTEINDRE, TO REACH, TO HIT, TO ATTAIN,
 TO OVERTAKE, and

ASTREINDRE, TO OBLIGE ;

AVEINDRE, TO REACH, TO FETCH OUT,
 are conjugated like **CRAINDRE**.

The two foregoing verbs are growing obsolete

BATTRE, TO BEAT.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Battre*, to beat.
 Part. act. *Battant*, beating.
 Part. pass. *Battu, ue*, beaten.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Bats*, *bats*, *bat*, I beat, or am beating.
 Plur. *Battons*, *battez*, *battent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Battais*, *battais*, *battait*, I did beat, or was beat
 Plur. *Battions*, *battiez*, *battaient*, ing

Preterite.

Sing. *Battis*, *battis*, *battit*, I beat, or did beat.
 Plur. *Battîmes*, *battîtes*, *battirent*,

Future.

Sing. *Battrai*, *battras*, *battrai*, I shall, or will beat.
 Plur. *Battrons*, *battrez*, *battront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Battrais*, *battrais*, *battrait*, I should, &c. beat
 Plur. *Battrions*, *battriez*, *battraient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Bats*, *batte*, beat thou.
 Plur. *Battons*, *Battez*, *battent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Batte*, *battes*, *batte*, that I may beat.
 Plur. *Battions*, *battiez*, *battent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Battisse*, *battisses*, *battît*, that I might beat.
 Plur. *Battissions*, *battissiez*, *battissent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Abattre</i> , to pull down, to throw down.		<i>Se débattre</i> , to struggle.
<i>Combattre</i> , to fight.		<i>Rabattre</i> , to abate, to beat down.
<i>Débattre</i> , to debate.		<i>Rebattre</i> , to beat again.

BOIRE, TO DRINK.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Boire*, to drink.
 Part. act. *Buvant*, drinking.
 Part. pass. *Bu*, *ue*,

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Bois*, *bois*, *boit*, I drink, or am drinking.
 Plur. *Buvons*, *buvez*, *boivent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Buvais*, *buvais*, *buvait*, I did drink, or was
 Plur. *Buvions*, *buviez*, *buvaient*, drinking.

Preterite.

Sing. *Bus*, *bus*, *but*, I drank, or did drink.
 Plur. *Bûmes*, *bûtes*, *burent*,

Future.

Sing. *Boirai*, *boiras*, *boira*, I shall, or will drink.
 Plur. *Boirons*, *boirez*, *boiront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Boirais*, *boirais*, *boirait*, I should, &c. drink
 Plur. *Boirions*, *boiriez*, *boiraient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Bois*, drink thou.
 Plur. *Buvons*, *buvez*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que *que* *que*
 Sing. *Boive*, *boives*, *boive*, that I may drink.
 Plur. *Buvions*, *buviez*, *boivent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Busse*, *busses*, *bût*, that I might drink.
 Plur. *Bussions*, *bussiez*, *bussent*,

N. B. *Boire dans quelque chose*, is, To drink out of something.

BRAIRE, TO BRAY.

This verb is seldom used, except in the present tense of the infinitive mood, and the third person singular and plural of the present, future, and conditional of the indicative mood

Infinitive. *Braire*, to bray.—Present, indicative. *Il brait, ils braient*.—Future, *Il braira, ils brairont*.—Conditional. *Il brairait, ils brairaient*.—This verb expresses the discordant cry of an ass.

BRUIRE, TO ROAR, TO MAKE A GREAT NOISE.

This verb is used only in the present of the infinitive mood and in the third person of the imperfect, indicative, *Il bruyait, ils bruyaient*. Its participle active, *bruyant*, is often but a mere adjective.

CEINDRE, TO GIRD,

And its compound, *Enceindre*, to enclose, to encompass, are conjugated like *CRAINdre*.

CIRCONCIRE, TO CIRCUMCISE,

is conjugated like *CONFIRE*, but has its participle passive ending in *is, ise*, instead of *it*.

CLORE, TO SURROUND.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Clore*, to surround.
Part. act. *Closant*, surrounding.
Part. pass. *Clos, close*, surrounded.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Clos,</i>	<i>clos,</i>	<i>clot,</i>
Plur.	<i>Closons,</i>	<i>closez,</i>	<i>closent.</i>

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Closais,</i>	<i>closais,</i>	<i>clošait,</i>
Plur.	<i>Closions,</i>	<i>clošiez,</i>	<i>clošaient.</i>

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Clošis,</i>	<i>clošis,</i>	<i>clošit,</i>
Plur.	<i>Clošimes,</i>	<i>clošites,</i>	<i>cloširent.</i>

Future.

Sing.	<i>Clorai,</i>	<i>cloras,</i>	<i>clora,</i>
Plur.	<i>Clorons,</i>	<i>clorez,</i>	<i>cloront.</i>

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Clorais,</i>	<i>clorais,</i>	<i>clorait.</i>
Plur.	<i>Clorions,</i>	<i>cloriez,</i>	<i>cloraient.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Clos,</i>
Plur.	<i>Closons, closez.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>CLOSE,</i>	<i>closes,</i>	<i>close,</i>
Plur.	<i>Closions,</i>	<i>closiez,</i>	<i>closent.</i>

Imperfect, or Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Closisse,</i>	<i>closisses,</i>	<i>closit,</i>
Plur.	<i>Closissions,</i>	<i>closissiez,</i>	<i>closissent.</i>

The compound of this verb is : ENCLOSE, to surround with walls, &c.

CONCLURE, TO CONCLUDE

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Conclure,</i>	to conclude
Part. act.	<i>Concluant,</i>	concluding.
Part. pass.	<i>Conclu, ue,</i>	concluded

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Conclus,</i>	<i>conclus,</i>	<i>conclut,</i>	I conclude
Plur.	<i>Concluons,</i>	<i>concluez,</i>	<i>concluent,</i>	

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Concluais,</i>	<i>concluais,</i>	<i>concluait,</i>	I did conclude.
Plur.	<i>Concluions,</i>	<i>concluiez,</i>	<i>concluaient,</i>	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Conclus,</i>	<i>conclus,</i>	<i>conclut,</i>	I concluded or did conclude.
Plur.	<i>Conclûmes,</i>	<i>conclûtes,</i>	<i>conclurent,</i>	

Future.

Sing.	<i>Conclurai,</i>	<i>concluras,</i>	<i>conclura,</i>	I shall or will conclude.
Plur.	<i>Conclurons,</i>	<i>conclurez,</i>	<i>concluront,</i>	

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Conclurais,</i>	<i>conclurais,</i>	<i>conclurait,</i>	I should, &c. conclude.
Plur.	<i>Conclurions,</i>	<i>concluriez,</i>	<i>concluraient,</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.		<i>conclus,</i>	conclude thou.
Plur.	<i>Concluons,</i>	<i>concluez,</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Conclue,</i>	<i>conclues,</i>	<i>conclue,</i> that I might conclude.
Plur.	<i>Concluions,</i>	<i>concluiez,</i>	<i>concluent,</i>

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Conclusse,</i>	<i>conclusses,</i>	<i>conclût,</i>	that I may conclude.
Plur.	<i>Conclussions,</i>	<i>conclussiez,</i>	<i>conclussent,</i>	

CONDUIRE, TO CONDUCT, TO LEAD, TO CARRY.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Conduire</i> , to conduct.
Part. act.	<i>Conduisant</i> , conducting.
Part. pass.	<i>Conduit</i> , <i>te</i> , conducted.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Conduis</i> ,	<i>conduis</i> ,	<i>conduit</i> , I lead, &c.
Plur.	<i>Conduisons</i> ,	<i>conduisez</i> ,	<i>conduisent</i> ,

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Conduisais</i> ,	<i>conduisais</i> ,	<i>conduisait</i> , I did lead.
Plur.	<i>Conduisions</i> ,	<i>conduisiez</i> ,	<i>conduisaient</i> ,

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Conduisis</i> ,	<i>conduisis</i> ,	<i>conduisit</i> , I led, &c.
Plur.	<i>Conduisîmes</i> ,	<i>conduisîtes</i> ,	<i>conduisirent</i> ,

Future.

Sing.	<i>Conduirai</i> ,	<i>conduiras</i> ,	<i>conduira</i> , I shall, or will lead.
Plur.	<i>Conduirons</i> ,	<i>conduirez</i> ,	<i>conduiront</i> ,

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Conduirais</i> ,	<i>conduirais</i> ,	<i>conduirait</i> , I should, &c., lead.
Plur.	<i>Conduirions</i> ,	<i>conduiriez</i> ,	<i>conduiraient</i> ,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Conduis</i> , lead thou.
Plur.	<i>Conduisons</i> , <i>conduisez</i> .

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Conduise</i> ,	<i>conduises</i> ,	<i>conduise</i> , that I may lead.
Plur.	<i>Conduisions</i> ,	<i>conduisiez</i> ,	<i>conduisent</i> ,

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Conduisisse</i> ,	<i>conduisisses</i> ,	<i>conduisît</i> , that I might lead.
Plur.	<i>Conduisissions</i> ,	<i>conduisissiez</i> ,	<i>conduisissent</i> ,

Its compound is

Reconduire, to lead again.*CONFIRE*, TO PRESERVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Confire</i> , to preserve.
Part. act.	<i>Confisant</i> , preserving.
Part. pess.	<i>Confit</i> , <i>te</i> , preserved.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Confis</i> ,	<i>confis</i> ,	<i>confit</i> , I preserve.
Plur.	<i>Confisons</i> ,	<i>confisez</i> ,	<i>confisent</i> ,

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Confisais,</i>	<i>confisais,</i>	<i>confisait,</i>	I did preserve
Plur.	<i>Confisions,</i>	<i>confisiez,</i>	<i>confisaient,</i>	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Confis,</i>	<i>confis,</i>	<i>confit,</i>	I preserved.
Plur.	<i>Confimes,</i>	<i>confîtes,</i>	<i>confirent,</i>	

Future.

Sing.	<i>Confirai,</i>	<i>confiras,</i>	<i>confira,</i>	I shall, or will preserve.
Plur.	<i>Confirons,</i>	<i>confirez,</i>	<i>confiront,</i>	

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Confirais,</i>	<i>confirais,</i>	<i>confirait,</i>	I should, &c., preserve
Plur.	<i>Confirions,</i>	<i>confiriez,</i>	<i>confiraient,</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.		<i>Confis,</i>	preserve thou.
Plur.	<i>Confisons,</i>	<i>confisez.</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Confise,</i>	<i>confises,</i>	<i>confise,</i>	that I may preserve.
Plur.	<i>Confisions,</i>	<i>confisiez,</i>	<i>confissent.</i>	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Confisse,</i>	<i>confisses,</i>	<i>confît,</i>	that I might preserve.
Plur.	<i>Confissions,</i>	<i>confissiez,</i>	<i>confissent,</i>	

CONNAITRE, TO KNOW, TO BE ACQUAINTED WITH,
somebody.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Connaître,</i>	to know.
Part. act.	<i>Connaissant,</i>	knowing.
Part. pass.	<i>Connu, ue,</i>	known.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Connais,</i>	<i>connais,</i>	<i>connait,</i>	I know.
Plur.	<i>Connaissons,</i>	<i>connaissez,</i>	<i>connaissent,</i>	

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Connaissais,</i>	<i>connaissais,</i>	<i>connaissait,</i>	I did know.
Plur.	<i>Connaissions,</i>	<i>connaissiez,</i>	<i>connaissaient,</i>	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Connus,</i>	<i>connus,</i>	<i>connut,</i>	I know.
Plur.	<i>Connûmes,</i>	<i>connûtes,</i>	<i>connurent,</i>	

Future.

Sing.	<i>Connaitrai,</i>	<i>connaitras,</i>	<i>connaitra,</i>	I shall, &c. know
Plur.	<i>Connaitrons,</i>	<i>connaitrez,</i>	<i>connaitront,</i>	

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Connaitrais,</i>	<i>connaitrais,</i>	<i>connaitrait,</i>	I should, &c. know
Plur.	<i>Connaitrions,</i>	<i>connaittriez,</i>	<i>connaittraient,</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Connais*, know thou.
 Plur. *Connaissons*, *connaissez*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Connaisse</i> ,	<i>connaises</i> ,	<i>connaisse</i> ,	that I may know.
Plur.	<i>Connaissons</i> ,	<i>connaissez</i> ,	<i>connassent</i> ,	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Connusse</i> ,	<i>connusses</i> ,	<i>connût</i> ,	that I might know.
Plur.	<i>Connussions</i> ,	<i>connussiez</i> ,	<i>connussent</i> ,	

The compound of this verb are,

<i>Méconnaître</i> , to take for another.	<i>Reconnaître</i> , to acknowledge, know again.
--	---

CONSTRUIRE, TO CONSTRUCT, TO BUILD,
is conjugated like *CONDUIRE*.

CONTRAINDRE, TO CONSTRAIN, TO COMPEL,
TO FORCE.

is conjugated like *CRAINdre*.

COUDRE, TO SEW, TO STITCH.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Coudre*, to sew.
 Part. act. *Cousant*, sewing.
 Part. pass. *Cousu*, *ue*, sewed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Couds</i> ,	<i>couds</i> ,	<i>coud</i> ,	I sew, or am sewing.
Plur.	<i>Cousons</i> ,	<i>cousez</i> ,	<i>cousent</i> ,	

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Cousais</i> ,	<i>cousais</i> ,	<i>cousait</i> ,	I did sew, or was sewing.
Plur.	<i>Cousions</i> ,	<i>cousiez</i> ,	<i>cousaient</i> ,	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Cousis</i> ,	<i>cousis</i> ,	<i>cousit</i> ,	I sewed.
Plur.	<i>Cousîmes</i> ,	<i>cousîtes</i> ,	<i>cousirent</i> ,	

Future.

Sing.	<i>Coudrai</i> ,	<i>coudras</i> ,	<i>coudra</i> ,	I shall, or will sew.
Plur.	<i>Coudrons</i> ,	<i>coudrez</i> ,	<i>coudront</i> ,	

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Coudrais</i> ,	<i>coudrais</i> ,	<i>coudrait</i> ,	I should &c., sew
Plur.	<i>Coudrions</i> ,	<i>coudriez</i> ,	<i>coudraient</i> ,	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Couds</i> ,	sew thou.
Plur.	<i>Cousons</i> ,	<i>cousez</i> .

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Couse,</i>	<i>couses,</i>	<i>couse,</i>	that I may sew.
Plur.	<i>Cousions,</i>	<i>cousiez,</i>	<i>cousent,</i>	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Cousisse,</i>	<i>cousisses,</i>	<i>cousît,</i>	that I might sew
Plur.	<i>Cousissions,</i>	<i>cousissiez,</i>	<i>cousissent,</i>	

Its compounds are,

<i>Découdre,</i>	to unsew.	<i>Recoudre,</i>	to sew again.
------------------	-----------	------------------	---------------

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS
AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

I know several persons in this country who
plusieurs,adj. *pays,m.*
 speak as good French, as if they had been (brought up)
bien,adv. *élevé,p.p.*
 in France. - - - - - Do you know Mr. A. ? - - - -
 Yes, we know him very well ; and, though he is
Où,adv. *soit*
 rich, I assure you he is not the more charitable for
 it. - - - - He has been beaten (soundly). - - - If you
comme il faut,
 knew the question, you would resolve it in two
question,f. *en*
 words. - - - I will soon conclude, if you think as
mot,m. *comme,adv.*
 your brother does. - - - We should beat them, if they
ou
 did not fight in their own country. - - - Do not
propre,adj.
 beat him any more, he acknowledges his fault. - - -
ou *faute.*
 We ran for above two hours, but at last
pendant,p. *plus de,adv.* *enfin,adv.*
 your brother overtook him, and brought him back. - -
ramener,v. *ou*
 You would never see him again, if you knew him. - - - -
 He struggled a long while, but he was soon obliged
ou *temps,m.*
 to (cry for) mercy. - - - This mortification has pulled
de demander,v. *grâce.*

down his pride, I assure you : however, the judge
cependant,adv.
 has acquitted him of the accusation falsely
faususement,adv.
 brought against him. -- Mr. R. told me some time
intenté,p.p. *contre*,p.
 ago, that he would build a ship on a new plan. --
 What will you drink ? -- I will drink (nothing but)
ne que
 water. -- Do not drink so much. -- If your father
tant,adv.
 were here, you would not drink (at all.) ---
du tout.
 Let us fill our glasses, and drink our friend's health. --
verre,m. *santé*,f.
 We beat them because our troops were better dis-
parceque,c. *dis-*
 ciplined than theirs. --- Come with us ; we shall
cipliné,p.p.
 see whether we shall know you again or not. -- If you
si,c. *non*.
 knew her, I am certain she would please you. ---
plaire,v.
 The English drink as much tea as the Venetians
autant,adv. *thé* *Vénitien*,m.
 drink coffee. --- After tea, we conducted the ladies
café.
 to the concert. --- When they had explained to us
 all that had passed, we acknowledged we (were in the
se passer,v. *avoir*
 wrong.) --- Your brother's coat was torn,
tort. *déchirer*,v.
 but our tailor sewed it up again so skilfully,
tailleur,m. *adroitement*,adv.
 that his father did not perceive it. --- Unsew
 that gown. --- I will sew it to-morrow. --- The
 Jews and the Mahometans circumcise their
Juif,m. *Mahométan*,m.
 children a few days after their birth. --- Why
peu,adv. *naissance*,f.
 do not you preserve some fruits this year ? --- He
année,f.
 would not know you, if he saw you now. --- Did
à présent adv.

you ask him whether he (was acquainted with) any of
 these ladies ? -- I know Mr. Y. but I do not trust
 to him. -- You will force your father to punish you,
 if you do not behave better --- The last
 time we went to Vauxhall we drank three bottles of
 Champagne wine. -- The enemy beat us on the
 eighteenth, but we beat them again two days after.
 -- What will you drink, ladies ? -- We shall willingly
 drink some wine ; for we have not drunk
 any since our departure from France. ---
 Drink, said she to me, (out of) that cup, the
 only token which your father has left
 us of his love. --- Virtue in indigence is like
 a traveller whom the wind and rain compel to
 wrap himself up in his cloak. --- I would have
 preserved some fruits this year, but sugar is too
 dear. --- Thence we concluded you could not come
 to-day. -- I know nobody in this neighbourhood -- I
 knew your sister again as soon as I saw her. -- Though
 you should take three dozen of them, I could
 not abate a farthing. -- The wind was so great that
 it has thrown down one or two trees in our garden.

CRAINdre, TO FEAR, - TO BE AFRAID.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Craindre</i> , to fear.
Part. act.	<i>Craignant</i> , fearing.
Part. pass.	<i>Craint</i> , <i>ainte</i> , feared.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Crains</i> ,	<i>crains</i> ,	<i>craint</i> , I fear, or am afraid
Plur.	<i>Craignons</i> ,	<i>craignez</i> ,	<i>craignent</i> ,

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Craignais</i> ,	<i>craignais</i> ,	<i>craignait</i> ,	I did fear, or
Plur.	<i>Craignions</i> ,	<i>craigniez</i> ,	<i>craignaient</i> ,	was afraid.

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Craignis</i> ,	<i>craignis</i> ,	<i>craignit</i> ,	I feared.
Plur.	<i>Craignîmes</i> ,	<i>craignîtes</i> ,	<i>craignirent</i> ,	

Future.

Sing.	<i>Craindrai</i> ,	<i>craindras</i> ,	<i>craindra</i> ,	I shall, or will
Plur.	<i>Craindrons</i> ,	<i>craindrez</i> ,	<i>craindront</i> ,	fear.

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Craindrais</i> ,	<i>craindrais</i> ,	<i>craindrait</i> ,	I should, &c
Plur.	<i>Craindriens</i> ,	<i>craindriez</i> ,	<i>craindraient</i> ,	fear

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Crains</i> , fear thou.
Plur.	<i>Craignons</i> , <i>craignez</i> .

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Craigne</i> ,	<i>craignes</i> ,	<i>craigne</i> ,	that I may fear.
Plur.	<i>Craignions</i> ,	<i>craigniez</i> ,	<i>craignent</i> ,	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Craignisse</i> ,	<i>craignisses</i> ,	<i>craignît</i> ,	that I might
Plur.	<i>Craignissions</i> ,	<i>craignissiez</i> ,	<i>craignissent</i> ,	fear

CROIRE, TO BELIEVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Croire</i> , to believe.
Part. act.	<i>Croyant</i> , believing.
Part. pass.	<i>Cru</i> , <i>ue</i> , believed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Crois, crois, croit*, I believe.Plur. *Croyons, croyez, croient*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Croyais, croyais, croyait*, I did believe.Plur. *Croyions, croyiez, croyaient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Crus, crus, crut*, I believed.Plur. *Crûmes, crûtes, crurent*,

Future.

Sing. *Croirai, croiras, croira*, I shall, or will believePlur. *Croirons, croirez, croiront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Croirais, croirais, croirait*, I should, &c. believe.Plur. *Croirions, croiriez, croiraient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Crois*, believe thou.Plur. *Croyons, croyez*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que croie, que croies, que croie*, that I may believe.Plur. *Croyions, croyiez, croient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Crusse, crusses, crût*, that I might believe.Plur. *Crussions, crussiez, crussent*,

CROITRE, TO GROW,

and its compounds,

Accroître, to accrue,*Décroître*, to decrease, to
grow less,*Recroître*, to grow againare conjugated like **CONNAITRE**.

CUIRE, TO BAKE, TO BOIL, often *Englished* by

TO DO,

and its compound *Recuire*, to bake again ;

DEDUIRE, TO DEDUCT, TO ABATE,
and **DETRUIRE**, TO DESTROY.
are conjugated like **CONDUIRE**.

DIRE, TO SAY, TO TELL.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Dire*, to say.
Part. act. *Disant*, saying.
Part. pass. *Dit*, *te*, said.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Dis*, *dis*, *dit*, I say, or am saying.
Plur. *Disons*, *dites*,* *disent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Disais*, *disais*, *disait*, I did say, or was saying.
Plur. *Disions*, *disiez*, *disaient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Dis*, *dis*, *dit*, I did say, or said.
Plur. *Dîmes*, *dites*, *dirent*,

Future.

Sing. *Dirai*, *diras*, *dira*, I shall, or will say.
Plur. *Diron*s, *direz*, *diront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Dirais*, *dirais*, *dirait*, I should, &c. say.
Plur. *Dirions*, *diriez*, *diraient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Dis*, say thou.
Plur. *Disons*, *dites*.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que *que* *que*
Sing. *Dise*, *dises*, *dise*, that I may say.
Plur. *Disions*, *disiez*, *disent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Disse*, *disses*, *dît*, that I might say.
Plur. *Dissions*, *dissiez*, *dissent*,

* All the above compounds (*Redire* excepted, which is conjugated like its primitive) makes *isez* instead of *ites*, and *Maudire* doubles its *s* through the whole verb ; ex. *Nous maudissons*, *vous maudissez*, *ils maudissent*, &c.

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Contredire</i> , to contradict.	<i>Interdire</i> , to interdict, to forbid.
<i>Se dédire</i> , to unsay, to retract, to recant.	<i>Prédire</i> , to foretell.
<i>Redire</i> , to say, or tell again.	<i>Médire de</i> , to slander, to speak ill.
	<i>Maudire</i> , to curse.

ECCLORE, TO HATCH, TO OPEN, TO COME TO LIFE.

This verb is seldom used but in the infinitive mood, present tense, and the third person of the following tenses.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Ecclore*, to open, to hatch, to come to life.
Part. pass. *Ecclos, ose*,

INDICATIVE MOOD

Sing. *Il éclôt.*

Plur. *Ils éclosent.*

Future.

Sing. *Il éclôra.*

Plur. *Ils éclôront*

Conditional.

Sing. *Il éclôrait.*

Plur. *Ils éclôraient.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Qu'il éclosé.*

Plur. *Qu'ils éclosent.*

It is only used when speaking of oviparous animals, or of flowers.

The primitive of the above verb is *Clore*, to shut, to surround ; and another compound, *Enclore*, to shut in, to surround with walls, hedges, or ditches.

ECRIRE, TO WRITE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Ecrire*, to write.

Part. act. *Ecrivant*, writing

Part. pass *Ecrit, ite*, written.

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present.

Sing. *Ecris*, *écris*, *écrit*, I write, or am writing.
 Plur. *Ecrivons*, *écrivez*, *écrivent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Ecrivais*, *écrivais*, *écrivait*, I did write, or was
 Plur. *Ecrivions*, *écriviez*, *écrivaient*, writing

Preterite.

Sing. *Ecrivis*, *écrivis*, *écrivit*, I wrote, or did write
 Plur. *Ecrivîmes*, *écrivîtes*, *écrivirent*,

Future.

Sing. *Ecrirai*, *écriras*, *écrira*, I shall, or will write
 Plur. *Ecrivons*, *écriverez*, *écriront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Ecrirais*, *écrirais*, *écrirait*, I should, &c write
 Plur. *Ecrivions*, *écriviez*, *écriraient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Ecris*, write thou.
 Plur. *Ecrivons*, *écrivez*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que* *écrive*, *que* *écrives*, *que* *écrive*, that I may write.
 Plur. *Ecrivions*, *écriviez*, *écrivent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Ecrivisse*, *écrivisses*, *écrivît*, that I might write
 Plur. *Ecrivissions*, *écrivissiez*, *écrivissent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Décrire</i> , to describe.		<i>Proscrire</i> , to proscribe, to
<i>Inscrire</i> , to inscribe.		outlaw, to banish.
<i>Prescrire</i> , to prescribe.		<i>Souscrire</i> , to subscribe.
<i>Récrire</i> , to write again.		<i>Transcrire</i> , to transcribe.

ENDUIRE, TO DO OVER,
 is conjugated like **CONDUIRE**.

ETEINDRE, TO EXTINGUISH,
 is conjugated like **CRAINdre**

EXCLURE, TO EXCLUDE,
is conjugated like **CONCLURE**.
Its participle passive is *exclus*.

FAIRE, TO MAKE, TO DO.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Faire*, to make.
Part. act. *Faisant*,* making
Part. pass. *Fait*, *te*, made.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Fais*, *fais*, *fait*, I make, or am making
Plur. *Faisons*,* *faites*, *font*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Faisais*, *faisais*, *faisait*, I did make, or was
Plur. *Faisions*, *faisiez*, *faisaient*, making

*

Preterite.

Sing. *Fis*, *fis*, *fit*, I made, or did make.
Plur. *Fîmes*, *fîtes*, *firent*,

Future.

Sing. *Ferai*, *feras*, *fera*, I shall, or will make.
Plur. *Ferons*, *ferez*, *feront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Ferais*, *ferais*, *ferait*, I should, &c. make.
Plur. *Ferions*, *feriez*, *feraient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Fais*, make thou.
Plur. *Faisons*, *faites*.

*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que *que que*
Sing. *Fasse*, *fasses*, *fasse*, that I may make
Plur. *Fassions*, *fassiez*, *fassent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Fisse*, *fisses*, *fît*, that I might make.
Plur. *Fissions*, *fissiez*, *fissent*,

* In the whole of the *imperfect*, and in the other cases marked with a*, *ai* is silent.

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Contrefaire</i> , to counterfeit, to mimic.	<i>Refaire</i> , to do, or make up again.
<i>Défaire</i> , to undo, to de- feat.	<i>Redéfaire</i> , to undo again.
<i>Se défaire</i> , to get rid of, to part with.	<i>Satisfaire</i> , to satisfy.
	<i>Surfaire</i> , to exact, to ask too much.

FEINDRE, TO FEIGN, TO DISSEMBLE, TO
PRETEND,

is conjugated like **CRAINdre**.

FRIRE, TO FRY.

This verb is more elegantly used in its present infinitive with the verb *faire* conjugated : ex.

Faites frire *ce poisson*, Fry that fish.

Its participle passive is *frit*, *ite*, fried.

INDUIRE, TO INDUCE.

INSTRUIRE, TO INSTRUCT,
and **INTRODUIRE**, TO INTRODUCE,
are conjugated like **CONDUIRE**.

JOINDRE, TO JOIN,

and its compound, *Enjoindre*, to enjoin,
are conjugated like **CRAINdre**.

LIRE, TO READ.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Lire*, to read.
Part. act. *Lisant*, reading.
Part. pass. *Lu*, *ue*, read.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Lis</i> ,	<i>lis</i> ,	<i>lit</i> , I read, or am reading
Plur.	<i>Lisons</i> ,	<i>lisez</i> ,	<i>lisent</i> ,

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Lisais</i> ,	<i>lisais</i> ,	<i>lisait</i> , I did read, or was reading
Plur.	<i>Lisions</i> ,	<i>lisiez</i> ,	<i>lisaient</i> ,

Preterite.

Sing. *Lus*, *lus*, *lut*, I read, or did read.Plur. *Lûmes*, *lûtes*, *lurent*,

Future.

Sing. *Lirai*, *liras*, *lira*, I shall, or will read.Plur. *Lirons*, *lirez*, *liront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Lirais*, *lirais*, *lirait*, I should, would, &cPlur. *Lirions*, *liriez*, *liraient*, read.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Lis*, read thou.Plur. *Lisons*, *lisez*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Lise*, *lises*, *lise*, that I may read.Plur. *Lisions*, *lisiez*, *lisent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Lusse*, *lusses*, *lût*, that I might read.Plur. *Lussions*, *lussiez*, *lussent*,

Its compounds are,

Elire, to elect. *Relire*, to read again.**LUIRE**, TO SHINE,and its compound *Reluire*, to glitter,
are conjugated like **CONDUIRE** ;but take no *t* at the end of their participle passive :
ex. *Lui*, shined.**METTRE**,* TO PUT.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Mettre*, to put.Part. act. *Mettant*, putting.Part. pass. *Mis*, se, put.

* *Mettre*, when conjugated as a reflective verb, expresses the beginning or continuation of an action or application ; it is then constantly followed by the particle *à*, and an infinitive mood. It is rendered, in English, by the verb *to begin* : ex.

Toutes les fois qu'il la voit, il se met à rire, Every time he sees her, he *begins laughing*.

Il s'est mis tout de bon à étudier, He *has begun to study* in earnest.

MOUDRE, TO GRIND.**INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Moudre*, to grind.
 Part. act. *Moulant*, grinding.
 Part. pass. *Moulu*, *ue*, ground.

INDICATIVE MOOD.**Present.**

Sing. *Mouds*, *mouds*, *moud*, I grind, or am grinding.
 Plur. *Moulons*, *moulez*, *moulent*, -

Imperfect.

Sing. *Moulais*, *moulais*, *moulait*, I did grind, or was
 Plur. *Moulions*, *mouliez*, *moulaient*, grinding.

Preterite.

Sing. *Moulus*, *moulus*, *moulut*, I ground, or did
 Plur. *Moulûmes*, *moulûtes*, *moulurent*, grind.

Future.

Sing. *Moudrai*, *moudras*, *moudra*, I shall, or will grind.
 Plur. *Moudrons*, *moudrez*, *moudront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Moudrais*, *moudrais*, *moudrait*, I should, would,
 Plur. *Moudrions*, *moudriez*, *moudraient*, &c. grind

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Mouds*, grind thou.
 Plur. *Moulons*, *moulez*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**Present.**

Que que que
 Sing. *Moule*, *moules*, *moule*, that I may grind.
 Plur. *Moulions*, *mouliez*, *moulent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Moulusse*, *moulusses*, *moulût*, that I might grind
 Plur. *Moulussions*, *moulussiez*, *moulussent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

Emoudre, to whet. *Remoudre*, to grind again.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS**AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.**

Do not fear to tell her what you think of it. - - - I
de lui penser, v.

will speak to her to ^{oblige} you, but I know she

does not fear me. - - - Why do you not believe me ? - - -
They (are afraid) of being exposed to some dangers. - - -
^{pour, p.}
^{être, v.}

- - - We would not believe him, though he should tell
^{quand, c.}

the truth. - - - Why would you not ? - - - You should not
^{vérité, f.} ^{devoir}

speak so imprudently before I know not whom,
^{devant, p.}

who slanders every body. - - - These flowers would
^{fleur, f.}

grow much better if you watered them oftener. - - -
^{arroser, v.}

Put out the candle, and do not pretend to sleep.
^{éteindre, v.} ^{de}

- - - Were I in town, I would tell them all that
^{en, p.}

I think (about it). - - - Say nothing to her ; believe
^{penser, en, pro.} ^{ne rien}

me. - - I will tell it to you to-morrow. - - - I esteem
^{estimer, v.}

your daughter much, because she told me sincerely that she would do neither. - - - They who
say all they know, will readily say what they

* ^{volontiers, adv.}

do not know. - - Tell the truth with modesty : they
who do not love it, will always respect and fear it. - - -

If I see your father, shall I tell him you are afraid of
^{lui}

not succeeding ? - - - Do you think me capable of
^{réussir}

forgetting my friends so soon ? No, I do not. - - - You
^{oublier, v.}

always contradict me when I speak. - - - It is prudent and humane not to speak ill of any body.

but it is a meanness to speak ill of your bene-
^{ce, pro.} ^{bassesse, f.} ^{de} ^{bien}

factore. - - We often do good to those who
fauteur, m. souvent, adv. bien, m.
 are not worthy of it, and harm to those who
mial, m.
 do not deserve it. - - - Will you tell me, after
mériter, v.
 this, that I am not your friend? - - - I hope she
que, c.
 will not tell them what happened to me yester
leur
 day. - - - I was telling it yesterday to several friends of
 mine, and every body began crying. - - - I do not
** pleurer.*
 like Miss D. because she speaks ill of every body.
parceque, c.
 - - Her father has transmitted her all his fortune, but
lui
 not his virtues. - - - Sylla proscribed about four
plus de, adv.
 thousand Roman citizens. - - - Does Mr. R. write to
Romain citoyen, m.
 you (now and then) from Paris? - - - Do you
de temps entemps, adv.
 know his direction? - - - Would you not write to him
adresse, f.
 if you knew it? - - - We were writing while
pendant que, c.
 they slept. - - - If your brother come here, detain him,
 and tell him I have something to show him.
à faire voir
 - - - The last time they wrote to him, they desired
prier, v.
 him to send them the invoice of the goods, and he
de leur facture, f. marchandises,
 has still omitted it in his letter. - - - What are you
encore, adv.
 doing now? - - - I am making a cap for your sis-
maintenant, adv.
 ter. - Do not do that; I will do it myself. - - - I would
 do it with all my heart, if I could. - - - What would
de

* See the note, page 197.

you have done, if you had been in my place? ---
si, c. à, p.

Why do you not fry that fish? --- The first time
fois, f

you come to see me, I will show you some
 (by the fut.)

flowers in my garden which will surprise you. ---

-- Silk-worms generally hatch at the end of the
Les vers à soie

spring. -- These rose-trees grow perceptibly,
printemps, m. rosier, m. à vue d'œil, adv

and those tulips would soon open, if it were a
faisait, v.

little warmer. --- Though they should deduct ten
chaud, adj. Quand, c.

per cent. they would get still enough
pour gagner, v. encore, adv.

-- I never buy (any thing) at Mr. P***'s ; for, he
acheter, v. rien chez car, c.

always (asks too much for) his goods. --- I will
surfaire, v. marchandise, f.

undo my gown to-morrow, and do it up again imme-
sur-le-

diately. --- The first time you mimic any
champ, adv. (by the fut.)

one, I will punish you severely. --- I would introduce
présenter, v.

your sister to Mrs. F. if I knew her. --- She would
vouloir lui de

consent to that, if you would promise her to come
ici. --- They were playing while you instructed

them. -- You truly join what is useful to what is
vraiment, adv.

agreeable. --- Did not our soldiers join dexterity
adresse, f.

to valour? --- If you do not take great care of
prendre, v.

your flowers, the frost will destroy them. --- Mr
gelée, f.

S. says he will get rid of his horse (at the) begin
au commence

ning of next month. -- You would put out the fire, if
ment, m.

&c. --- Undo that, make it up again before dinner,
avant, p.

and never defer until to-morrow what you can do to-
à, p.

day. --- Your daughter joins to the love of study the
desire of surpassing her companions. --- Always
compagne, f.

virtuous, still handsome, she makes herself
toujours, adv.

more enemies than friends ; but a day will come
when every body will do her the justice she
que, c. rendre, v. lui

deserves. -- She reads the history of England every
mériter, v.

day, from three o'clock till five. -- I will read
depuis, heure jusqu'à, p.

your letter as soon as I am dressed. - The
(by the fut.) *habillé, p. p.*

inhabitants of W*** have elected Mr. V. W. for

their representative in parliament. -- I was reading
représentant, m. au

Marmontel's Tales when you came in. --- Mr.
Comte, m. entrer, v.

R. wrote to me some time ago, that when he
was in London, the Earl of E*** told him

Comte, m.

we should soon see a great change in the
changement, m.

ministry. --- He often writes to me, and always con-
ministère, m.

cludes his letter thus : (Be so kind as to) send me
Avoir la bonté de

some news, whatever it may be. -- Put these books in
en

their places again. --- I believe he did it through
par, p.

spite. --- Shall I put another trimming to your
dépit garniture, f.

gown? - - I read last year, a very good book, but I cannot remember the author's name. - - - What grammar do you read? - - - Whatever merit a master has, he cannot succeed in teaching young people
réussir à,p.

if he do not join practice to theory. - - - I would put all your china in that closet, if I had
porcelaine,f. *cabinet*,m.

the key of it. - - You could not do it in ten days, if
en

I did not help you. - - We could not permit him
aider,v.

to go out, though they would. - - - Why do not you
de *quand*,c.

abstain from wine, since it hurts you? - - -
puisque,c. *faire mal*,v.

He promised to pay me the tenth of this month,
de

but he has now put me off to the third of December. - - - He submitted to it with the greatest pa-
se soumettre

tience. - - You promise enough, but you seldom
rarement,adv.

keep your word. - - - Mr. D. is a very promising
tenir,v

young man - - It is he who told me, that, be-
Ce,pro * *a-*
fore the invention of water and wind-mills, the an-
avant

cients used to grind their corn in mor-
avait coutume,v. *de* *grain*,m. *dans* mor-
tars. - - Will they not admit Mr. Z. in their society? - -
tier,m.

No, they told me that they would not. - - The Eng-
lish fleets have performed actions worthy to be
faire,v. *de*

transmitted to posterity. - - - Your brother promises
me every day to amend; but, &c. - - - Were I
de se corriger,v.

their master, I would not permit them to go out to
 day. - - - I was writing to you, when your servant
 brought me your letter.

NAÎTRE, TO BE BORN, TO RISE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Naître</i> , to be born.
Part. act.	<i>Naissant</i> , being born, rising.
Part. pass.	<i>Né, ée</i> , been born.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. <i>Nais</i> ,	<i>nais</i> ,	<i>naît</i> , I am born.
Plur. <i>Naïssons</i> ,	<i>naissiez</i> ,	<i>naissent</i> ,

Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Naïssais</i> ,	<i>naïssais</i> ,	<i>naïssait</i> , I was born.
Plur. <i>Naïssions</i> ,	<i>naïssiez</i> ,	<i>naïssaient</i> ,

Preterite.

Sing. <i>Naquis</i> ,	<i>naquis</i> ,	<i>naquit</i> , I was born.
Plur. <i>Naquîmes</i> ,	<i>naquîtes</i> ,	<i>naquirent</i> ,

Future.

Sing. <i>Naîtrai</i> ,	<i>naîtras</i> ,	<i>naîtra</i> , I shall, or will be born.
Plur. <i>Naîtrons</i> ,	<i>naîtrez</i> ,	<i>naîtront</i> .

Conditiona^l

Sing. <i>Naîtrais</i> ,	<i>naîtrais</i> ,	<i>naîtrait</i> , I should, &c. be born.
Plur. <i>Naîtrions</i> ,	<i>naîtriez</i> ,	<i>naîtraient</i> ,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Nais</i> , be thou born.
Plur. <i>Naïssons</i> ,	<i>naissiez</i> .

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing. <i>Naisse</i> ,	<i>naïsses</i> ,	<i>naïsse</i> ,	that I may be born.	
Plur. <i>Naïssions</i> ,	<i>naïssiez</i> ,	<i>naïssent</i> ,		

Preterite.

Sing. <i>Naquisse</i> ,	<i>naquisses</i> ,	<i>naquît</i> , that I might be	
Plur. <i>Naquissions</i> ,	<i>naquissiez</i> ,	<i>naquissent</i> ,	born

The compound of this verb is

Renâître, to be born again, to revive.

NUIRE, TO HURT,

is conjugated like **CONDUIRE**, but makes, in its participle passive, *nui*.

OINDRE, TO ANOINT.

This verb is seldom used, except in speaking of sacred ceremonies wherein oil is made use of. It is conjugated like **CRAINdre**.

PAITRE, TO FEED, TO GRAZE,**PARAITRE**, TO APPEAR, TO SEEM,
and its compounds,

Comparaître, to appear, to | *Disparaître*, to disappear,
make one's evidence, |

are conjugated like **CONNAITRE**.

PEINDRE, TO PAINT, TO DRAW,

PLAINdre, TO PITY,
and *Se Plaindre*, to complain,
are conjugated like **CRAINdre**

PLAIRE, TO PLEASE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Plaire*, to please.
Part. act. *Plaisant*, pleasing.
Part. pass. *Plu*, pleased.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Plais*, *plais*, *plait*, I please.
Plur. *Plaisons*, *plaisez*, *plaisent*,

Imperfect

Sing. *Plaisais*, *plaisais*, *plaisait*, I did please, or was
Plur. *Plaisions*, *plaisiez*, *plaisaient*, pleasing

Preterite.

Sing. *Plus*, *plus*, *plut*, I pleased, or did please.
Plur. *Plûmes*, *plûtes*, *plurent*,

Future.

Sing. *Plairai*, *plairas*, *plaira*, I shall, or will please
Plur. *Plairons*, *plairez*, *plairont*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Plairais, plairais, plairait*, I should, would, &c.
 Plur. *Plairions, plairez, plairaient*, please.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Plais*, please thou.
 Plur. *Plaisons, plaisez*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que Plaise, que plaises, que plaise*, that I may please.
 Plur. *Plaisons, plaissez, plaisent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Plusse, plusses, plût*, that I might please.
 Plur. *Plussions, plussiez, plussent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

Complaire, to humour, *Déplaire*, to displease.

PRENDRE, TO TAKE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Prendre*, to take.
 Part. act. *Prenant*, taking.
 Part. pass. *Pris, ise*, taken.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Prends, prends, prend*, I take, or am taking.
 Plur. *Prenons, prenez, prennent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Prenais, prenais, prenait*, I did take, or was taking.
 Plur. *Prenions, preniez, prenaient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Pris, pris, prit*, I took, or did take.
 Plur. *Prîmes, prîtes, prirent*,

Future.

Sing. *Prendrai, prendras, prendra*, I shall, or will take.
 Plur. *Prendrons, prendrez, prendrant*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Prendrais, prendrais, prendrait*, I should, would
 Plur. *Prendrions, prendriez, prendraient*, &c take.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Prends*, take thou.
 Plur. *Prenons*, *prenez*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Prenne</i> ,	<i>prennes</i> ,	<i>prenne</i> ,	that I may take.
Plur.	<i>Prenions</i> ,	<i>preniez</i> ,	<i>prennent</i> ,	

Preterite.

Sing. *Prisse*, *prisses*, *prît*, that I might take.
 Plur. *Prissions*, *prissiez*, *prissent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Apprendre</i> , to learn.	<i>Entreprendre</i> , to under, take.
— <i>des nouvelles</i> , to hear of.	<i>Méprendre</i> , to mistake, to be deceived.
<i>Comprendre</i> , to apprehend, to understand, to in- clude.	<i>Reprendre</i> , to take again, to chide, to rebuke.
<i>Désapprendre</i> , to unlearn.	<i>Surprendre</i> , to surprise.

PRODUIRE, TO PRODUCE,

REDUIRE, TO REDUCE, TO BRING TO,
are conjugated like *CONDUIRE*.

RESTREINDRE, TO RESTRAIN,
is conjugated like *CRAINdre*.

RIRE, TO LAUGH.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Rire*, to laugh.
 Part. act. *Riant*, laughing.
 Part. pass. *Ri*, laughed.

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present.

Sing. *Ris*, *ris*, *rit*, I laugh, or am laughing.
 Plur. *Rions*, *riez*, *rient*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Riais*, *riais*, *rait*, I did laugh, or was laughing
 Plur. *Rions*. *riez*, *riaient*.

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Ris,</i>	<i>ris,</i>	<i>rit,</i>	I laughed, or did laugh.
Plur.	<i>Rîmes,</i>	<i>rîtes,</i>	<i>rirent,</i>	

Future

Sing.	<i>Rirai,</i>	<i>riras,</i>	<i>rira,</i>	I shall, or will laugh.
Plur.	<i>Rirons,</i>	<i>rirez,</i>	<i>riront,</i>	

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Rirais</i>	<i>rirais,</i>	<i>rirait,</i>	I should, could, &c.
Plur.	<i>Ririons,</i>	<i>ririez,</i>	<i>riraient,</i>	laugh.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Ris,</i>	laugh thou.
Plur.	<i>Rions,</i>	<i>riez.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Rie,</i>	<i>ries,</i>	<i>rie,</i>	that I may laugh.
Plur.	<i>Rions,</i>	<i>riez,</i>	<i>rient,</i>	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Risse,</i>	<i>risses,</i>	<i>rît,</i>	that I might laugh.
Plur.	<i>Rissions,</i>	<i>rissiez,</i>	<i>rissent,</i>	

The compound of this verb is, *Sourire*, to smile.

SEDUIRE, TO SEDUCE,
is conjugated like **CONDUIRE**.

SUFFIRE, TO SUFFICE, TO BE SUFFICIENT,
is conjugated like **CONFIRE** ; but its participle passive
is *suffi*.

SUIVRE, TO FOLLOW.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Suivre,</i>	to follow.
Part. act.	<i>Suivant,</i>	following.
Part. pass.	<i>Suivi, ie,</i>	followed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Suis,</i>	<i>suis,</i>	<i>suit,</i>	I follow, or am following.
Plur.	<i>Suivons,</i>	<i>suivez,</i>	<i>suivent,</i>	

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Suivais,</i>	<i>suivais,</i>	<i>suivait,</i>	I did follow, or was fol-
Plur.	<i>Suivions,</i>	<i>suiviez,</i>	<i>suivaient,</i>	lowing

Preterite.

Sing. *Suivis, suivis, suivit*, I followed, or did follow.Plur. *Suivîmes, suivîtes, suivirent*,

Future.

Sing. *Suivrai, suivras, suivra*, I shall, or will followPlur. *Suivrons, suivrez, suivront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Suivrais, suivrais, suivrait*, I should, &c. followPlur. *Suivriions, suivriez, suivraient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Suis*, follow thou.Plur. *Suivons, suivez*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que* *que* *que*
Suive, suives, suive, that I may follow.Plur. *Suivions, suiviez, suivent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Suivisse, suivisses, suivît*, that I might followPlur. *Suivissions, suivissiez, suivissent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

S'ensuivre, to follow from.*Poursuivre*, to pursue

Se TAIRE, TO HOLD ONE'S TONGUE,
is conjugated like *PLAIRE*.

TEINDRE, TO DIE,
is conjugated like *CRAINdre*.

TRADUIRE, TO TRANSLATE,
is conjugated like *CONDUIRE*.

TRAIRE, TO MILK.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.

Traire, to milk.

Part. act.

Trayant, milking.

Part pass

Trait, aite, milked

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Trais, traits, trait*, I milk, or am milking.Plur. *Trayons, trayez, traient*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Trayais, trayais, trayait*, I did milk, or was milking.Plur. *Trayions, trayiez, trayaient*,

Preterite is wanting.

Future.

Sing. *Trairai, trairas, traira*, I shall, or will milk.Plur. *Trairons, trairez, trairont*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Trairais, trairais, trairait*, I should, &c. milkPlur. *Trairions, trairiez, trairaient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Trais*, milk thou.Plur. *Trayons, trayez*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que traie, que traies, que traie*, that I may milk.Plur. *Trayions, trayiez, traient*.

Preterite is wanting.

The compounds of this verb are,

Abstraire, to abstract.*Distraire*, to distract.*Extraire*, to extract.*Rentraire*, to fine draw.*Soustraire*, to subtract.*Retraire*, to milk again**VAINCRE**, TO VANQUISH, TO CONQUER.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Vaincre*, to conquer.Part. act. *Vainquant*, conquering.Part. pass. *Vaincu, ue*, conquered.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Vains, vains, vainc*,* I conquer.Plur. *Vainquons, vainquez, vainquent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Vainquais, vainquais, vainquant*, I did conquer.Plur. *Vainquions, vainquiez, vainquaient*,

*The singular of this tense and the imperfect are very little used.

Preterite.

Sing. *Vainquis, vainquis, vainquit*, I conquered.
 Plur. *Vainquîmes, vainquîtes, vainquirent*,

Future.

Sing. *Vaincrai, vaincras, vaincra*, I shall, or will con-
 Plur. *Vaincrons, vaincrez, vaincront*, quer

Conditional.

Sing. *Vaincrais, vaincrais, vaincrait*, I should, &c.
 Plur. *Vaincristions, vaincristiez, vaincristient*, conquer

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Vaincs, vainque*, conquer thou.
 Plur. *Vainquons, vainquez, vainquent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Vainque, vainques, vainque*, that I may conquer.
 Plur. *Vainquions, vainquiez, vainquent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Vainquisse, vainquisses, vainquît*, that I might
 Plur. *Vainquissions, vainquissiez, vainquissent*, conquer.

The compound of this verb is,
Convaincre, to convince.

VIVRE, TO LIVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Vivre*, to live.

Part. act. *Vivant*, living.

Part. pass. *Vécu*, lived.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Vis, vis, vit*, I live, or am living.
 Plur. *Vivons, vivez, vivent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Vivais, vivais, vivait*, I did live, or was living
 Plur. *Vivions, viviez, vivaient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Vécus, vécus. vécut*, I lived, or did live.
 Plur. *Vécumes, vécûtes, vécurent*,

Future.

Sing.	<i>Vivrai,</i>	<i>vivras,</i>	<i>vivra,</i>	I shall, or will live.
Plur.	<i>Vivrons,</i>	<i>vivrez,</i>	<i>vivront,</i>	

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Vivrais,</i>	<i>vivrais,</i>	<i>vivrait,</i>	I should, would, &c
Plur.	<i>Vivrions,</i>	<i>vivriez,</i>	<i>vivraient,</i>	live.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Vis,</i>	live thou.
Plur.	<i>Vivons,</i>	<i>vivez.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Vive,</i>	<i>vives,</i>	<i>vive,</i>	that I may live.
Plur.	<i>Vivions,</i>	<i>viviez,</i>	<i>vivent,</i>	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Vécusse,</i>	<i>vécusses,</i>	<i>vécût,</i>	that I might live.
Plur.	<i>Vécussions,</i>	<i>vécussiez,</i>	<i>vécussent.</i>	

The compounds of this verb are,

Revivre, to revive. *Survivre,* to outlive.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

My brother was born in Paris, on the eighth of February, one thousand seven hundred and eighty-one. - -
à *lorsque*, adv.

The same men who seem not to fear death when they are in good health, often dread it when they are sick. - - What does your sister complain of ?
en *redouter*, v.

--- The swallows generally disappear towards the end of autumn. - - You do not seem to pay any
hirondelle, f. *vers*, p.

attention to what I say to you. - - This man paints very well, I assure you. - - Why would you hurt him ? he never did you any harm. - - I should
automne, f. *faire*, v. *assurer*, v. *lui* *faire*, v. *mal*, m.

pity and succour him, if it were not his fault. - - -
ce, pro.

You shall disappear as soon as you have ex-
 ecuted my orders; and take care not to speak
(by the fut.)

to any body, for you know that walls have ears
avez, p. soin, m. de

- - - The last time I saw your sister, she ap-
car, c. mur

peared to me thoughtful and melancholy. - - - - - She
pa-

is a lady that pleases every body. - - - - She appears
raître pensif, adj. mélancolique, adj. Ce

quite* young: how old is she? - - - Does she not
à

learn drawing? - - - Your brother has not included his
tout, adv.

tailor's bill in the account which he has
dessein, m.

given me. - - - I see you do not complain of him
tailleur, m. mémoire, m. compte, m.

without a cause. - - - I really am surprised (at it,) but
rendre, v.

he always smiles at (every thing) I tell him. - - As sur-
en, pro.

prising as this seems to you, yet it is true. - -
de tout ce que

At last the enemy surprised and defeated them in the
cependant, adv. ce

space of twelve days. - - - If they had wished, they
Enfin, adv.

might have taken the town three days sooner, but the
espace, m.

soldiers were so exhausted with fatigue, that they
épuisés, p. p. de, p.

could not even hold their guns. - - - May these
même, adv. Puissent

brave men long enjoy the glory which they have ac-
jouir de

quired. - - I sincerely wish they may. - - - Children sel-
rare-

* *Tout*, adv. before an adjective beginning with a consonant or an *h* mute, agrees with it

dom forget, when they continually
ment,adv. lorsque,c. continuellement,adv.
 exercise their minds to study. - - If my brother do not
exercer,v.

come this week, as he promised me, if you will, we
 will go and see him in the country. - - - - Does not

à
 Mrs. H. appear much concerned at her daugh-
Mme bien affligée,p.p. de
 ter's death ? - - - When you see Mrs. B. I am

(by the fut.)
 certain she will please you. - - - Did you never see
sûr,adv.

her ? - - - The children who (shall be born) from this
 happy marriage, will be the delight of their
délices,f.pl.

father and mother. - - - She joins to the qualities of the
 body those of the mind. - - Take some pears, and carry
 them to your brother. - - - Every time I see him, I take
 him for a foreigner. - - - My sister and I learn French,
étranger,m

and understand very well all that (is said) to us in that
on dit

language. - - - Though you should learn all the rules,
langue,f. Quand,c.

they would not (be sufficient) without practice. - - I did
suffire,v.

not understand what you said. - - - Do not undertake to
de

undecieve her ; believe me, you will lose your time
détromper,v.

- - - - Virtue procures and preserves friendship, but
obtenir,v. conserver,v.

vice produces hatred and quarrels. - - - - If you
vice,m. haine,f. querelle,f.

complain to the master, I will complain to the
 mistress. - - - Though you should undertake to prove

Quand de
 the contrary, she would not believe you. - - - Why did

not you take the same road as we ? - - - - He (is not
que

pleased; in his situation, now he sees all the dangers
se plaire, v.

of it. -- He has suffered much, and none of his friends
 has pitied him. --- The idea of his misfortune pur-

sues him every-where. --- When did you hear of him ?
idée, f. *malheur*, m.

----- *par-tout*, adv. *apprendre des nouvelles*
 Captain D. told my father that he had seen
à

him, and spoken to him at Madras. ----- We often
 mistake when we judge of others by ap-
se méprendre, v. *juger*, v.

pearances; and often a person displeases us by the
 very* quality by which another has pleased us.
même, adj.

----- The people who often seem the most zealous
gens, m. *zélé*, adj.

are not always the most constant. ----- Leave me
Laisser, v.

that book a little longer, do not take it again. -----
peu

That apple-tree produces no fruit. --- They retook
pommier, m.

our ship. --- Go and speak to Mr. ---; but above all
sur, p.

do not laugh. --- Would you not laugh, if you were
 in my place? ----- We laughed much yesterday at

the play. --- She was an agreeable lady, she was
 ever smiling when any one had the honour
toujours, adv.

of speaking to her. ----- He seduced her by his fine
 promises. --- Whatever he may undertake, he never

will succeed, he is (too much) addicted to the
trop, adv. *adonné*, p. p.

pleasures of this world. ----- Young people tell
gens, m. & f.

what they do, old people what they have done,
vieillard, m.

* *Very*, adv. is used here adjectively, and signifies *same*.

and fools what they intend to do. - - - - We
sot, m. *se proposer, v.* *de*
 learn much more easily the things which
facilement, adv.
 we understand than those which we do not. - - - If we
comprendre
 go together to my brother's, shall you be able
chez, p.
 to follow us ? - - - - I will follow you step by step. - - -
pas à pas, adv.
 Why do you follow me as you do ? - - You may set
comme
 out when (you please,) we will follow you. - - - - Hold
il vous plaira
 your tongue, you do not know what you say. - - - -
 What books do you translate ? - - - My master says I
 shall soon translate Marmontel's Works. - - - We should
Œuvre, f.
 have conquered them if we had fought ; and, believe
combattre, v.
 me, you (might have¹) done⁴ much² better³, if you had
auriez
 followed the advice which he gave you. - - - - They
 have debated the question a long time without
∞
 (being able to) resolve it. - - - - They were quite trans-
pouvoir
 ported with joy when they (heard of) the happy
de, p. *apprendre, v.*
 news of the peace. - - Every thing smiles in
nouvelle, f. sing. *dans, p.*
 nature (at the) return of the spring. - - - - As long
au retour, m. *printemps, m.* *Tant*
 as her father and mother live, they never
que, adv. (by the fut.)
 will consent to her marriage with Mr. R. - - - - You
 will not live long if you drink so much. - - - - She lived
 about four years after her husband's death. - - -
environ, p. *après, p.*
 George III. the eldest son of Frederick. Prince of
aîné, adj.

Wales, was born on the fourth of June, 1733, and
Galles, *or*
 was proclaimed king of Great Britain on the twenty-
proclamer, v.
 sixth of October, 1760. - - - - In whatever country a
 man may live, he is sure to be respected and
de
 well treated every where, if his behaviour and
 manners are regulated by the principles of a
mœurs, f. pl. *régler, v.*
 sound policy, and the laws of the country he
sain, adj. politique, f.
 lives in.
où.

OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Verbs which relate to no person or thing, and which, as has been before observed, are *only conjugated in the third person singular*, are called impersonal verbs: they generally are preceded by one of the following pronouns, *il* or *on*: of this number are,

<i>Il tonne,</i>	It thunders.
<i>Il pleut,</i>	It rains.
<i>On dit,</i>	People say, or it is said, &c.

To which may be added several other verbs, which become impersonal when employed in the same manner: ex.

<i>Il vous convient d'être mo-</i>	It becomes you to be mo-
<i>deste,</i>	dest.
<i>Il fait beau, froid, &c.</i>	It is fine, cold, &c.
<i>Il fait grand vent,</i>	The wind blows high.
<i>Il semble,</i>	It seems.
<i>Il s'ensuit que,</i>	It follows that.
<i>Il vaut mieux,</i>	It is better, &c.

These verbs, like others, whether regular or irregular, have their different tenses, and are conjugated in the same manner as the personal verbs from which they are derived. The learner having gone through the other conjugations, the verbs of this class may the more easily be dispensed with. It will only be necessary to select one that is not derived, and show the manner of the conjugating it.

only premising, that the compound tenses are formed, like others, by joining the participle passive to one of the tenses of the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to have.

CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Pleuvoir</i> , to rain.
Part. act.	<i>Pleuvant</i> , raining
Part. pass.	<i>Plu</i> , rained.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Affirmatively.

Present. *Il pleut*, it rains, it does rain, it is raining.

Negatively.

Il ne pleut pas, it does not rain, &c.

Interrogatively.

	<i>Pleut-il ?</i>	does it rain ?
	<i>Ne pleut-il pas ?</i>	does it not rain ?
Imperfect	<i>Il pleuvait</i> ,	it rained, it was raining.
Preterite.	<i>Il plut</i> ,	it rained, or did rain.
Future.	<i>Il pleuvra</i> ,	it shall, or will rain.
Conditional	<i>Il pleuvrait</i> ,	it would, should, &c. rain.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Qu'il pleuve</i> ,	that it may rain.
Imperfect.	<i>Qu'il plût</i> ,	that it might rain.

The following being of the first conjugation, I shall only give the third person, present tense, of the indicative mood : the learner may easily find out the rest.

<i>Il arrive</i> ,	it happens ;	from <i>arriver</i> , to happen.
<i>Il bruine</i> ,	it drizzles ;	<i>bruiner</i> , to drizzle.
<i>Il éclaire</i> ,	it lightens ;	<i>éclairer</i> , to lighten.
<i>Il gèle</i> ,	it freezes ;	<i>geler</i> , to freeze.
<i>Il grêle</i> ,	it hails ;	<i>grêler</i> , to hail.
<i>Il neige</i> ,	it snows ;	<i>neiger</i> , to snow.
<i>Il tonne</i> ,	it thunders ;	<i>tonner</i> , to thunder.
<i>Il importe</i> ,	it matters,	<i>importer</i> , to concern.
	it concerns,	

EXERCISES UPON THESE VERBS.

Does it rain ? - - It rained just now, but
tout-à-l'heure, adv.

it does not rain at present. - - - Was it not raining
maintenant,adv.
 when you came ? - - - I advise you not to go out
conseiller,v. *de*
 this morning ; I think it will soon rain. - - I am
bientôt,adv.
 sure it would rain, if the ⁶wind ²was ¹not³ so⁴ high⁵. - - -
s'il ∞ faire,v. *grand*.
 Do you know what happened to my cousin
savoir,v.
 whilst he was in town ? - - I foresaw what
pendant que,c. *en* *prévoir*.
 would happen. - - - The roads were very slippery
chemin,m. *glissant*,adj.
 yesterday, because it drizzled the whole day. - - - Did
 you observe how it lightened last
remarquer,v. *comme*,adv.
 night ? - - - If it did not freeze, I would go to see them
∞ voir,v.
 to-day. - - - It hailed this afternoon, and it will
après midi,m.
 certainly snow to night. - - - It thundered much
cette nuit. *beaucoup*,adv.
 yesterday, and I think it will still thunder to-
croire,v. *encore*,adv.
 day. - - - It matters little whether you do your ex-
que (subj.)
 ercise now or later, provided it be well
pourvu que,c.
 done. - - - It greatly concerns children to
beaucoup,adv. *aux* *de*
 avoid idleness, because it is the parent of all vice,
éviter,v. *mère*,f.
 and destroyer of all virtues.
destructrice,f.

The verb *Avoir*, to have, conjugated impersonally with
y, adverb of place.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Y avoir.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Affirmatively.

Present. *Il y a*, there is, there are.

Negatively.

Il n'y a pas, there is not, there are not.

Interrogatively.

Y a-t-il ? is there ? are there ?

N'y a-t-il pas ? is there not ? are there not ?

Imperfect. *Il y avait,* there was, there were.

Preterite. *Il y eut,* there was, there were,

Future. *Il y aura,* there shall, or will be.

Conditional. *Il y aurait,* there should, would, &c. be.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Qu'il y ait, let there be.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present. *Qu'il y ait,* that there may be.

Imperfect. *Qu'il y eût,* that there might be.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Il y a eu, there has, or have been.

Il y avait eu, there had been.

Il y eut eu, there had been.

Il y aura eu, there shall, or will have been.

Il y aurait eu, there should, &c. have been

Qu'il y ait eu, that there may have been.

Qu'il y eût eu, that there might have been.

EXERCISES UPON THIS VERB.

There are three ladies who (are waiting for) you
attendre, v.

in your brother's study. --- Is there any fire in the
cabinet, m.

parlour ? - - No, Sir, there is none. - - - There were two
salle, f.

men below who asked to speak to you. - - Was
en bas, adv. *à*

there not formerly a (coffee house) at the
autrefois, adv. *café, m.*

corner of this street ? - - - - There were great re-
coin, m. *rue, f.* *ré-*

joicings in France when peace was proclaimed. - -
jouissance, f. *proclamée, p.p.*

I was telling you that there will be a grand concert
dire, v

and afterwards a ball and supper in the course
ensuite,adv *courant,m.*
 of this month - - There would be no harm if you
mal,m.
 would learn* your lesson better. - - My brother says
mieux,adv.
 that there has been a bloody engagement between
sanglant,adj. *combat,m.*
 an English frigate and a French one, and there
frégate,f. *frégate*
 have been many men killed on both sides. - - - There
de part et d'autre.
 would have been a great riot yesterday in the
émeute,f.
 Strand, if the magistrates had not sent many constables,
connétables,m.
 who dispersed the mob.
populace,f.

There is, immediately followed by the negation *no* and a participle active must be rendered by *on ne peut pas*, *on ne saurait*, with the participle in the infinitive mood ; the other tenses, as *there was*, *there will be*, *there would be*, used as above, and made by the same tenses of the verb *pouvoir* only : ex.

On ne peut pas, or on ne saurait sortir aujourd'hui à cause de la pluie,	<i>There is no going out</i> , to-day, because of the rain ; that is, one cannot, &c.
On ne pouvait l'appaiser,	<i>There was no pacifying him.</i>
On ne pourra pas jouer demain ; mon père est très malade,	<i>There will be no acting to-morrow ; my father is very ill.</i>

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

There is (such a deal) of snow that there is no going
tant,adv.
 out of the house. - You speak so low and so quick
bas,adv. *vîte,adv.*
 that there is no hearing nor understanding what
entendre,v. *comprendre,v.*

* The conjugation *Si, if*, is used *only* before the present or imperfect of the indicative mood and their compounds ; and sometimes elegantly before the compound of the imperfect of the subj. mood.

you say. -- My brother runs so fast that there is
vîte,adv.
 no following him. -- There was no walking yesterday
hier,adv.
 in the streets of London, on account of the dirt. -- His
à cause,p. *boue*,f.
 arguments were so convincing that there was no re-
ré-
 plying to him. -- There will be no skating in the
pliquer,v. *patiner*,v.
 park to-morrow, because it thaws. -- There will be
dégeler,v.
 no going to the play next month, be-
comédie,f. *prochain*,adj. *parce-*
 cause the play-house will be shut. --- There would
que,c. *théâtre*,m.
 be no living with you, if you were always in the same
étiez,v. *de*
 humour. -- If a horse knew his strength, there
le *connaître*,v. *force*,f.
 would be no mastering him.
dompter,v.

This verb *il y a*, when used to denote a quantity of time, is sometimes rendered in English by *it is*, *it was*, &c. when the English preposition *since* is rendered (in French) by *que* : but in all cases where the English phrase can be rendered negatively, *que* must be accompanied by the negation *ne* : ex.

Il y a trois semaines que *It is three weeks since*
votre père est arrivé, *your father arrived.*
Il y a long-tems que je ne *It is a long while since I*
vous ai vu, *saw you, or I have not*
seen you this long while.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

How long is it since we (saw one another ?) *It is a*
Combien,adv. *se voir*,v.refl.
 year since I met your brother in Italy, and
rencontrer,v. *en*
 it is six months since I heard of him. --
entendre parler,v.
 How long is it since you wrote to your mother ? ---

It was but two months. - - - It is a week since I had
ne que *semaine, f*
 seen your brother, when I met him by chance in
par hasard, adv.
 a (coffee room.) - - - How long was it since your friend
café, m.
 had left France, when he wrote to you? - - - It was
quitter, v.
 three months. - - It may be two years since Mr. Robert
 set out for the Indies. - - - How long is it since you
partir, v. *Indes.*
 were in England? - - - It is (such a) long while since I
si
 learned German, that I almost forget it.
Allemand, m.

It often happens that the verb *there is*, or *it is*, &c. is understood : in this case, one of the words, *ago*, *these*, or *for these*, is expressed as a substitute : ex.

Il y a trois mois que j'étais en France, or j'étais en France il y a trois mois,* I was in France three months ago.

Il y a quatre ans que mon frère est mort, My brother has been dead these four years.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

He is the same man whom we saw a quarter of an
C'est *quart* *o*
 hour ago. - - - When did you see my father? - - - I saw
 him (a fortnight) ago. - - We have not heard † from my
quinze jours
 brother these two years. - - - You do not seem to
paraître, v.
 be so lively as you were three years ago. - - - I would
enjoué, adj.

* From this instance it may be observed, that, if the verb *il y a*, &c. begin the sentence, the word *que* must immediately follow the noun of number ; but, if it be transposed, *que* must be omitted. The first construction is to be preferred. The learner must at the same time observe, that in the above sentence, the verb, which, in English, is in the *compound of the present*, is rendered in French by the *present of the indicative*, and when in the *compound of the imperfect*, by the *imperfect of the same mood*.

† See page 197.

have written to you a month ago, if I had known
savoir, v.
 your direction. - - - I have not seen your sister these
adresse, f.
 four months. - - - My father has been ill these
malade, adj.
 six weeks. - - - He has been in London these five years,
à
 and (it is said) he there enjoys a considerable fortune
l'on dit, v.
 - - - We have neither seen you nor your sister these
 three days.

It also happens, that neither the verbs, nor any of
 the words, *ago*, *these*, or *for these*, are expressed in the
 sentence : ex.

<i>Il y a neuf ans que ma tante</i>	My aunt has lived nine
<i>demeure dans ce voisi-</i>	years in this neighbour-
<i>nage,</i>	hood.
<i>Il n'y a pas plus d'une heure</i>	We have not been above
<i>que nous pêchons ici,</i>	an hour fishing here.
<i>Il y avait deux ans que ma</i>	My sister had been two
<i>sœur était en France</i>	years in France when I
<i>quand j'y allai,</i>	went there.
<i>N'y avait-il pas six mois</i>	Had she not lived six
<i>qu'elle demeurait avec</i>	months with us when she
<i>nous quand elle mourut ?</i>	died ?
<i>Il y aura six ans à Noël</i>	Your brother will have been
<i>que votre frère est chez</i>	at Mr. O.'s six years at
<i>Mons O.</i>	Christmas.
<i>N'y aura-t-il pas un an au</i>	Will not your sister have
<i>mois d'Août prochain que</i>	been a year at Paris
<i>votre sœur est à Paris ?</i>	next August ?

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Some people* have no pity on their poor
gens, pl. *de*
 fellow creatures. - - - Some people* fancy
semblable, *personne, f.* *s'imaginer, v.*
 that they can learn a language without
pouvoir, v.

* The sentences are the same as *there are some people who*, &c.
Il y a des gens qui, &c.

studying. - - - My brother has been four years at *étudier*, v.

Mr. W.'s academy,* and my father told him that he should stay there two years more. - - I had been three *rester*, v.

years in England when that happened. - - I had not *arriver*, v.

been three months in France, when my brother returned from America to London. - - - Mr. N. had only

learned French seven months when he wrote me a letter in that language. - - - Had not Mr. David *ne que*
langue, f.

been four years and a half in Spain when his sister

was married? - - - My father and mother had not been (gone out) above a quarter of an hour when *sortir*, v. *plus de*, adv.

he arrived. - - - - We had been playing at cards *aux carte*, f.

for two hours when you came in. - - - Thomas will have *entrer*, v.

been at the college two years the tenth of next *collège*, m.
month.

The verb *être*, to be, becomes impersonal when followed by a substantive, or one of the pronouns *personal*, *possessive*, or *demonstrative*, and is always conjugated with the pronoun demonstrative *ce*, whether speaking of persons or things : ex.

C'est la loi qui l'ordonne, It is the law that prescribes it.

C'est moi qui l'ai fait, It is I who have done it.

C'est mon bienfaiteur. It is my benefactor.

Ce sont eux, qui me l'ont rapporté, It is they who have related it to me.

From the last instance, it appears that *it is*, &c., fol

* All the sentences in this exercise, should begin with the impersonal verb, *Il y a, il y avait*, &c.

lowed by a pronoun of the third person plural, must be rendered in French by *ce sont*, and not by *c'est*.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

It is prosperity which commonly² makes¹
prospérité, f. *rendre, v.*
 men haughty and proud ; but it is adversity
fier, adj. *orgueilleux, adj.*
 that makes them wise. - - - It was the custom
rendre, v. *coutume, f.*
 among the Spartans to inure their
chez, p. *Spartiate, m.* *de endurcir, v.*
 children early to the fatigues of war.
de bonne heure, adv. *travail, m.* *guerre, f.*
 - - It is not I who occasioned the quarrel : it is
causer, v. *querelle, f.*
 you who began first. - - - It was envy
avez commencé le *envie, f.*
 which caused the first murder. - - - Is it not you who
causer, v. *meurtre, m.*
 wrote to Miss A. ? No, it is Miss Rose's sister.
avez écrit, v.
 - - If you do not succeed, it will not be my fault.
réussir, v. *faute, f.*
 - If you happened to lose the friendship of your
venir à perdre, v.
 parents, it would be the greatest misfortune which
malheur, m.
 ever² might¹ happen to you. - - It is my friend
jamais, adv. *pouvoir, v.* *arriver, v.*
 who told me that it was your father whom we saw
dire, v.
 yesterday. - - - Speak to my brothers, for it is they
car, c.
 who told me. - - - Why do you not accuse
Pourquoi, adv.
 my sisters ? - - It is they who have done all the
 mischief - - - You blame my aunts, but is it they
mal, m. *blâmer, v.* *tante, f.*
 who have offended you ?
offenser, v.

He, she, they, immediately followed by *who, whom*, or *that*, and *such as*, whether separated in English or not, but implying *people* in general, are often made into French by the impersonal *c'est*, with an infinitive followed by *que de* before a second infinitive, and if the sentence be negative, *c'est ne pas* must be used : observe well these examples,
C'est être fou que de perdre le temps à ces bagatelles, *He is a fool who loses his time in those trifles.*

C'est ne pas goûter les plaisirs de l'amitié que de n'aimer personne, *Such as love nobody, do not enjoy the pleasures of friendship.*
C'est trop présumer de soi-même que d'agir ainsi, *They are too conceited who act so.*

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

He is a blind man who does not perceive all the dangers which surround us in this deceitful world. - - - Such as are satisfied with their lot are happy. - - He does not know the court, who relies (on the) promises which (are made) there. - - - They are strangers to the charms of society who shun company. - - They are idle who do not know the value of time. - - - They obey the commands of God who love their neighbours, and do not reproach them with their small defects. - - - He is not a Christian who seeks to hurt his neighbour, and speaks ill of him on all occasions. - - - They do not understand their own interest who neglect study.

The verb *être*, to be, becomes also impersonal every time it is followed by a noun adjective used in a vague indeterminate sense, and relates to no particular object ; in which case the verb is generally preceded by the pronoun *il* ; and when used to denote the state of the weather, it is rendered by the third person singular of the verb *faire*, to make or do : ex.

Il est extraordinaire, &c. It is extraordinary, &c.

Il fait beau temps, It is fine weather.

Ne faisait-il pas chaud ? Was it not hot ?

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

It is surprising to see you so lazy and in-
étonnant,adj. *de*

attentive after having been punished severe-
après,p. *avoir* *sévère*-

ly for these faults. - - - It is always dangerous
ment,adv.

to (keep company with) people without any prin-
de fréquenter,v. *personne* *aucun* *prin*-

ciple of religion. - - - Does it rain ? No, Sir ;
cipe,m. *Monsieur*,m.

it is fine weather. - - Was it not very cold ? - - - It will
froid,m.

neither be cold nor hot. - - - It has (been a) high
m,c. *ni*,c. *faire*,v. *grand*,adj.

wind, and I think it will soon freeze. - - - It is not so
penser,v.

cold as it was (at the) beginning of this month. - -
au *commencement*,m.

Do you think (that) it is hotter in Italy than here ?
pres,subj.

The learner must observe, that the following verb is *absolutely impersonal* throughout all its tenses, and that nothing is more disagreeable than to hear young people say, *Je faux, vous faut, on faut*, &c. : to prevent which, as much as possible, some examples are here set down.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Falloir*, to be needful, requisite, necessary.

Part. pass. *Fallu*, been needful, &c.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Affirmatively Sing.

Present. *Il faut que je fas se*, I must do.

<i>Il faut que tu fasses,</i>	thou must do.
<i>Il faut qu'il fasse,</i>	he must do.
<i>Il faut qu'elle fasse,</i>	she must do.

Plural

<i>Il faut que nous fassions,</i>	we must do.
<i>Il faut que vous fassiez,</i>	you must do.
<i>Il faut qu'ils, or elles fassent,</i>	they must do.

Negatively.

<i>Il ne faut pas que je fasse,</i>	I must not do.
<i>Il ne faut pas que vous fassiez,</i>	you must not do, &c.

Interrogatively.

<i>Faut-il que je fasse ?</i>	must I do ?
<i>Faut-il que vous fassiez ?</i>	must you do ?
<i>Ne faut-il pas que je fusse ?</i>	must I not do ?
<i>Ne faut-il pas que vous fassiez ?</i>	must you not do ?

Imperfect. *Il fallait qu'il écrivît,* It was necessary, &c.
for him to write.

Preterite. *Il fallut qu'il partît,* he was obliged to set
out.

Future. *Il faudra qu'il vienne,* he must come, he shall
be obliged to come.

Condit. *Il faudrait, que j'allasse,* I should go, or it
would be necessary
for me to go.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Qu'il faille,</i> that it may be necessary, &c.
Imperfect.	<i>Qu'il fallût,</i> that it might be necessary.

As to the compound tenses of this verb, they are formed by adding its participle passive to the third person singular of any of the simple tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have : ex. *Il a fallu, il avait fallu,* &c.

From the foregoing instances, it is easy to see, that, when the verb *falloir* is used in the present or future tense of the indicative mood, the following verb must be rendered by the present of the subjunctive ; but when it is used in the imperfect, preterite, or conditional present of the indicative, the verb following must be rendered by the preterite of the subjunctive : ex.

Il faut, or *il faudra que* I must *do*, I shall be obliged
je fasse, to *do*, or, it will be neces-
sary for me to *do*.

Il fallait, or, *il fallut que* I was obliged, or, it was ne-
je parlasse, cessary for me, to *speak*.

Il faudrait que je vendisse, I should be obliged, or, it
would be necessary for
me, to *sell*.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

If you go to Coxheath to-day, you must
aujourd'hui, adv.
(come back) to-morrow. - - - - You may go to
revenir, v. *pouvoir*, v.
London this morning, but remember that you must
souvenez-vous
be (back) at three o'clock. - - - - - You must get
de retour *se*
up to-morrow morning at four o'clock. - - - -
ever, v.
Custom must not always prevail over reason. - - - - -
sur, p.
Shall I be obliged to carry them there? - - - - -
falloir, v. *mener*, v.
Must I not show you my work? - - - - - You
montrer, v. *ouvrage*, m.
must have been well (acquainted with) the places,
connaître, v. *endroit*, m.
to expose yourself in that manner. - - If he
pour, c. *de*, p.
wished to pay his debts, he would be obliged
voulait, v. *dette*, f.
to sell all his property - - - - If your brothers had not
bien, m.
ceased to quarrel, it would have been ne-
cesser, v. *de quereller*, v.
cessary* for them to part. - - - - - You must not
se séparer, v.

* After the words *better*, *necessary*, *needful*, *expedient*, *good*, *impossible*, &c. joined to the verb *to be*, conjugated impersonally, the preposition *for* is to be rendered by *que*, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood, either present or preterite, according to the tense of the preceding verb.

leave your country so soon : all your friends op-
 quitter, v. pays, m. o op-
 pose it.
 poser, v. y.

The same observation is to be made on the verb *valoir* mieux, to be better, used impersonally ; and the adjectives *bon, difficile, impossible, nécessaire, à propos*, &c. joined to the verb *être*, used in the third person singular only. : ex.

Il n'est pas bon que vous soyez seul, It is not good for you to be alone.
Il vaut mieux que vous ayez compagnie, It is better for you to have company.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

It is difficult for you to improve, if you
faire des progrès,
 do not apply better to study. --- It was impossible
s'appliquer, v. étude, f.
 for you to have succeeded, unless you had taken
à moins que, c. ne. (by the sub.)
 more convenient measures. --- It would be expedient
convenable, adj. à propos
 for you to read this book from the beginning
depuis, p.
 to the end. --- Believe me, it is better
jusqu'à, p. fin, f. valoir mieux, v.
 for you to go there to-morrow, for it will snow
car, c.
 soon. --- Will it not be better for me to be at
bientôt, adv.
 school too soon than too late. --- Would it not
tôt, adv. tard, adv.
 be better for him to go and speak to them himself,
 or
 than to send his servant ? --- It is good for us
de domestique, m. & f.
 to help one another in our troubles.
s'aider, v. peine.

The above verb *falloir*, being used before the verb *to have*, followed immediately by a noun substantive, may be rendered without expressing the auxiliary verb ; instead of which, insert one of the following conjunctive pro-

nouns, *me, te, lui, nous, vous, or leur*, according to the number and person : ex.

Il me faut des livres, I must have, or, I want books.
Il lui faut un chapeau, He must have, or, he wants a hat.
Il lui faut un bonnet, She must have, or, she wants a cap.

N. B. If the verb *to have* be expressed in French, it must be rendered by the subjunctive mood :

Il faut que j'aie des livres, I must have, or, I want books.

This method, however, is not so elegant as the former.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I shall want paper, pens, and ink. - - - What do
falloir, v.
 you want ? - - - I want nothing (for the) present, but I
à
 think I shall soon want a French grammar. - - -
penser, v.
 My brother has an old hat, and he will soon
vieux, adj.
 want a new one. - - - If you like to
neuf, adj. *en, pro.* *aimez, v.* *à*
 speak much, you must have (a good deal) of
bien, adv.
 circumspection not to (speak ill) of others. - - -
retenue, f. *pour ne pas* *médire, v.*
 Since I cannot find my book, I must have
Puisque, c.
 another. - - - If we wish to succeed in our under-
vouloir, v.
 taking, we must have (a great deal) of patience. - - -
beaucoup, adv.
 My brothers have lost their buckles, they must have
boucle, f.
 others.

Before the conclusion of this section, it will be proper to say something about the pronoun indefinite *on*, which commonly precedes a verb used impersonally (viz. in the third person singular) in French, and in English is generally made by a passive voice : ex.

On m'a permis de chanter, I have been allowed to sing.

People have allowed me, &c.

On lui a défendu de sortir, He has been forbidden to go out.

One has forbidden him, &c.

In this case, the verb which, in English, is in the passive voice, must, in French, be turned into the active, when the English nominative becomes the regimen of the verb in French, the sentence beginning with *on*, and translated as if the English were, *one* has allowed me to sing, *one* has forbidden him to go out.

In *French*, passive verbs are seldom used.

It is the same with,

On dit,

It is said, *or* people say.

On me dit,

I am told.

On dit à votre frère,

Your brother is told.

On disait, }

It was said, *or* people said, *or* were saying.

On dit, }

It will be said, *or* people will say.

On dira,

On dira à nos enfans,

Our children will be told, *or* one will tell, &c.

On a dit,

It has been said, *or* people have said.

On nous a dit,

We have been told, *or* one has told us.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.*

In time of war, peace is always spoken of. --

En,p.

Where is your brother? It is not known. -----
savoir,v.

The death of the invincible Admiral Lord Nelson
mort,f.

is daily lamented, and will be
tous les jours,adv. regretter,v.

so a long time. ---- I was told yesterday that
so

* It is very important always to bear in mind the preceding rules and examples.

your brother has been punished for his idleness, had your father been told of it, he would have been

very angry with him. - - - People will be eager
contre, p. *s'empresser, v.*

in buying your book, and it will be read with avidity.
de, p.

- - Learned men are found in villages, as well as in towns - - - It is reported on all sides that we shall
de *côté, m.*

soon have peace, but the news has not yet been received, though it be ardently
ardemment, adv. *(wished for ;)*

however, it is thought that the secret expedition will sail
souhaiter, v. in a few days. - - - It will be be-

mettre à la voile *peu de* lieved that you blame me. - - - It would not be supposed that you praise us. - - - I have been assured that he has threatened him.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

(Review them carefully before you write.)

There is no going out to-day : it rains apace. - - -
à verse, adv.

Do not make so much noise : there is no hearing
s'entendre, v.

one another. - - - Is it cold this morning ? Yes, Sir, it

is *is* is very cold ; however, I am told it is not so cold as
cependant

it was yesterday. - - - The weather is very inconstant in this country : it was very hot yesterday : it is
pays, m.

excessively cold to day : it did freeze this morning :
très, adv.

it hailed at noon : it rained in the afternoon, and
midi, *après-midi,*

now it drizzles - - - It sometimes
quelquefois, adv. lightens when it

does not thunder, but (as often *toutes les fois, que, c.*) it thunders, it lightens. - - - If it be fine weather next week, I shall go to London; but if it be bad weather, I shall stay at home. - - - It is a pleasure to see *rester, v. au logis.* *de* bees (coming out) of their hives when it is *abeille, f.* *sortir, v.* *ruche, f.* *faire, v.* a sunny day. - - - Had I known you were returned *brillant, adj.* *revenir, v.* from the continent, I would have gone to see you *être, v.* *or* long ago. - - - My father and mother were told you were in England ten years ago; but you neither saw nor wrote to them. - - - Every body agrees there *convenir, v.* are fine women in Great-Britain, but there is not *dans* *Bretagne, f.* such good wine as in France. - - - It greatly *si* *en* *beaucoup, adv.* concerns children to avoid bad company. - - *aux* *de éviter, v.* If there were any real virtue in the world, should we (meet with) so many false friends? - - - If he *trouver, v.* behaved well, there would not be a man *se comporter, v.* *or* (in the world) that I should esteem more. - - - No *au monde,* *estimer, v. subj.* object is more pleasing to the eye than the sight of *plaire, v.* *vue, f.* a man whom you have obliged. nor* (is) any music *est-il* so agreeable to the ear as the voice of a man *oreille, f.* who owns you for his benefactor. - - - Such *reconnaître, v.* as support the conduct of idle and obstinate *encourager, v.* scholars, make themselves contemptible. - - They are not *méprisable, adj.*

* *Il est* and *est-il* ? are often used elegantly in French, for *il y a*, and *y a-t-il* ?

acquainted with the human heart, who rely upon
faire fond, v.
the vain promises of men. - - - You have already been
déjà, adv.
told that (nobody in the world) has prepossessed me
against you : how many times must I repeat it
contre, p. combien, adv. falloir, v.
to you ? - - - I was told yesterday that you were very
ill, and I am truly glad to see you so well. - - -
de bien portant.
There is no persuading you when you have a mind
de envie
not to believe what you are told. - - - More virtue is
de
requisite to support good fortune than bad. - - -
pour, v.
Much art and nicety are requisite to
délicatesse
please every body. - - - - It matters little whether it be
à que ce
my servant or yours who carries the letter to the
porter, v.
post. - - - - You must honour your father and mother, if
poste, f.
you will live long and happy. - - - - It is more glo-
vouloir, v.
rious to conquer one's passions than to conquer
de vaincre, v. ses conquérir, v.
the whole world. - - - Sir, I want a pair of boots :
entier, adj.
you have some in your shop that will suit
boutique, f. convenir, v.
me. - - - - It is reported that the Russians have beaten
Russe, m.
the Turks : it is said so, but it is not yet known as a
Turc, m.
certain fact. - - - It is thought Sweden has declared war
fait, m. Suède, f.
against France. - - - It is true ; but it is much
à vrai, adj.
feared lest the Swedes should be
craindre, v. que, c. Suédois ne (by the pres. subj.)
beaten, though they fight most courageously.
se battre, v. très

--- Have the letters been received which were expected yesterday? No, but the mail is *ar-*
attendre, v. *malle, f.*

rived, and they will be delivered this morning.
distribuer, v.

SECT. V.

OF PARTICIPLES.

Participles are either active or passive. The *partici-*
ple active, in French, always ends in *ant*: ex. *parlant*,
punissant, and in English in *ing*: ex. *speaking*, *punishing*,
&c. It is always in its own nature, indeclinable: ex.

Je vois des hommes et des femmes venant à nous, I see men and women
coming to us.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The persons whom you saw with us are people
gens, pl.
fearing God and loving virtue. --- She met your
father and sister (as she was) coming here. --- My
en *ici, adv.*
mother was told (the day before yesterday) that
avant hier, adv.

your sister, remembering the injuries she had
se ressouvenir, v. des
received from your brother, refused to
reçues, p.p. de la part de, de
see him, and we are all glad to hear it. ---
de apprendre, v.

Your aunt, having given the necessary orders to your
cousins, (set out) immediately for London. --- Did
partir, v.

you not see them coming to us? --- How many oxen
bœuf, m.
sheep, and horses I hear afar off lowing,
brebis, f. pl. entendre, v. de loin, adv. mugir, v.
bleating, and neighing! --- Do you not admire these
bêler, v. hennir, v.

lambs, skipping in your father-in-law's meadow?
agneau, m. bondir, v. prairie, f.

N. B. In order to distinguish between active participles, and many adjectives which are spelt alike, but which must agree with the nominative, consider whether there is an action expressed, or whether the word implies merely an attribute of the noun, thus, in these two sentences,

<i>Je vois des agneaux bondissant dans la plaine,</i>	I see lambs <i>skipping</i> in the plain.
<i>J'aime à voir les agneaux bondissans, errer dans la plaine,</i>	I like to see <i>skipping</i> lambs, <i>wandering</i> in the plain.

The first conveys this idea, that the lambs are *now* skipping, whilst the second implies that an attribute of lambs is to skip.

When the participle active in English is preceded by another verb, an article, or a preposition, it must be rendered in French by the verb in the infinitive mood, and it is sometimes used as a substantive : ex

<i>Faut-il que je parte sans lui parler ?</i>	Must I set out <i>without speaking</i> to him ?
<i>La pauvreté du corps est la richesse de l'âme,</i>	<i>The impoverishing</i> of the body is <i>the enriching</i> of the soul.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I assure you there is a great deal of pleasure in ^{à,p.} teaching diligent scholars, - - - - We are told there ^{enseigner,v.} will not be so much danger in travelling, as there ^{à voyager,v. que} was before. - - - - Lewis the Great had especially the ^{surtout,adv.} superior and rare talent of knowing and choosing men of merit. - - - - He left the house without seeing his father, and even without speaking to his mother. ^{même,adv.} - - - - I should despise a man who is capable of ^{ou mépriser,v.} deceiving his friends. - - - - After having (waited for) her ^{tromper,v.} ^{attendre,v.}

a long while, she (sent me word) that she was not
envoyer dire, v.

ready to (go out.) - - - She spends all her time in
prêt, adj. à passer, v. à

reading or writing. - - - My mother takes an infinite
 pleasure in admiring the situation of your house. - - The
à situation, f.

grace of God will always keep us from sinning.
empêcher, v. pécher, v.

- - I often admire the rising and setting of the sun. - -
lever, m. coucher, m. soleil, m.

The defending of a bad cause is worse than
défense, f. mauvais, adj.
 the cause itself.
même.

The participle passive is sometimes declinable, and
 sometimes indeclinable.

It is declinable,

First, when it is joined to the verb *être*, to be, forming
 a passive verb, and agrees with the nominative case of
 the verb in gender and number ; and when it is not attend-
 ed with any auxiliary verb ; in this case, it becomes an
 adjective or at least performs the same office.

<i>Mon frère est aimé,</i>	My brother is <i>loved</i> .
<i>Ma sœur est aimée,</i>	My sister is <i>loved</i> .
<i>Mes cousins sont partis,</i>	My cousins are <i>gone</i> .
<i>Mes cousines sont parties,</i>	My cousins are <i>gone</i> .
<i>Elle paraît affligée,</i>	She appears <i>afflicted</i> .
<i>Elles paraissent affligées,</i>	They appear <i>afflicted</i> .

N. B. There is no exception to the above rule, but
 it is very important to remember that in the compound
 tenses of the reflected verbs, the verb *être* is employed
 for the verb *avoir* ; all such cases will come under the
 next rule, as if the verb *être* were the verb *avoir*

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I have been told your brother-in-law is gone to
beau-frère, m.
 the continent. - - - I have not seen your mother
vu, p. p.
 since she arrived from France ; does she appear
depuis que, c

satisfied with her journey ? - - - My brothers are gone to
de voyage, m.

Dover, and intend to pay you a visit when
se proposer, v. de rendre, v.

they are (come back.) - - - - - The houses which are
(by the fut.) revenir, v.

built in the winter are not so wholesome as those
sain, adj.

which are begun (in the) spring, and finished (in the)
au au

middle of summer. - - - The wicked are always tor-
été, m. méchant, adj. pl. bour-

mented, and the righteous are comforted by their
reler, v. juste, adj. consoler, v.

own conscience. - - - - - Virtuous people are esteemed
personne, f.

and respected by those who are so. - - - - - I assure you
de

that Mr. Brown's wife appears much afflicted
femme, f. fct, adv.

at the death of her husband, but her sons appear
de mari, m.

as much affected by it as she.

toucher, v.

Secondly, with the verb *avoir*, the participle instead of agreeing with the nominative, must agree with the *direct object*, which is a noun, or (in this instance) a pronoun governed in the *accusative case* ; but that direct object must *precede* the participle, otherwise that participle does not agree with it : thus in this phrase, *j'ai vu ma sœur*, the participle does not change, because *ma sœur*, which is the direct object, does not precede, but in this phrase *c'est ma sœur que j'ai vue*, the participle agrees, because *que* relative pronoun, which represents *ma sœur* is placed before that participle.

In the compound tenses of the reflected verbs, where the auxiliary *être* is employed instead of *avoir*, if you suppose this last verb to exist where *être* is used, the above-mentioned rule must direct you. By the same reason that we say *il l'a tuée* (he has killed her) we say *elle s'est tuée*, which is the same as if we could say *elle a soi tuée*, she has herself killed, she killed herself.

<i>J'ai vu Madame Wright, et</i>	I saw Mrs. Wright, and
<i>l'ai entendue chanter,</i>	<i>heard her sing.</i>
<i>J'ai lu tous les livres que</i>	I have read all the books
<i>vous m'avez prêtés,</i>	<i>which you lent me.</i>
<i>Avez-vous vu les marchan-</i>	Did you see the goods
<i>dises que j'ai reçues,</i>	<i>which I have received.</i>
<i>Vous l'avez souvent priée</i>	You often desired her to
<i>de passer chez vous,</i>	<i>call at your house.</i>
<i>Elles se sont repenties de</i>	They have repented of
<i>leurs fautes,</i>	<i>their faults.</i>

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The resolution which she has taken of going into
à
the country surprises me very much : I have spoken
étonner, v. très fort, adv.
to her myself, but I have not (been able to) learn
pouvoir, v.
the reasons which have induced her to it. - - - - Miss
engager, v. Mlle
Farren was an excellent actress : I have seen her
actrice, f.
play several times. - - - - I am very sorry for the
fâché, adj. de
trouble that affair has given to your aunt. - - - - If you
peine, f. tante, f.
can come with me, I will show you the lady
montrer, v.
whom I have heard sing. - - - What stuff have
entendre, v. étoffe, f.
you chosen ? - - - - The letter which you have written to
choisi, p.p.
me in French was tolerably well ; I have shown
en passablement, adv.
it to your aunt who is much pleased
très, adv. content, adj.
(with it.) - - - - I have not yet received the goods,
en, pro. marchandise, f.
which you sent me by the ship Good-
vaisseau, m.
Will. - - - - Ladies, have you returned him the letters
Mesdames, rendre, v.
which he had desired you to read ? - - - Where
prier, v. de Où, adv

did you buy those gloves? - - - - - I bought
acheter, v.

them in France. - - - - - Alexander conquered Asia with
Asie

the troops which his father Philip had disciplined.
troupe, f.

- - - - - The faults which he had committed, greatly
beaucoup, adv.
 increased his prudence. - - - - - He has spent all the
augmenter, v.

treasures which his father had amassed with so much
trésor, m.

care and labour. - - - I shall never forget the good
oublier, v.

services which you have done to my mother
service, m. rendre, v.

- - - - - Of all the letters which my brother has received
 to-day, there is not one (of them) for
aujourd'hui, adv.

me. - - - - - The reasons, which you have given us, have
 satisfied us. - - - What books have you lost? - - - The
satisfaire, v.

fine actions your brothers have done in
beau, adj. action, f. faire, v. en

America deserve great praises, and (ought to) be
Amérique mériter, v. louange, f. devoir, v.

transmitted to posterity. - - - - - The three country
 houses, which your father is said to have bought,
maison,

are extremely fine and well situated. - - - - - The
situé, p.p.

soldiers, whom they obliged to (set out,) are
soldat, m. à

(come back) already. - - - - - My sisters have
revenir, v.

quarrelled the whole day, and are now reconciled.
se quereller, v.

The participle passive is indeclinable when the participle is not preceded by a *direct object*, or pronoun governed in the accusative case.

This happens when the object follows, as in this phrase *J'ai vu ma sœur*, or when another verb governs

the pronoun, as in this phrase, *Il ne faut jamais s'écarter de la bonne route que l'on a commencé à suivre* : here *suivre* governs *que*, and not *commencé*.

<i>La maison que j'ai fait bâtir,</i>	The house I have built.
<i>C'est une belle chanson, je l'ai entendu chanter plusieurs fois,</i>	It is a fine song : I have heard it sung many a time.
<i>J'y suis allé avec elle et l'ai vu peindre,</i>	I went there with her, and saw her picture drawn.
<i>La langue que j'ai commencé d'apprendre est fort utile,</i>	The language I have begun to learn is very useful.

In the above instances, the pronouns are not governed by the participle passive, but by the verbs *chanter*, *peindre*. and *apprendre*.

EXERCISES UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULE.

I have given him a fable to translate. --- I cannot
à traduire, v.
forget the good actions, which I have seen
you do. --- The goods which you ordered me to
de
send, are arrived ; permit me to show you the letters
de
which he has seen me open from Germany. ---
Allemagne, f.
Have you already read the books which I saw* you
buying ? --- I have bought the clothes for
habit, m. or
which you saw me bargaining. --- The history
marchander, v.
which I have begun to read is not entertaining. -
à amusant, adj.
She has written more books than you ever have
jamais, adv.
read. -- The lady whom I saw singing is hand-

* Observe that the participle, though it should not agree with books *livres*, it should agree with the pronoun *vous*, so that it should be spelt *vue*, if addressed to a female.

some and young, but the song which I have heard
 sung is the best, as *quant* to words and music, that

your brother ever wrote. - - - Miss B. has spent
passer, v
 two or three days with your sisters, and saw *voir, v.* their
les
 (picture drawn) ; their cousins were in the next
peindre, v.
 room, and my sister saw them painting in miniature.

en, p.

It is often difficult to ascertain which is the *direct ob-*
ject ; a simple method is, to add one of these pronouns
who or *what* to the participle, and then the answer will
 point out that object : thus, for this sentence, *ma sœur*
s'est cassé l'épaule, ask, my sister *broke*—what ?—*her shoul-*
der ; this then, is the object, but as *l'épaule* follows, the
 participle does not change.

Sometimes a preposition is understood, or expressed by
 the pronoun, as in this sentence *voilà la dame dont j'ai*
parlé ; the pronoun *dont* is not the direct object, with
 which only the participle can agree ; it is the genitive :
 besides, the verb *parler*, in this instance is neuter, and
 therefore cannot govern a noun in the accusative case : ex

Les Anglais *se sont ren-* The English *made them-*
des fameux dans cette *selves* famous in this war.
guerre,

Telles sont ses objections ; Such are his objections
j'y ai pensé, I have *thought of them.*

EXERCISE UPON THESE REMARKS.

Daughter, I had warned you of it. - - - You
avertir, v.

would have rendered yourself celebrated by your talents
rendre, refl. v.

and beauty, if you had not shown them so much vanity
montrer, v.

- - - He is the man (of whom) our neighbours have
C'est *dont*

complained. - - - It is your fault, Miss, I have already
se plaindre, refl. v.

scolded you (about it.)
gronder, v

Lastly, when the auxiliary verb and the participle passive are used impersonally. *Dû* (when not signifying owing,) *pu* and *voulu*, are also indeclinable : ex.

Les pluies qu'il a fait, The rains which we have had.

Je vous ai montré la reconnaissance que j'ai dû, I have shown you the gratitude I ought.

Ma sœur a fait tout ce qu'elle a pu, My sister has done every thing she could.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The storm, which we had yesterday, has
tempête, f.
 done (a great deal) of damage to our
causer, v. *beaucoup, adv.* *dommage*
 ships. --- The abundant showers which we have
pluie, f.
 had this week, have prevented me from going
empêcher, v.
 into the country. --- The high winds which
grand, adj. *vent, m.*
 they have had in the county of Kent, have (blown
comté, m. *renver-*
 down) many houses and trees. -- At last he has
ser, v. *Enfin, adv.*
 returned me all the sums which I had lent to
rendre, v. *somme, f.*
 him, and which he had owed me so long. --- I
devoir, v.
 have not paid all the attention which I ought to
faire, v.
 the advice your father gave me. --- She has ob-
avis, m. *ob-*
 tained from the king all the favours she would
tenir, v. *grâce, f.*
 -- My brother might have improved more,
faire des progrès
 but he has not made all the efforts he could.
effort, m.

N. B. The rules on this subject, which have been regarded as being extremely intricate, and numerous, may be reduced to three, viz. 1st, The participle when

attended with an auxiliary, agrees with the nominative, like an adjective.—2d, When attended with the verb *être*, the participle *constantly* agrees with the nominative.—Lastly, the participle, when attended with the verb *avoir* agrees with its *direct object*, only when that object precedes the participle ; and in the compound tenses of the reflected verbs, the auxiliary verb *être* must be regarded as filling the place of the verb *avoir*, and subjected to the same rules, that being an anomaly in the language.

EXAMPLE UPON THE FOREGOING RULES

<p><i>J'ai reçu les lettres que vous m'avez écrites au sujet de l'affaire, que je vous avais proposée ; et après les avoir lues avec attention, j'ai reconnu, comme vous, que, si je l'avais entreprise, j'y aurais trouvé des obstacles que je n'avais pas prévus.</i></p>	<p><i>I have received the letters which you wrote to me with respect to the affair which I had proposed to you ; and after having read them with attention, I perceived, as you did, that, if I had undertaken it, I should have met with obstacles which I had not foreseen.</i></p>
---	---

Reçu is indeclinable, because it is not preceded by any regimen ; *écrites* is declinable, and agrees in gender and number with its direct object, or accusative, expressed by the pronoun relative *que*, which precedes the verb and relates to *lettres* ; *proposée* likewise agrees with *que*, by which it is preceded, and which relates to the word *affaire* ; *lues* is declinable on account of its regimen *les*, which precedes it and relates to *letters* ; *reconnu* is indeclinable, because it is not preceded by any regimen to which it can relate ; *entreprise*, on the contrary, is declinable, and takes the gender and number of the conjunctive pronoun *l'*, which is its direct object and its antecedent, relating to *affaire* ; *trouvé* is indeclinable, because it is not preceded but followed by its accusative *obstacles* ; *prévus*, on the contrary, is declinable, because it is preceded by its direct object *que*, which relates to *obstacles*.

Clearness is the principal quality of the *French language* therefore equivocations in the use of the participles should be carefully avoided : ex. *Je les ai rangés en ordre*, speak-

ing of papers, may signify, I have *set* them in order ; or, I have them, and they are in order : in such a case a different regular turn should be chosen, with which this language abounds.

SECT. VI.

INDECLINABLE PARTS OF SPEECH.

Under this head are comprehended *adverbs*, *prepositions*, *conjunctions*, and *interjections*.

OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs have been distinguished, according to their several significations, into *adverbs of place, time, quality, quantity, number, order, affirmation, negation, doubt, interrogation, comparison, collection, separation, &c.* But this classification, however ingenious, is far from being exact : it was therefore judged, that, if those of the most frequent use, and which, when compounded, form a particular idiom, were carefully selected, and arranged in an alphabetical series, it would be more to the advantage of the learner.

TABLE OF ADVERBS.*

Abondamment, abundantly, plentifully.
à l'abandon, at random, in confusion, in disorder
D'abord, at first, immediately.
Absolument, absolutely.
D'accord, granted, done.
Agréablement, pleasantly, comfortably.
Ainsi, (de même,) so, thus, in the same manner.
Aisément, easily.
Mal aisément, with difficulty.
Dans un an d'ici, a year hence.
L'année qui vient, the next year.
Anciennement, } formerly, anciently.
Autrefois, }
En ami, friendly.
à l'amiable, amicably.
En arrière, tomber en arrière, to fall backward.
à reculons, marcher à reculons, to walk backward.
Assez, enough.

* Simple adverbs are generally placed after the verbs, and in compound tenses between the auxiliary and the participle passive.

Assurément, certainly.

Aujourd'hui, to-day.

Time to { *D'aujourd'hui en huit*, this day se'nnight.
come. { *D'aujourd'hui en quinze*, this day fortnight

Time { *Il y a aujourd'hui huit jours*, this day week, this
past. { day se 'nnight.
{ *Il y a aujourd'hui quinze jours*, this day fortnight.
{ *Il y a aujourd'hui un an*, this day twelve months.

Autant, as much, as many.

D'autant plus, so much the more.

D'autant moins, so much the less.

Tout autant, { just as, just as much, every whit.
Tout aussi, {

Dorénavant, in future.

à l'avenir, for the future, hereafter.

à l'Anglaise, after the English manner, fashion, or way.

à l'Italienne, after the Italian, &c.

à la Française, after the French, &c.

à la Turque, after the Turkish, &c.

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

Our garden produces all kinds of fruits *plentifully*. - - - Your sister left all her things in *disorder*. - - - You did not know me *at first*. - - He would *absolutely* do it. - - - If you please, I will go to London with you. *Done*. - - - I hope we shall spend the day *pleasantly*. - - - Have we not spent it so? - - - My brother learns his lessons *easily*, and I *with difficulty*. - - - A year hence you will (be able to) speak French tolerably well. - - - My father says I shall go to *France *next year*. - - - It was done so *anciently*. - - I had the honour of seeing you *formerly*, but I do not recollect where I had that pleasure: *se rappeler*, v.

I believe it was at Mr. P.'s, who received us
friendly. --- Your brother and mine have settled
 their affairs *amicably*. --- Make two steps ^{*régler, v*} back-
^{*pas, m.*}ward. --- He who walks *backwards* cannot see his
 way. --- Have you played enough? --- Certainly
 you must be tired. --- We do not expect him
^{*devoir, v.*} ^{*fatiguer, v.*} ^{*attendre, v.*}
to-day. --- If it be fine weather, I shall be back
^{*faire, v.*} ^{*de retour*}
this day se'nnight. --- I shall see you *this day fortnight*,
 if I am* well. --- *This day week* I was (at your house.)
^{*chez vous.*}
 --- *This day month* I met your brother. --- I came
 here *this day twelve months*. --- He has *as*
ici, adv.
much money and *as many* friends as you. - I was
so much the more persuaded of what you told me,
 that I dismissed him *this day three weeks*. ---
^{*renvoyer, v.*}
 I will do it *so much the less*, as I promised him not
^{*que*}
 to meddle with that affair. --- My sister has
^{*de se mêler, v.*} ^{*de, p.*}
just as much wit, and is *just as amiable* as yours. ---
^{*que*}
 Your son has given you some trouble, but I
^{*peine, f.*} ^{*mais, c.*}
 hope he will give you pleasure *hereafter*. --- If you
 forgive him this time, he will not do it *for the*
future. --- In *future*, I never will trust him
^{*se fier, v.*}
 any more. --- She dresses *after the English*
^{*s'habiller, v.*}

* See note, page 222.

fashion, but she lives *after the French way*. - - - She
vivre, v.

plays *after the Italian manner*. - - - Your sister has a
cap after the Turkish fashion. - - - Come here
bonnet, m.

go there, look every where.
chercher, v.

ADVERBS.

Bas } off, down, down with, below.
à, or en bas, }

En badinant, for fun.

Beaucoup, } much, many, a great deal.
Bien, }

à beaucoup près, nothing near, (with *ne* before and *pas* af-
 ter the verb.)

De beaucoup, by much, greatly.

Bien, well, very.

De bon cœur, heartily, with a good will.

De bonne foi, } sincerely.
Sincèrement, }

De bonne heure, betimes.

De bon jeu, fairly.

De bon matin, early.

De bouche, by word of mouth.

à la bonne heure, in good time, luckily, well and good

à bon droit, deservedly.

à bon marché, cheap.

à bride abattue, fullspeed.

çà et là, to and fro.

à cause de quoi, on what account

à cela près, that excepted.

Cependant, in the mean while, nevertheless.

à cheval, on horseback.

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

Hats off, gentlemen, and sit down. - - - The² whole¹
 army³ surrendered and laid down their arms
se rendre, v. *mettre, v.*

upon the ramparts of the citadel. - - - There is a man
below, whom you will see with pleasure. - - - Though*
Quoique, c

* See conjunctions that govern the subjunctive.

we said it *for fun*, he was very angry with us. - -
contre, p.

There were many ladies, and we had a great deal of
 pleasure - - - You may say what you please,
pouvoir, v. il vous plaira, v.

but she is *nothing near* so handsome as her sis-
 ter - - - He has *by much* increased his fortune. - - -

Whatever you do, do it well. - - - If you do not do it *with*
a good will, I will do it myself. - - - He has acted *very*
sincerely in that business. - - - Do you speak *sincerely* ?

- - - We will get up *betimes*. - - - Have I not won
se lever, v. gagner, v.

fairly ? - - - We will (set out) *early*, that we may arrive
à fin que

before the heat of the day. - - - It (is
avant chaleur, f. valour

better to) tell it him *by word of mouth*, than to
mieux, v. de

write to him. - - - Sir, I have done my exercise. - - *Well*
thème, m.

and good. - - - He has obtained it *deservedly*. - - - My
obtenir, v.

father has bought a horse *very cheap*. - - - Do you see
 those two horsemen, who come to us *full speed* ? - - -

cavalier, m.

They wandered *to and fro* without* knowing whither
aller, v.

to go. - - - *On what account* is he angry with me ?
 - - - *That excepted*, I have nothing to reproach him

à reprocher, v.

with. - - - I should speak, but *in the meanwhile*, I
se devoir, v.

(hold my tongue.) - - - Miss White is very handsome,
se taire, v.

nevertheless, I do not love her. - - - Some went
Les uns

to London in a coach, others on *horseback*.
en, p. à

* Without, *sans*, requires the present infinitive.

ADVERBS.

Combien, how much, how many, how ?

<i>Combien y a-t-il que,</i>	} how long ?
<i>Combien de temps y a-t-il que,</i>	
<i>Combien y avait-il que,</i>	
<i>Depuis quand,</i>	
<i>Combien de temps,</i>	
<i>Pendant combien de temps,</i>	

N. B. 1 *How much, how many, how*, are rendered in French by *que* before an admiration : ex.

Que vous êtes jolie ! How pretty you are !

2. We make use of *combien y a-t-il que*, when the action mentioned in the interrogation has not yet ceased : and then the verb, which (in English) is in the compound of the present, must be rendered (in French) by the present of the indicative mood : ex.

Combien y a-t-il que vous êtes, or, depuis quand êtes-vous à Londres ? How long have you been in London ?

3. If the verb (in English) be in the compound of the imperfect, it is to be rendered (in French) by the imperfect of the indicative : ex.

Combien y avait-il que vous étiez, or, depuis quand étiez-vous à Londres quand il mourut ? How long had you been in London, when he died ?

4. If the action have entirely ceased, we make use of *pendant combien de temps*, with the following verb in the compound of the present : ex.

Pendant combien de temps avez-vous été à Londres ? How long were you in London ?

5. *How long*, in the sense of *for what time*, is also rendered by *pendant combien de temps*, with the verb in the same tense as in the English : ex.

Pendant combien de temps vous proposez-vous de rester en Italie ? How long do you intend to stay in Italy ?

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

How much do you owe him ? - - - - You see to *how*
many dangers and *how many* reproaches we are
 liable. - - - - *How many* times shall I be obliged to
exposé, p.p. *de*
 bid you to (be silent ?) - - - - - *How* troublesome
dire, v. *de se taire*, v. *importun*, adj.
 you are ! *How* sorry I am for* having displeased
de
 you ! - - - *How* much I should be obliged to you, if
 you would grant me that favour ! - - - *How long*
accorder, v.
 have you been learning French ? - - - *How long* have
 they been in Paris ? - - - *How long* had you been in
à
 London when you married ? - - *How long* had you been
se marier, v.
 learning Italian, when you wrote to me ? - - *How long*
Italien
 have your parents been in England ? - - *How long*
père et mère
 had your brother been in Germany, when we left
quitter, v.
 it ? *How long* were you in Holland ? - - - *How long*
en
 did your cousin learn the mathematics ? - - *How long*
 have that gentleman and lady (been waiting for)
attendre, v.
 me ? - - - *How long* has your relation been dead ? - -
How long had he been in his regiment, when he
 died ? - - - *How long* was he ill ? - - - *How long* does your
malade ?
 uncle intend to leave his son on the continent ? -
se proposer de
How long had your father and mother proposed

* The prepositions *de pour* and *à*, always govern the present infinitive and its compound

to stay in America ? - - - Why (are you proud) of
 de en s'enorgueillir, v.
 your beauty ? You do not know how long it will last.

ADVERBS.

Combien y a-t-il d'ici ? How far is it hence ?

Dans combien de temps ? How long will it be before ?

Comme, as, like, how.

Comme il faut, soundly, as it should be.

Comment, how.

à contre-cœur, against our will.

à contre-sens, the contrary, or wrong way, in a wrong sense.

à contre-temps, unseasonably.

à corps perdu, hand over head, desperately

de côté,

à l'écart, } aside.

à part, }

à côté, by the side of it.

à côté l'un de l'autre, abreast.

De ce côté-ci, on this side.

De ce côté-là, on that side.

De côté et d'autre, up and down, about.

De tous côtés, on all sides, on every side.

Coup sur coup, one after another.

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

*How far is it hence to Dover ? - - - How long will it be
 Douvres ?*

*before you 'send me 'back the books I lent you ?
 renvoyer, v.*

*They are punished as they deserve. - - - My father's
 le*

*house is like yours, it is very badly built. - - -
 mal, adv.*

*See how it rains. - - - Have they not been beaten
 soundly ? - - This exercise is done as it should be.*

*- - How can you speak thus ? - - - We went to the play
 against our will. - - - You hold your book the wrong
 way. - - - Your brother took in a wrong sense all*

that I said to him. --- Our master arrived very
ce que

unseasonably. --- The French rushed on the
fondre, v.

Austrians desperately. --- Lay this aside. --- Put
Autrichien, m.

that by the side of it. --- I perceive two ships sailing
apercevoir, v.

abreast. --- Let us walk on *this side*, and our companions
 will go on *that side*. --- They run *up and down* all day,
 and do (nothing but) play. --- How dare you run *about*
ne que

while your mother (is waiting for) you? ---
pendant que, c.

The enemies were victorious on *all sides*. --- We
 hear on *every side*, that peace will very
apprendre, v. *bien*

soon take place. --- They drank three bottles of Bur-
avoir lieu, v.

gundy wine, *one after another*.

ADVERBS.

Davantage, more.

Dedans, }
En dedans, }
 } within, inwardly.

Dehors, }
En dehors, }
 } without.

Déjà, already.

Demain, to-morrow.

Le lendemain, the day after.

Après demain, the day after to-morrow.

Dernièrement, lately.

Ci-dessus, above.

Par dessus, above, over and above

Dessous, }
Au dessous, }
 } underneath.

à découvert, openly.

à demi, }
à moitié, }
 } half, by halves.

à dessein, on purpose, designedly.

à droite, to the right.

à double entente, with a double meaning

Encore, again, yet, as yet

Enfin, at last.

Ensuite, afterward, then.

Entièrement, entirely.

Exprès, on purpose.

à l'écart, out of the way.

à l'entour, round about.

à l'envers, the wrong side outwards.

à l'enri, in emulation.

Aux environs, thereabouts.

En nulle manière, in no wise, (with *ne* before the verb.)

En plein jour, } at noon, at mid-day.
En plein midi, }

En temps et lieu, in a proper time and place

En tous cas, whatever may happen.

En un clin d'œil, in the twinkling of an eye.

En sursaut, suddenly.

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

I know how that happened : talk *no more* of it. - - -
 Look *within*, and you shall see it. - - - She was *within*,
 and I was *without*. - - - Have you *already* done your ex-
 ercise ? - - - I will call upon you *to-morrow*, and
passer, v. chez, p.
the day after we will go and see my uncle. - - - We
 will pay you *the day after to-morrow*, if we can. - -
 I was *lately* (at your house). - - - You will find it *above*.
chez vous.
 - - - I like your garden and walks *above all*.
aimer, v.
 - - - There is a stone : look *underneath*, you will find
 something curious. - - - Speak, and show yourself
singulier.
openly. - - - We were *half* dead. - - - I never do
 things by *halves*. - - - They killed him *on purpose*. -
 They did say so *designedly*. - - - Go *to the right*. - -
 My brother always speaks *with a double meaning*. - -
 I have told the truth, and they do not *yet* believe me

- - - *At last*, the rebels retired into the woods with
se retirer, v. dans, p. bois, m.
 a great loss. - - - Do first what you have to do,
perte, f. Faire, v.
afterward you shall go out. - - - He did it *entirely*
 to please you. - - - I came *on purpose* to see you
pour, p.
 - - - Take all these papers, and put them *out of the*
way. - - - How can you find the place, if you always
 turn *round about* ? - - - You have (put on) your
mettre, v.
 waistcoat *the wrong side outwards.* - - - My brother
reste, f.
 and your's work in *emulation* of one another. - - -
 He lives in London, or *thereabouts.* - - - I will do it in
à
no wise. - - - I was stopped *at noon.* - - - We will tell him
lui
 what we think *in a proper time and place.* - - - *What-*
ever may happen, I (do not care) for it. - - - He did
se soucier, v.
 it *in the twinkling of an eye.* - - - This morning I
 awoke *suddenly,* but I soon fell asleep again
s'éveiller, v.

ADVERBS.

Facilement, easily.

Fidèlement, faithfully.

à la file, }
De file, } in a file

à la fois, together.

Combien de fois ? how many times ?

Une fois, once.

Deux fois, twice.

Trois fois, thrice, three times.

Tant de fois, so many times.

Par fois, now and then.

Fortement, strongly.

Fort, very.

Fort et ferme, stoutly.

à fond, thoroughly.

De fond en comble, from top to bottom, to all intents and purposes.

De front, abreast.

Galamment, genteelly, politely.

Goutte à goutte, by drops.

Guère ou guères, (with *ne* before the verb,) little, but little.

à la hâte, in haste.

En haut, }
Là haut, } up there, up stairs, above stairs.

D'heure en heure, hourly, every hour.

Hier, yesterday.

Hier au soir, last night.

Avant-hier, the day before yesterday.

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

Your brother learns *easily*, but he forgets *almost*
oublier, v.

as *easily* as he learns. - - - In the last battle our troops fought (with the) French, all the soldiers and *livrer, v. aux*

officers did their duty *faithfully*; the enemy sur-
pl.

rendered at discretion, and were obliged to (march
à de sor-
out) of the country *in a file*. - - - Let every one speak
tir, v.

in his turn, for if you speak all *together*, how can
à

I hear what you say? - - *How many times* did I tell
entendre, v.

you to write to your parents? - - - I spoke to him only
de père et mère?

once, but I saw him *twice*. - - - My father generally goes to Germany *thrice* a year. - - - I told it you *three*
Allemagne

times. - - - I saw him *so many times*. - - - Do you go often to London? I go (there) *now and then*. - - - The
souvent, adv.

king *strongly* opposed *y* the enemy in the action
s'opposer à mêlée, f

- - - Your little sister is *very* pretty. - - - In all that (which) they undertake they always act

stoutly. - - - My brother knows French *thoroughly*
savoir le Français

They demolished the house *from top to bottom*. - - -

I travelled in a post-chaise drawn by three horses *abreast*. - - - Always behave *genteelly*. - - - Your brothers came to see us, and we received them *politely*. - -

The wine runs from the hogshead *by drops*. - - Give
couler, v. *muid, m.*

him *but little* wine. - - - ¹Never³ do² things in
Ne jamais, adv.

haste. - - - Is Mr. D. *above stairs*? - - - Go *up stairs*, you will find what you (look for) in the drawer
chercher, v. *tiroir, m.*

behind the door. - - After having (waited for) him
derrière, p. *attendre, v.*

hourly, he arrived at last. - - We see the army increasing *every hour*. - - I went *yesterday* to London
grossir, v.

- It rained very much *last night*, and it has frozen very hard this morning. - - - *The day before yesterday*
très fort

I met your brother, who was riding on horse-
se promener, v.
back

ADVERBS

Ici, here

Ici autour, hereabouts.

Ici près, hard by.

D'ici, hence.

D'ici en quinze jours, within a fortnight

Par ici, this way.

C'ici, this way.

Par ici par là, here and there.

à l'instant, immediately, instantly.

Jamais, ever.

Ne jamais, never.

à jamais, forever.

Justement, just, precisely.

Jusqu'à quand ? how long ?

Jusqu'ici, hitherto, as far as this

Jusque-là, so far, so far as that.

Jusqu'où ? how far ?

De jour, in the day time.

De jour à autre, } from day to day, daily.

De jour en jour, }

De deux en deux jours, }

De deux jours l'un, }

Tous les deux jours, }

every other day.

Dans quinze jours, in a fortnight.

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

Did I not tell you to stay *here* ? - - - How
de

many miles is it *hence* to Hampton-Court ? - -
(There must) be (a great deal) of game *here* -

Il doit, v. imp. *gibier*, m.

abouts. - - - How long has he lived *hard by* ? - - How
demeurer, v.

far is it *hence* to Canterbury ? - - - I will (call upon) your
Cantorbery *passer chez*

brother *within a fortnight*. - - - Come *this way*. - - Your
books are scattered *here and there*. - - Come back
épars, adj.

immediately. - - - They *instantly* invited him to dine
à

with them - - I do not believe that he *ever* will follow
(by the subj.)

your advice. - - My father *never* will see him again.
conseil, m.

- - Great men will *forever* be celebrated in history.

- (This is) *just* what I say. - - - *How long*, O
Voilà, adv.

Catiline, will you abuse our patience ?
Catilina *abuser*, v. de

Hitherto the enemy has done nothing considerable
de

- Learn this piece of poetry as *far as that*. -
poésie

How far will you go ? - - You always come to see me

by night, why do you not come *in the day time* ? -
de

We expect *from day to day* to receive news from
de

the Continent - - We are *daily* exposed to great
m.

dangers. - - My master comes here *every other day*

- - I shall go to France and Italy in a *fortnight*

ADVERBS.

Là, there, thither.

Là autour, thereabouts.

Là bas, yonder.

De là,
En de là, } thence.

Par là, that way.

Loin, far.

De loin, afar off, at a distance.

Long-temps, a long while, long time

Lors, then, at the time.

Alors,
Pour lors, } then.

Dès-lors, from that time.

Mal, ill, wrong.

Maintenant, now.

Médiocrement, indifferently.

Même, even, yet.

De même, so, in the same manner.

Mieux, better.

De mieux en mieux, better and better

Moins, less.

Moins—moins, the less—the less.

à moins, for less, at less.

Au moins, *du moins*, } at least, at the least.
Tout au moins, }

En moins de rien, in a trice.

Naïvement, plainly, ingenuously.

Naturellement, naturally, by nature.

Au naturel, to the life.

Né, ni, ni, neither—nor.

*Non pas, ne pas, ne point, non, no, not.**

De nuit, by night, in the night-time.

Obligemment, kindly, obligingly.

Où, where.

OBSERVATION ON THE ADVERB *Où*.

The adverb of place, *Où*, where, is most commonly and more elegantly turned into French by *que* after the two other adverbs *ici*, here, *là*, there, to prevent the hiatus caused by the meeting of the two vowels ; and sometimes after nouns expressing the place where something has happened, been done or committed, especially when the sentence begins with the verb *être*, to be, used impersonally ; as, *it is, it was, it will be, &c.* : ex.

C'est ici que nous l'attendons, It is here (where) we are waiting for him.

Ce fut là que je le vis pour la première fois, It was there (where) I saw him for the first time.

Ce fut en plein sénat que César fut inhumainement assassiné, It was in full senate (where, or in which) Cæsar was inhumanly murdered

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

It was *there* or *thereabouts* that I met him. - - Do
Ce

you see that tree *yonder* ? - - *Thence* I went to France,
and soon after to Germany. - - If you go *that way*
après, p.

you may call at Mr. H's. - - We are yet *far* from
pouvoir, v. passer chez

our house. - - I see many ships *afar off*. - - I saw him
yesterday, but it was *at a distance*. - - You made me
wait *a long while* - - The fight lasted *a long*
combat, m.

time. - - He was ill *at the time* of my arrival. - - *Then,*

* *Pas*, with the negation *ne* before it, merely expresses a negative, without affirming it, whereas *point* denies and affirms at once. *Pas* often denies but partly, or with some modification ; *point*, on the contrary, always denies absolutely, totally, and without any reserve.

I believe you. - - *From that time* I began to
commencer, v.
 speak to him. - - Does your son behave ill *now*? - -
 When I do wrong, I repent *very soon*. - - They are
tort *bientôt, adv.*
now in England. - - The tree that I planted, grows
indifferently. - - Virtue is amiable *even* in an enemy.
 You blame him, and nevertheless you act *in the*
agir, v.
same manner. - - You work *better* than your sister. - - -
 She reads French *better and better*. - - My cousin
le
 has *less* money than merit. - - *The less* you work,
(by the fut.)
the less you will improve. - - - He will not do
faire des progrès.
it for less. - - There are now in America 30,000 men
at the least. - - If you cannot come, *at least* write
 to us. - - He replied *plainly* to all my questions, and
 I am much pleased with him. - - What he does, he
bien satisfait, de, p.
 does it *naturally*. - - Miss Nichol's picture is
portrait, m.
 drawn *to the life*. - - I will *neither* see him *nor*
fait, p. p.
 speak to him. - - My mother and sisters (were to) go
devoir, v.
 next week to France, but my father says, that he
neither can *nor* will expose them to the dangers of
vouloir, v.
 a journey through a distant country. - - I (asked
dans, *éloigné* *de-*
 for) a glass of wine, and *not* a glass of water.
mander, v.
 - - Will you come with me? *No*, for you always
car, c.
 travel *by night*. - - Always speak *kindly*. - - *Where* did
 you meet them? - - It was *where* I saw your brother

for the last time. -- It was at Caernarvon *where*
 Edward the Second (was born,) the first who bore the
Edouard naître, v.
 title of Prince of Wales. -- It was near the walls of
Galles. muraille
 Corunna in Spain, *where*, (or *near which*) the brave
la Corogne
 Sir John Moore was wounded, and died a
chevalier, m. Jean
 few hours after ; England will long regret the loss
 of that great general. It was there also *where* that²
 famous³ battle⁴ (was fought¹) (in which) both our
se donner, v. où
 officers and soldiers showed so much courage. -- It is
 not amidst the pleasures of this world *where* (or *amidst*
parmi, p.
which) we find happiness ; it is in the bosom of inno-
sein, m.
 cence and peace, *where* (or *in which*) we ought to
 (look for) it. -- It is in the county of Huntingdon
chercher, v. province, f.
where the best cheeses in the kingdom are made.*

ADVERBS.

D'où ? whence ?

Par où ? through what place ? which way ? through
 which ?

Oui, yes.

D'outre en outre, through.

Pas à pas, step by step.

De part et d'autre, on both sides.

Nulle part, no-where, any-where.

à peine, hardly, scarcely.

Pêle-mêle, helter-skelter.

Peut-être, may be, perhaps.

Peu, little.

Peu à peu, by little and little, by degrees.

à peu près,

à peu de chose près, } almost, very near, thereabouts.

Dans peu, in a short time.

Depuis peu, lately, not long ago, a little while ago.
à pied, on foot.

Pieds nus, barefoot, barefooted.

Au pis aller, let the worst come to the worst.

De pis en pis, worse and worse.

De plein gré, with a good will, freely.

De plein pied, on the same floor.

à pleines mains, largely.

Plus, more, above.

Plus—plus, the more—the more.

Plus qu'il n'en faut, more than enough.

Au plus, tout au plus, at the most.

De plus en plus, more and more.

à plus forte raison, much rather, much more so

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

Did my brothers tell you *whence* they came? - - -

Which way are they gone? - - - The hole *through*
which they (made their escape) was so small, that I
s'échapper, v.

do not know how they could (get out). - - Do you know
sortir, v.

your lesson? Yes, Sir. - - - The barrel is pierced
baril, m.

through. - - - I will follow you *step by step*. - - -

The battle was cruel and bloody, and
combat, m. sanglant, adj.

kept up (a long time) with an equal advantage
se maintenir, v.

on both sides. - - - I can find my book *no-where*. - - -

(There is no) going *any-where* in winter. - - He speaks
en

so low, that I can *hardly* hear what he says. - - - The

Spaniards pursued them so closely that they
Espagnol, m. de si près, adv.

entered the town *helter-skelter*. - - - I shall see you
dans

perhaps to-morrow. - - He has *little* money. - - If you

give me a verb, I will learn it *by little and little*. - - -

She is as tall as you, or *thereabouts*. -- I heard that
your sister will (be married) *in a short time*. -- Have
se marier

you (heard from) your mother *lately*? -- I received a
letter from her *not long ago*. --- I was *on foot*, and
he was in a coach. -- I often pity the poor little
se

chimney sweepers, who walk *barefooted* in
cheminée ramoneur, m.

winter. --- *Let the worst come to the worst*, I will
(get rid) of it. --- Your brother writes *worse*
se défaire, v.

and worse. -- He submitted to it *with a good will*. ---
se soumettre

All our rooms are *on the same floor*. -- He is so cha-
ritable, that he gives alms *largely*. -- I shall
aumône, f. sing.

never more complain of the rude reception
malhonnête, adj. accueil, m.
which your uncle has given to my father. -- I have
fait, p. p.

written three letters, neither more nor less. --- You
are *above* twenty years old. -- *The more* we are
plus de

above others, *the more* it becomes us to be
au dessus de, p. de

modest and humble.* --- You give me *more than*
enough. --- How many coats have you? -- I have six
at the most. -- I shall endeavour to deserve your kind-
ness *more and more*. -- If I have done that to

oblige my friend, I would *much more* so do it for my
relations.
parent, m. pour, p.

ADVERBS.

Plutôt, sooner.

Point du tout, not at all

* See the rule, page 75.

à point nommé, seasonably.

Tout à point, in the nick of time

à propos, seasonably.

Pourquoi ? or que ne ? why ?

De près, near, nearly, narrowly.

Premièrement,
En premier lieu, } first, in the first place.

Dès à présent, from this moment.

Presque, almost, hardly.

Presque jamais, hardly ever, (with *ne* before the verb.)

Presque toujours, most commonly.

De propos délibéré, on purpose, purposely, deliberately

Par cas fortuit, by chance, accidentally.

Par derrière, behind.

Par dessus le marché, into or over the bargain.

Par en bas, downward.

Par en haut, upward.

Par malice, through ill-nature, out of ill-nature.

Par mégarde, unawares.

Par terre, upon the ground, down.

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS

My father arrived yesterday *sooner* than we expected him. --- Do you like that book? *Not at all*. --- You come very *seasonably*, and your brother came *in the nick of time*. -- He speaks *little*, but he speaks *seasonably*. --- *Why* do you not learn your lessons better? -- *Why* do you not come yourself? -- Your dog is so snarling, that (there is no) approaching him *near*. -- He *narrowly* escaped being killed. --- *In the first place*, I must tell you that I shall punish you, if you do not behave better. -- *From this moment* I begin to believe that you are altered. --- You are *almost*

as tall as I am. -- He is *hardly ever* at home. -- - We
chez lui.
 dine most commonly between three and four o'clock
entre, p.
 -- They killed him *purposely*. -- I met him *by chance*.
 -- That has happened *accidentally*. -- He struck
frapper, v.
 his enemy *behind*. -- - He gave me three yards of
aune
 muslin *into the bargain*. -- - Shall I begin down-
mousseline
 ward or upward? -- - Begin *downward*. -- He has
 torn my book *through ill-nature*. -- - If I have
déchirer, v.
 done him any harm, certainly I did it *unawares*. -- -
du
 I always find your books and hat *upon the ground*.
 -- It was Peter who threw me *down*.
jeter, v.

ADVERBS.

Quand ? when ?
Depuis quand ? how long is it since ?
Que ? why ? how ?
Quelquefois, sometimes.
à quoi bon ? to what purpose ?
Rarement, seldom.
Au reste, } as to the rest.
Du reste, }
à rebours, the wrong way.
à reculons, backward.
à la renverse, backward, upon one's back.
Au or *à rez de chaussée*, even with the ground
Sens devant derrière, preposterously.
Sens dessus dessous, topsy-turvey.
De tous sens, } every way.
De tous les sens, }
Séparément, separately.
*Seulement,** only.
De sang froid, in cold blood.
De suite, together, one after another.

* *Only* is often also expressed, in French, by *ne* before the verb and *que* after it, then it becomes a conjunction.

Dans la suite, } afterward.
Par la suite, }
Sur le champ, directly, upon the spot.
Sûrement, safely.

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

When shall I have the pleasure of seeing you? -
How long is it since you lived in London? -- Why do
 you not come to see us *sometimes*? -- To what pur-
 pose shall I write to him? -- He writes to me very
seldom. -- *As to the rest*, do as you please. -- You
 do (every thing) *the wrong way*. -- You hold your
 book *the wrong way*. -- He fell *upon his back*. --
 If you walk *backward*, you will fall *backward*. -- Our
 eating-room is even with *the ground*. -- You put all
 your things *preposterously*. -- She has left (every
 thing) *topsy-turvy*. -- You may find it *every-*
where. -- He defeated them *separately*. -- I *only* saw
 him *once*. -- He committed the murder in *cold*
blood. -- They go *together*. -- He will give you much
 pleasure *afterward*. -- Do *directly* what I bid
 you. -- We arrived *safely*.

ADVERBS

Tant, so much, so many.
Tant mieux, so much the better.
Tant pis, so much the worse.
Tantôt, by and by; sometimes.
Tantôt—tantôt, sometimes—sometimes.
Tôt, }
Bientôt, } soon, very soon.

Tôt ou tard, one time or other, sooner or later, soon or late.

Tant soit peu, very little, ever so little.

Tard, late.

à temps, time enough, in proper time.

De long-temps, for a long time, this long while.

De temps en temps, }
De temps à autre, } now and then, from time to time.

à tort, wrongfully.

à tort ou à droit, right or wrong.

à tort et à travers, at random.

Trop, too much.

Toujours, always, ever.

Pour toujours, forever.

Tous les jours, every day.

Tour à tour, by turns.

Tout, quite, wholly, thoroughly, entirely.*

Tout à coup, suddenly, on a sudden, all at once.

Tout bas, softly, with a low voice.

Tout d'un coup, suddenly, on a sudden, all at once

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

He has so much money, and so many goods,
 that he does not know what to do (with them.) --

(It is) so much the better for me, but it will be so
C'est, v. *en, pro.*

much the worse for you. -- My father will come back
ce *revenir, v.*

by and by. -- Sometimes you write well, some-
 times you write very badly. -- My father says I shall
 soon go to France. -- Have patience, you will suc-
 ceed one time or other. -- The sun is the em-
 blem of truth, which dispels, sooner or later, the
dissiper, v.

* This adverb takes the nature of a noun adjective, and becomes declinable, in French, when placed before another adjective feminine beginning with a consonant and an *h* mute: ex.

Ces femmes paraissaient tout effrayées et toutes consternées These women seemed quite fright-
 ened and quite dismayed.

vapours of slander. - - - Did he give you any meat :
 He gave me *very little*. - - You arrived *late*, but I
 came in *proper time*. - - I have not (heard from) my
 brother *for a long time*. - - Come and see us *now and*

then. - - - You accuse him *wrongfully*. - - - *Right or*
wrong, he will ^{vouloir, v.} speak, and always speaks *at*

random. - - Give him a little money, but never give
 him *too much*. - - You *always* contradict me when I
 speak. - - O my children ! be *ever* good, and you will be
ever happy. - - I bid you *adieu for ever*. - - I go *every*
day to town. - - We will dance by *turns*. - - - I am

quite tired with repeating the same things. - - - My
sisters were *quite* transported with joy when they
 heard the happy news of the victory. - - Misfortunes

come sometimes *suddenly* upon us. - - - Speak *softly*.
 - - - A storm arose ^s *suddenly*, and the sailors
 were *quite* frightened. - - - The ladies I saw at the
 play were *quite* young and happy. - - He has more

brilliancy than solidity. - - - Science is estimable
brillant ^{s'élève, v.} *solide*.
 but virtue is more ^{so.} *davantage*, adv.

ADVERBS.

Tout à fait, quite.

Tout à l'heure, this minute, presently

Tout droit, straight along.

Tout de bon, in good earnest.

Tout de son long, all along.

Tout franc, frankly, freely.

Tout haut, aloud.

Tout outre, through and through.

à tout bout de champ, } at every turn.
à tous coups,
à tous égards, in all respects.
De toutes ses forces, with all his or her might
Par tout, every where.
Par tout où, wherever.
Vîte, } quickly.
Vitement, }
Vivement, } to the quick. -
Au rif, }
à vide, empty.
Au plus vite, with all speed.
Voici, here is, behold.
Voilà, there is, behold.
à vue d'œil, perceptibly.
Y, there, therein, within, thither.

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

You are quite altered. -- I will do it *présently*,
changé.
 If you do not come *this minute*, I shall go and
 fetch you. -- Go straight along. -- Do you be-
chercher, v.
 lieve it *in good earnest*? -- He was lain down all
couché, p. p.
 along. -- He acts *frankly*, and speaks aloud. -- He
 ran him through and through. -- He speaks
percer, v.
 at every turn, without knowing what she says. --
sans, p. savoir, v.
 She is better than her sister *in all respects*. -- He
 struck me *with all his might*. -- I have (looked
frapper, v. cher-
 for) you *every-where* -- I will follow you *wherever*
cher, v.
 you go. -- Set out *quickly*. -- Her misfortunes
 (by the fut.) *malheur, m.*
 touch me *to the quick*. -- The coach was returning
s'en retourner, v. refl.
 empty -- Go *with all speed* to Mrs. Lucas and
chez, p.

tell her to come *directly*. -- *Here is my room, and*
de
there is yours. -- These children grow *percep-*
grandir,
tibly. -- Go *thither* instantly.
tout de suite, adv.

SECT. VII. OF PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions are divided into the three following classes. First, those that govern the genitive or ablative case. Secondly, those that govern the dative. And, lastly, those that govern the accusative.

First, the following govern the genitive or ablative.

Autour de, about, round.

à cause de, because of, on account of.

à cause de vous, de lui, d'elle, de nous, &c. on your, his,
 her, our, &c. account.

à côté de, aside, by.

à convert de, free, secure, or screened from.

à fleur de, close to, even with.

à moins de, under.

à force de,* by dint of.

à raison de, at the rate of

à l'abri de, at the rate of.

à l'égal de, in comparison of.

à l'égard de, with regard, with respect, as to, concerning.

à la faveur de, by means of.

à l'insu de, without the knowledge of, unknown to.

à la manière de, } in or after the manner or fashion of.

à la mode de, }

à l'opposite de, } over against.

Vis à vis de, }

Au deçà de, } on this side.

En deçà de, }

Au de là de, on that side, on the other side.

Au de-hors de, out, without.

Au dessus de, above, over, upon.

Au dessous de, under, below, beneath.

*This preposition is sometimes Englished by *with*: ex.

Il pleure à force de rire, He cries *with* laughing.

Au devant de, before.

Aller au devant de, to go to meet.

Au derrière de, behind, in the back part.

Au dedans de, in, within.

Au lieu de, instead of.

Au milieu de, in the middle of.

Au prix de, en comparaison de, in comparison to

Aux environs de, about, round about.

Ensuite de, after.

Faute de, for want of.

à la hauteur de, (sea term,) off.

Hors de, out of.

Le long de, along.

Loin de, far from.

Près or proche de, } near, or nigh by.

Auprès de,

Pour l'amour de moi, de lui, d'elle, de vous, &c. for my
sake, for his, her, your sake, &c.

Tout auprès de, close, hard by.

à l'épreuve de, proof against, (able to resist.)

EXERCISE UPON THESE PREPOSITIONS.

Come this way ; we shall walk round the meadow.
prairie, f.

I have sent nothing to your brother, because of his idleness ; but I forgive him on your account. - - Sit down by that lady's sister. - - Endeavour to set yourself
mettre, v.

free from blame. - - We are not yet secure from all danger. - Cut that sorrel even with the ground.
oseille, f.

- - He is become a very good master by dint of study and practice. - - He will not sell it under
vouloir, v.

twelve guineas. - - My brother bought yesterday twenty pairs of silk stockings at the rate of fourteen shillings and sixpence a pair. - - Under that tree
Sous, p.

we shall be sheltered from the rain. - - Your horse (is worth) very little in comparison of his. - - With
valoir, v.

regard to what you say, I do not mind it
se soucier, v. en
 - - Ali the prisoners (made their escape) *by means of*
s'échapper, v.
 the darkness of the night. - - Your brother is
obscurité, f
 gone to London *without the knowledge of* your
 mother. - - He (left off) Latin *unknown to* his
quitter, v.
 father. - - Now the English ladies (dress themselves)
s'habiller, v.
after the French fashion. - - Mrs. Tart lives in
demeurer, v
 the Strand, *over-against* Catherine-street. - - We now
Catherine
 live *on this side* of the river - Do not you say that
demeurer
 you met my father *on the other side* of the bridge?
 - - Why did you stay *out* of the house? - - Mrs. A.
 is very proud, she (thinks herself) *above* every body,
se croire
 and consequently she (looks upon) every body as
regarder, v.
oeneath her. - - Did you observe the elegant
remarquer, v.
 lady who was in the box *below* you? - - There
loge, f.
 is a large tree *before* the house. - - I am
grand
going to meet my aunt, will you accompany me? - -
 My uncle has a rich plantation in the *back*
part of Virginia. - - There is a fine statue *within* the
f.
 garden. - - He took my hat *instead of* his. - - Let us
 go *in the middle* of the meadow. - - My house (is
va-
 good for) nothing in comparison of hers. - - He
loir, v.
 walks two or three times a* day *about* the garden. - -
fois, f.

* Remember the observations after the article *un, une, a or an*, at the bottom of page 61.

We drank tea, *after* which we went to
prendre, v. *quoi, pro.*
 the play. -- I can do nothing, *for want* of money. --
 They were *off* the Cape of Good Hope when they
Cap, m. *Espérance, f.*
 were taken. -- Do not push me out of the
pousser, v.
 room. -- He is gone *along* the river. We are still
far from our house. -- I met your friend Mr. A.
near the church. -- My mother was buried *nigh* this
 marble pillar.* -- He passed *by* me without knowing
sans, p. *connaître*
 me. -- I do it *for your sake* as well as for *theirs*.
 -- My best friend lives *close* to the Royal Exchange,
demeurer *Bourse, f.*
 and he lived formerly *close* to St. James's palace. --
 The officers and soldiers were lodged in barracks,
caserne, f.
 cannon and bomb-proof. -- My shoemaker very
canon, m. *bombe, f. pl.*
 much wanted to make me a pair of boots water-
désirer, v. *de*
 proof, but I had not money enough to pay him.
pour, p.

Secondly, the following govern the Dative
Conformément, according, pursuant.
Jusqu'à, } till, until, even to, as far as, to.
Jusques à, }
Par rapport à, with respect to, on account of.
Quant à, as for, as to.

EXERCISE UPON THESE PREPOSITIONS.

A candid and sincere man always speaks and acts
according to what he thinks. -- He has been punished
pursuant to an act of parliament. -- Yesterday we
parlement, m.

* See rule, page 57.

(waited for) him *till* five o'clock (in the) morning --
du

They fought with obstinacy on both sides *until* the
des deux

beginning of the night -- If I had not stopped him,
entrée, f.

he would have gone *even to* Dover. -- We accompa-
être

nied them *as far as* Rochester, and they pursued
 their way *to* Canterbury. -- I will do it *with respect*
chemin

to you, but never *on account* of them. -- *As for* me,
 I will not give him a penny. -- *As for* us, we were
sou, m.

(very much) dissatisfied, I assure you. -- *As to* what
très,

people may say, I do not (care for) it.
gens, p., pouvoir, v. (fut.) se soucier de, v.

Thirdly, the following require the Accusative.

Après, after.

D'après, after, according to.

Avant, before.

Avec, with.

à travers, cross, through.

Chez, in, to, at, among.

Chez moi, chez toi, chez lui, chez elle, chez nous, &c. at or
 to my, thy, his, her, our, &c. house.

Contre, against.

Dans, in, into, within.

De, about, through.

Depuis, since, from.

Derrière, behind.

Dès, from.

Devant, before.

De dessus, from the top.

De dessous, from under, from beneath.

Durant, during.

En, in, into, like, as a, at

Entre, between.

Envers, towards, with regard to.

Environ, about.

<i>Excepté,</i>	}	except, but, save.
<i>Hors,</i>		
<i>Hormis,</i>		
<i>Moyennant,</i>		for, provided.
<i>Nonobstant,</i>	}	notwithstanding, in spite of.
<i>Malgré,</i>		
<i>Outre,</i>		beside.
<i>Par,</i>		by, through.
<i>Par deçà,</i>		on this side.
<i>Par delà,</i>		on that side.
<i>Par derrière,</i>		behind.
<i>Par dessus,</i>		above, over.
<i>Pardessous,</i>		under, below.
<i>Parmi,</i>		among.
<i>Pendant,</i>		during, for.
<i>Pour,</i>		for.
<i>Sans,</i>		without.
<i>Sauf,</i>		saving, but, with.
<i>Selon,</i>	}	according to.
<i>Suivant,</i>		
<i>Sous,</i>		under.
<i>Sur,</i>		upon, about.
<i>Touchant,</i>		concerning, about.
<i>Vers,</i>		towards, to.

EXERCISE UPON THESE PREPOSITIONS.

He arrived here an hour *after* you. -- Miss A. pants *after* nature. -- *According to* her assertion, it is false. -- Let me drink *before* you. -- Did you *Laisser*, v. not see her walk *with* her father? -- It was *Ce* the ancient Britons, who cut a road *through* *Breton*, *chemin*, m. this mountain. -- Such was the custom *among* the Romans. -- I was going *to* your house : but as I have met you, we will go *to* my house, where we shall dine. -- Do not lean *against* that wall. -- Go and *s'appuyer*, v. *mur*, m. take a walk *in* the garden. -- I am going *into* my *faire un tour*

room. -- (Keep yourself) *within* the limits of de
Se tenir, v. *borne*
 cency. -- I spoke to your father *about* your affairs. --
 His father died *through* grief. -- I have not (heard
 from) her *since* her departure. -- Go *into* my room;
 you will find a letter *behind* the looking-glass;
miroir, m.
 (be so kind as) to bring it to me. -- *From* this mo-
avoir la bonté de
 ment I believe you. -- Do not put yourself *before*
 me. -- We saw the camp *from the top of* the hill. --
 I saw it *from under* a tree. -- He behaved well *during*
 your absence. -- My sister is *in* England. -- He be-
 haved *like an* honest man in that affair. -- He acts as
 a tender father who loves you. -- Tell nobody what
 passed *between* you and me. -- Be not unjust *towards*
se passer
 your neighbours. -- It was *about* four o'clock when
prochain, m. sing.
 we (set out). -- Take all that you please *except* my
vouloir, (fut.)
 sword. -- I give you all my books, *but* the History of
 France. -- They were all drowned *save* my friend. --
noyer, v.
 He will do it *for* two guineas. -- I walk every day,
notwithstanding the bad weather. -- I hope you will
 succeed in your undertaking, *in spite of* Mrs Slander.
réussir, v.
 - *Beside* his own money, he spends all his sister's
 -- It is said that Gibraltar is (blocked up) *by* land
bloquer, v.
 and *by* sea. -- I have passed *through* France and
 Italy. -- We have passed *through* Germany. -- He
Allemagne.
 lives *on this side*, and his brother *on that side* of
 London. -- * He is a coward who attacks his enemy

behind. - - Let us see whether you can jump over
si, c. *sauter, v.*

the table. -- Look *under* the door, and you will see
it. -- Envy, jealousy, and slander, always reign
médisance, f.

among authors. -- What have you done *during* my absence? -- I have (been expecting) you *for* a long time.

- Your Aunt has sent me some books *for* you. -

Without him what could I have done ? - A woman may
pouvoir

please *without* * beauty, but she cannot succeed *without*
virtue.* - - He always (goes out) *without* me. - - The
army marched three days and three nights *without*
stopping - - He (carried away) all my furniture, *saving*
s'arrêter *meubles*, m. pl.

my bed. - - Do I not live *according to the rules*
règle, f.

which you have prescribed? - I found your buckle
prescrire, v. *boucle, f.*

under the chair. - You said you had left it upon
chaise, f. *laisser, v.*

the table. -- How could I lend you a guinea? I had no money *about* me. -- Did not my brother write to you *concerning* that affair? -- It was *towards* the evening

when he arrived.

que, c.

OBSERVATIONS ON SOME PRÉPOSITIONS.

Above. This preposition, when preceding a noun expressing *time* or *number*, so as to signify *more than* or *longer than*, is to be rendered in French by *plus de* : ex.

Le combat dura plus de deux heures, *The fight lasted above two hours.*

EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

My brother was not *above* twenty years old, when

* Use no article.

† See the N. B. before the Exercises upon the First Conjugation, page 183. *Vivre*, means, to live, to exist ; *Demeurer*, means, to live, to reside.

he (was married.) - - He made us wait *above* a week. - -
se marier.

My father's country-house is very handsome, but it
 cost him *above* six thousand pounds. - - In the last
 sea-fight which took place between the French and

the English, *avoir lieu* *above* twelve hundred men perished in
 the action (on the) side of the French, and the

English took *du* *above* fifteen ships of the line. - - It is
above a year since my cousin set off for Jamaica.

que *partir, v.* *Jamaïque, f.*

At is most commonly rendered by *à*, and sometimes by
 one of the French articles *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, according to
 the gender and number of the noun following : ex.

Nous étions à dîner, We were at dinner.

Elle est à la maison, She is at home.

Il joue bien aux cartes, He plays well at cards.

EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

If you be *at* Rome, live as they do *at* Rome. - -
vivre on

We will (get up) next week *at* six o'clock. - - When I
se lever

called upon Mr. B. he was *at* breakfast. - - (Every
passer chez

thing) I have is *at* your service. - - My brother is *at*

Mr. H.'s academy. - - Were you *at* Mrs. C.'s ball last

week? - - You always travel by night *at* the peril of

your life. - - I will pay you *at* the end of the year. - -

My mother is *at* the height of happiness. - - He plays
comble, m.

very well *at* chess, and his companion begins

échecs, m. pl.

to play a little *at* draughts. - - He did it *at* the instigation

dames, f. pl.

of his friend.

After nouns or verbs denoting anger, derision, joy, provocation, resentment, sorrow, surprise or concern, *at* is rendered by one of the following articles, *de, du, de la, de l', des* : ex.

<i>Il se moque de vous,</i>	He laughs <i>at</i> you.
<i>Je me réjouis de votre bonheur,</i>	I rejoice <i>at</i> your good luck.
<i>Nous sommes surpris de ce que vous dites,</i>	We are surprised <i>at</i> what you say.

EXERCISE UPON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

Exasperated *at* his conduct, he told him never to
Irrité,adj. *de*
 laugh *at* poor people. - - We always (ought to) re
se moquer, *devoir*
 jice *at* the good fortune which befalls our neigh-
arriver,v.à
 bours. - - I am vexed *at* the news which we received
fâché
 last week. - - A good Christian never shows any re-
 sentment *at* the injuries which are offered to him. - -
faire
 He always smiles *at* (every thing) which is said. - - A
tout
 patient man never grieves *at* his misfortunes. -
s'attrister,v.
 I cannot help being surprised *at* her manner
s'empêcher,v.de
 of answering. - - I am concerned *at* the loss which
fâché
 you sustained in your trade. - - He was so mortified *at*
essuyer,v. *commerce,m.*
 the disobedience of his sons, that he died through grief.
de

At is rendered by *chez*, when, in English, it precedes the word *house*, either expressed or understood, and the same rule is to be observed with respect to the preposition *to* : ex.

<i>J'étais chez votre frère,</i>	I was <i>at</i> your brother's
<i>Je vais chez Madame Lucas,</i>	I am going <i>to</i> Mrs. Lucas's.

EXERCISE UPON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

I called upon Miss Brown this morning, as I had
passer chez
 promised your mother, but she was not *at* home. --
à
 Where was she then? She was *at* her aunt's. -- I
donc?
 thought my friend was *at* his father's, but I mistook,
se tromper
 for he was *at* his uncle's. -- How long have you been
car
at Mr. H.'s? -- We lodge *at* my friend's, but we board
manger
at the pastry cook's. -- If you go *to* my brother, tell
 him to come *to* my cousin's, where I (am to) spend
de *passer, v.*
 the day, and we will go together *to* his friend's.

By, when preceding a numeral adjective immediately followed by another adjective expressing the *dimension* or *superfices* of an object, is rendered in French by *sur*, and when it precedes the verb in the participle active, it is then rendered by *en* : ex.

<i>Cette chambre a dix pieds de</i>	This room is ten feet long
<i>longueur sur sept et demi</i>	<i>by</i> seven and a half wide.
<i>de largeur,</i>	
<i>En agissant ainsi, vous vous</i>	<i>By</i> acting thus, you will
<i>ferez des ennemis,</i>	get enemies.

EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

My box is a foot and a half deep *by* two wide and four long. -- The general (drew up) his army in order
ranger, v. *en*
 of battle, on a plain three miles long *by* two
 and a half wide. --- Our (school-room) at Alfred
école, f.
 House, Camberwell, is forty feet long *by*
 thirty six wide, and our garden contains above
 an acre of land. - You will soon speak French
arpent, m

by applying so. - - Your father gets a considerable
s'appliquer *faire, v.*

fortune *by* buying cheap, and selling dear. - - Men
 acquire learning *by* working, and not *by* sleeping. - -
 Water hollows a stone, not *by* falling with force,
creuser, v.

but *by* falling often ; so men become learned, not
by studying with force, but *by* studying often.

By, after the verbs *to sell*, *to buy*, *to work*, and the like,
 preceding a noun of *weight* or *measure*, *day*, *week*, *month*
 or *year*, is rendered into French by *à*, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*,
 according to the gender and number of the following
 noun : ex.

<i>Je ne vends rien à la livre,</i>	I sell nothing <i>by</i> the pound.
<i>Il achète toujours à l'aune,</i>	He always buys <i>by</i> the ell.
<i>Nous travaillons à l'heure,</i>	We work <i>by</i> the hour, or <i>by</i>
<i>ou à la journée,</i>	the day.

EXERCISE UPON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

Always buy tea *by* the pound, and never *by* the
 ounce : you will get it cheaper. - - I never buy my
avoir

cloth *by* the ell, but *by* the piece. - - It is a sad thing
 to buy coals *by* the bushel - - How do you sell your
de

brandy ? We sell it *by* the gallon, and not *by* the
 bottle. - - He sells his wine *by* the dozen. - - I sell
 eggs *by* the hundred, and chesnuts *by* the quarter.
 - - How do you measure your cambrick ? *by* the ell,
batiste, m.

or *by* the yard ? - - Do you buy cider *by* the hogshead,
tonneau, m

or *by* the pipe ? - - Does your father work *by* the
 week or the month ? - No, Sir, he works *by* the year.

Well ! I always thought he worked *by* the piece.

By, immediately following the verbs *to kill*, *to wound*,
to knock down, and the like, is made into French by *d'un*
coup de, when it expresses the effect, blow, thrust, stroke,

firing, &c. of an instrument by which a man was either killed, wounded, &c. provided the blows have not been repeated : if the blows have been repeated, we make use of *à coups de*, in which case it is most commonly rendered in English by *with* : ex.

Il fut blessé d'un coup de He was wounded by an ar-
flèche, row.

Ils l'assommèrent à coups de They knocked him down
bâton, with a stick.

EXERCISE UPON THESE PREPOSITIONS.

Achilles was killed (at the) siege of Troy by an
Achille *au* *Troie*
arrow, which Paris, king Priam's son, (let fly)
décocher, v.
at his heel.* - - (Unable to) catch the thief,
talon, m. Ne pouvoir attraper, v.
they knocked² him¹ down² with sticks. - - At last,
Enfin, adv.
the king, having broke his battle-axe and sword,
hache-d'armes, f.
was (knocked down) by a stone, and taken prisoner
renversé, p. p. fait, p. p.
- - - William the Second was killed by an arrow in the
New-Forest. - - My brother was wounded by a gun,
fusil, m.
and my cousin was killed by a cannon-ball. - Edward
boulet de canon, m.
the First was wounded in Palestine with a poisoned
f.
dagger. - - He is so strong, that with his fist he
poignard, m.
could knock down an ox. - - He threw my brother
down, and almost killed him with his feet. - -
par terre,
They killed him not with stones, but with arrows. - -
The soldiers kill one another with bayonets, and the
se tuer
officers with sabres and swords. - - He killed his dog

* See rule, page 111.

with kicks. - The city of Vera Cruz has been destroyed by cannon-shot.

For, after *reflected verbs*, as also those which denote *thanksgiving*, &c. is rendered by one of the following articles, *de, du, de la, de l', des* : ex.

Je me réjouis du service qu'il vous a rendu, et je l'en remercierai demain, I rejoice *for* the service which he has done to you, and will thank him tomorrow *for* it

EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

I am very grateful *for* all the kindness
reconnaissant, adj. *bonté, f.*
 you have had *for* me. - - He is very sorry *for* the
 grief he has caused you. - - When we have reached
atteindre, v.
 the age of reason, we are often sorry, but too late,
for the time we lost when we were young. - - My
 brother desired me to thank you *for* the part you
de
 took in his troubles. - - Every one leaped *for* joy,
peine, f. *tressaillir*
 when the happy news of peace arrived. - - A child
 who cares little *for* the author of his life,
se soucier, v. *jours, m. pl.*
 is an unnatural being - An ungrateful son will be
dénaturé, adj.
 punished (one time or other) *for* his ingratitude.

From, preceding the name of a *man* or *woman*. or one of the *personal, possessive, relative, or interrogative*, pronouns, after the verbs *to go, to come, to send*, &c. is generally rendered in French by *de la part de*, or *de ma, de sa, de notre part de votre part*, &c. : ex.

Allez de ma part chez Mons. D. Go *from* me to Mr. D.

Je viens de sa part, I come *from* him or her.

EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

Go *from* me to Miss Dunkin's, and tell her I shall
lui

be glad to see her : no, stop a little, tell her that
de

you come *from* my cousin, who has something very pretty to show her. -- *From* whom do you come ?

'said she' to me' -- Madam, replied I to her, I come
répliquer, v.

from my parents, who sent me. -- Well, answered
père et mère

she, any one is always welcome, who comes *from* them. -- Send *from* me to Mr. Lucas, and let him

know that I am, (very much) vexed at the letter I
très *faire* *de*

received *from* him ; I never could have expected
s'attendre, v.

to receive such an affront *from* and old acquaintance.
à *connaissance, f.*

In requires some attention from the learner, who is to observe that *dans* is followed by the article, a pronoun, or any word which may define the noun, when, on the contrary, *en* seldom admits of the article, whether expressed in English or not : ex

Il est dans la maison, He is *in* the house.

Elle est en Angleterre, She is *in* England.

EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

He always keeps himself (shut up) *in* his room. --

Take all the linen which I shall want *in* our journey,
linge, m.

and put it *into* my box. -- Walk* *into* the parlour.

-- We live *in* the county of Surrey. -- Is there a good

fire *in* the room ? -- Ovid, one of the finest poets of

the Augustan age, expired *in* the seventeenth
d'Auguste, m. *siècle, m.*

year of our Lord, at Tomi, near Varna. -- Is

your sister *in* France ? -- No, madam, she is *in*

* To walk or *step into* is translated by *entrer*, followed by *dans* in French ; but to walk or take a walk is *se promener*.

Spain. - - How long do you intend to stay *in* town?
 Sir, do you keep house? - - No, we live *in*
 (ready furnished) lodgings. - - When we are *in*
garni,adj. *chambre,f.* *on*
 peace, people talk of war; and when *in* war, they
on *on*
 talk of peace. - - Your eldest son behaved (*like a*)
en
 hero. - - If my son behave *like* an honest man, I shall
 act towards him *as a* tender father. - - *In* what does
 human happiness consist? - - If you wish to be happy
 and esteemed *in* this world, live *like a* man of
 honour and probity. - - He walks *in* the garden with
 his friend. - - He is gone to spend the winter *in*
en
 Italy. - - The American^s navy² officers¹ have acted
marine
like heroes.

In, after words denoting *pain*, *hurting*, or *wounding*,
 and preceding one of the possessive pronouns in conjunc-
 tion with any part of the body, is to be rendered by one
 of the following articles, *à*, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, and the
 possessive pronoun left out; and when *in* precedes a
 noun denoting a part of time, it is not to be expressed
 in French: ex.

<i>Il était blessé au bras, et</i>	He was wounded <i>in</i> his
<i>non à la jambe,</i>	arm, and not <i>in</i> his leg.
<i>Vous le trouverez toujours</i>	You will always find him
<i>chez lui le matin,</i>	at home <i>in</i> the morning

EXERCISE UPON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

My brother has constantly (a pain) *in* his head, and
 I have very often a pain *in* my teeth. - - Never eat
 any fruit which is not ripe, for there is nothing
 more apt to give you a pain *in* your stomach. - - My
 companion, by jumping over a form, (fell down,)
banc,m. *tomber,v.*

and was much hurt *in* the shoulder. - - Your brother was wounded *in* the arm, but not dangerously, and my cousin was mortally wounded *in* the head. - - My master comes generally *in* the morning. - - I will call upon you *in* the afternoon, and *in* the evening go to the play.

On or *upon*. This preposition is rendered by *de* after the verbs *to depend*, *to live*, *to subsist*, and the like ; and by one of the following articles, *de*, *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, after the verb *to play*, preceding the name of an instrument ; and before the days of the week and the names of the month, preceded by a numeral adjective the above preposition must not be expressed : ex.

Il vit de pain et d'eau, He lives *on* bread and
water.

Vous jouez du violon, et il You play *on* the violin,
joue de la flûte, and he plays *on* the flute.

Cela arriva le dix-huit du That happened *on* the
mois dernier, eighteenth of last month.

EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

We all depend *upon* divine mercy. - - A
good end generally depends *on* a good beginning. -
Men do not live only *on* bread and meat, but *on* the
grace of God. - - Birds subsist *upon* what they can
catch. - - What do you live *upon*, you who never eat
any meat ? - - In winter I live *on* milk and vegetables,
and in summer I live *upon* bread and butter, cheese, and,
all sorts of fruits. - - *Upon* what instrument does your
sister play ? - She plays very well *on* the harpsichord,
and she is now learning to play *on* the harp. - - Come
on Friday early, and I will go to see you *on* the Saturday
following. - - Why did you not play *on* the violin *on*
Wednesday last ? - - *On* June the eighth, 1376, died

Edward, prince of Wales, the delight of the nation, in the forty-sixth year of his age. - - On the third of June, 1664, the English obtained a great victory over the Dutch off Harwich, took eighteen ships, and destroyed fourteen more.

Over. This preposition is commonly rendered in French by *sur*; but it must be rendered by the participle passive of the verbs *finir*, *passer*, *achever*, when it denotes an action ended : ex.

<i>Il a l'avantage sur vous,</i>	He has the advantage over you.
<i>Votre frère partit dès que la pluie fut passée,</i>	Your brother set out as soon as the rain was over.
<i>Le dîner est-il fini ?</i>	Is dinner over?

EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

A coach passed over his body, and killed him. - - Tullia, Tarquinius' wife, the unnatural daughter of Servius, king of Rome, ordered her coachman to drive over the dead body of her father. - - In going to London, did you go over Westminster bridge? - - Yes, but in coming back I passed over Blackfriars bridge. - - They dissolved the army as soon as it was resolved that the campaign was over. - In France they drink coffee as soon as dinner is over. - - You may go and walk when the rain is over. - - They fought well, and the battle was soon over.

With is rendered by *dans*, when it is used before nouns denoting the purpose, design, or motive of the agent : ex.

Il le fit dans l'attente d'être bien récompensé, He did it *with* an expectation of being well rewarded.

EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

He poisoned his brother *with* the hope of inheriting his estates. -- My brother is gone to your house *with* the design of scolding you well. -- He who beats another *with* the intention of killing him, is a murderer (at the) bottom of his heart. -- He did it *with* the intention of pleasing you, and not *with* any design of hurting you. -- I went last week to Mr. Olympus, *with* the expectation of receiving the money which I lent him a month ago, but he was not at home. -- I live *with* the hope of receiving it (one time or another.) -- He said so, *with* a design of deceiving you, if he could.

With must be made by *de* after the following verbs, *to starve, to die, to do, to dispense, to meddle, to encompass, to load, to cover, to strike*, and those denoting *fulness* : likewise after the following adjectives, *amorous, charmed, pleased, displeased, endowed*, &c. : ex.


Elle meurt de froid et de faim, She dies *with* cold and hunger.
Je suis content de ce que j'ai, I am pleased *with* what I have.

EXERCISE UPON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

Lazy people (ought to) die *with* hunger and
devoir, v

cold. - - The winter was so severe, that I was dying

with cold. - - They are so rich that they do not know

what to do *with* their money - - I hope you will dis-
que 

pense me *with* that disagreeable (piece of work.)
besogne,f

- - Do not meddle *with* my affairs, meddle *with* your

own. - It is reported on all sides that that city (is to) be

encompassed *with* walls. - - Do you see that wagon ?

chariot,m.

It is loaded *with* goods. - - Do you wish your house to

be covered *with* slates or tiles ? He was overwhelmed
que

soit,v. *tuile,f.* *accablé,adj.*

with grief. - - The enemy, struck *with* terror and

astonishment, ran away. - - Honour me *with* your

commands. - - I have filled my cellar *with* good beer

and excellent wine. - - Narcissus, seeing himself in a

Narcisse

clear fountain, fell (in love) *with* his own

devenir,v. *amoureux,adj.*

person. - - I am charmed *with* the agreeable company

of your sister. - - As to us, little satisfied *with* his

answer, we took other measures. - - Are you not

nous *vous*

pleased *with* the behaviour of your son Thomas ? - -

satisfait,p.p.

You would be wrong to be dissatisfied *with*

him, for he behaved (like an) honest man in
avoir tort de *mécontent,adj.*

that affair, and he is endowed *with* many good
se conduire,v. *en*

qualities. - - The man who meddles *with* nobody's
doué,adj.

affairs, but quietly lives in peace, seldom makes

himself enemies.

With is rendered by *contre* after words denoting *anger*
 or *passion* ; and before nouns denoting the *matter*, *instru-*

ments, tools, or expressing how and in what manner a thing is done or made, it is rendered by one of the following articles, *à, au, à la, à l', aux*, according to the gender and number of the following noun : ex.

<i>Madame votre mère est très-</i>	Your mother is very angry
<i>fâchée contre vous,</i>	<i>with you.</i>
<i>Une table à tiroirs,</i>	A table <i>with</i> drawers.
<i>Dessiner au crayon, à la</i>	To draw with a pencil,
<i>craie,</i>	<i>with chalk.</i>
<i>Se battre à l'épée, au pis-</i>	To fight <i>with</i> swords, <i>with</i>
<i>tolet,</i>	pistols.

EXERCISE UPON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

My brother was in² such¹ a passion³ *with* me, that I
si *colère*
 thought he would have beaten me. -- I believe what
croire, v.

you say, but I was very angry *with* her when she
 told me she would not do it. -- I live near the river,
 and if you will come to see me, we will fish *with* a
vouloir, v.

net or a line. -- Your brother and my cousin
filet, m. *ligne, f.*

fought *with* sabres and pistols; the former was
sing. *sing.*

wounded in his thigh, and the latter in his side. --

My house has been built *with* lime and sand. -- Did

Miss Arnold show you the picture she has drawn

with India ink? -- No, but she showed me her

Chine, f.

mother's picture done *with* chalk: I assure you it is
crayon, m.

very like. -- Do not go so near that wall, it is newly
ressemblant, adj. *mur, m.*

painted *with* (white lead). -- I bought a penknife *with*
céruse, f.

two blades. -- The Americans fought bravely
lame. *se battre*

with the English at New-Orleans.

Nouvelle

With is not to be expressed after some verbs, such as, *to meet with, to trust with, to supply with, to reproach with, &c.* It is likewise to be suppressed where it expresses the *situation, position, &c.* of a person, or when it is used in the sense of *having, holding, &c.* : ex.

<i>Il a essuyé bien des cha-</i>	He has met <i>with</i> many
<i>grins,</i>	troubles.
<i>Nous lui fournissons tout ce</i>	We will supply him <i>with</i>
<i>dont il aura besoin,</i>	every thing he may want.
<i>Il se promène toujours un</i>	He always walks <i>with</i> a
<i>livre à la main,</i>	book in his hand, that
	is, <i>having, or holding a</i>
	<i>book, &c.</i>

EXERCISE UPON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

He met *with* (so many) mortifications from his
essuyer, v.
 sons, that through grief he fell *ill and died*
de *tomber, v.*
 almost *with* despair. - - - When you meet
de *rencontrer, v.*
 a poor man, never reproach him *with* his poverty,
 but endeavour to furnish him *with* the means
moyen, m.
 of immerging from his misery. - - I have trusted Mr.
sortir, v.
 N. *with* my son's education, with the utmost con-
 fidence that he will answer my expectation. - - The
 New River supplies London *with* all the water which
 the inhabitants stand in need of. - - I reproached
avoir besoin, v.
 her *with* her ingratitude towards her benefactors. - - -
 He always walks round his garden *with* a stick in his
bâton, m.
 hand. - - Never speak to any body *with* your hat on
le
 your head. - - He is represented on horseback, *with*
 a sword in his right hand and a horse - pistol
l'épée *arçon: pistolet, m.*
 in his left
gauche, adj.

Without, (*sans* :) this preposition is sometimes expressed (in English) by the imperfect or compound of the imperfect of the verb *to be*, preceded by the conjunction *if*, and sometimes by *but for* : ex.

Sans vous, je ne sais ce que je deviendrais, *If it were not for you, I do not know what would become of me.*

Sans lui, mon frère aurait été puni, *Had it not been for him, my brother would have been punished.*

Sans elle, je serais mort de faim, *But for her, I should have starved.*

EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

Without the assistance of the Divine Providence,
secours,m.

what are we ? what are we capable of ? - - - According to what you tell me, and what I have heard,

she has (a great deal) of wit and merit ; and, *but for* that large scar which she has in her forehead, *entendre*,v.
grand,adj. *cicatrice*,f.

head she would be very handsome. - - - *Had it not been for* the help of good and honest people, what could you have done ? - - - *If it had not been for* me, he never would have paid you. - - *Were it not for* rich and charitable persons, what would become of the poor and needy ? - - Our neighbour fell into the river,
voisin,m.

and *but for* my father, who was passing that way, he would have been drowned. - - *Were it not for* emulation,
se noyer,v.refl.

tion, (every thing) would languish in the world.
tout

SECT. VIII.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Most of the conjunctions are adverbs and prepositions, but always attended by *de* or *que*. They have been di-

vided into *copulative*, *comparative*, *disjunctive*, *adversative*, *casual*, *dubitative*, *exceptive*, *conditional*, *continuative*, *conclusive*, &c. Instead of following this arrangement, it will be of more importance for the scholar to understand, that different conjunctions require different states of the verb. Some require the following verb in the *infinitive mood*, others in the *indicative*, and others again in the *subjunctive*.

These require the following verb in the *infinitive mood*.

Afin de, in order to.

à moins de, or
à moins que de, } unless.

Avant de, or
Avant que de,* } before.

Au lieu de, instead of.

De crainte de, or
De peur de, } for fear of.

Excepté de, except to.

Faute de, for want of.

Jusqu'à, to that degree that, till

Loin de, far from.

Plutôt que de, rather than.

EXERCISE UPON THESE CONJUNCTIONS.

In order to learn well, we must study with (a
on devoir, v.
great deal) of attention. -- It will be impossible for
you to learn French, *unless* you be diligent. -- Let us
de
breakfast *before* we begin (any thing). -- A prudent
rien
man (ought to, think several times, *before* he acts. -
agir, v
He is gone to church, *instead of* coming with us. ---
I would not do it *for fear of* displeasing you. --- He
is capable of (every thing) *except of* doing good. --
tout

* This is now little used.

For want of sending for a surgeon in
 time, he lost his arm. - - He carried his inso-
 lence to that degree that he spoke injurious words
 to him. - - Your cousin has humbled himself, till
 he fell (on his) knees before the idol. - - Far from
 exciting them to fight, I did all that I could, in order
 to prevent them. - - She would do (any thing) (in the)
 world, rather than speak to him. - - Rather than study,
 he loses his time, or spends it in trifles.

The following require the verb in the *indicative mood*.

Ainsi que,* as.

Tout ainsi que,* just as.

Après que,* after that, after.

à cause que, }
Parce que, } because.

à ce que, according as, or to.

à condition que, on, or upon condition that.

à mesure que,* in proportion as, as.

Au lieu que, whereas.

Dès le moment que,* the moment that.

Aussi long-tems que,* as long as.

Aussi loin que,* as far as.

Aussitôt que, }
D'abord que, } *as soon as.
Dès que, }
Sitôt que, }

Attendu que, considering that, seeing that.

Comme, or }
En tant que, } *as.

De façon que, }
De manière que, } in such manner that, so that, so.
De sorte que, }
Si bien que, }
Tellement que, }

Depuis que, ever since, since.

Puisque, since.

De même que, even as.

D'où vient que, how comes it to pass that, way

Lorsque, } *when.
Quand, }

Mais, but.†

à peine—que, hardly, scarcely—but, or when.

Outre que, besides that.

Pendant que, } *while.
Tandis que, }

Peut-être, perhaps.

Quand, }
Quand même, } though.

Selon que, } *according as.
Suivant que, }

Tant que,* as long as.

Que—de—ne, than, only.

Autant que,* as much as.

D'autant que, whereas, for so much as, since.

D'autant plus que, so much the more, the more,—as.

Tout que, for all that.‡

Toute fois, yet, nevertheless.

Toutes les fois que, every time, as often as, whenever.

Si non que, except that.

Si, if, in case, whether. (*Were I*, *Si j'étais*.)

EXERCISE UPON THESE CONJUNCTIONS

I called at your sister's, *as* you had desired me.
passer, v. *prier*, v.

-- I punish you *as* you deserve (it.) -- *After* you
 were gone, I began writing. -- I love you *because*
 you behave better than your brother. -- *According*
as I see, you are very well. -- He will write to you,
on condition that he shall speedily receive
promptement, adv.

† This conjunction, when beginning a sentence, is always rendered
 by *mais*. In the middle of a sentence, the word *but* as *only* is always
 rendered by *ne* before the verb, and *que* after it: ex.

Je n'ai parlé à votre frère que I have spoken to your brother
une fois. *but twice.*

‡ See rule, page 142.

your answer - - - *In proportion as we study, we become learned. - - A skilful gardener pulls up weeds as they grow. - - - Your brother learns his lessons, whereas you do nothing. - - The moment that I saw you, I knew you again. - - I did not stay in Italy, as long as you did. - - I followed him (with my) eyes as far as I could. - - As soon as they had taken the general, the army surrendered. - - Why did you give it to him, considering that you had promised it to me? - - I did not come to see you, seeing that I did not know that you were ill. - - You (look at) me, as if I had taken your book. - - I will lend you my horse, as you are my friend. - - So you will not come when I call you? - - He beat him so that he almost killed him. - - Your mother is quite altered, since I saw her last. - - - You must stay at home, since you are not well. - - The thing happened even as I had foreseen it. - - How comes it to pass that I have not seen your friend until now? - - Why, in proportion as we grow older, do we not grow wiser? - - - When you are going to undertake an affair of importance, permit me to tell you, that you (ought to) consult your friends before you begin it. - - - When she had done speaking, she (fell asleep.) - - - Did you not see Mr. Brown this morning? - - Yes, but I could not speak*

to him. --- Sometimes those who meddle with our affairs *but* to serve us, are those who do us most

harm. --- The misfortunes of others seem ^{*pour*} to us ^{*le plus*}
tort, m. ^{*sembler, v.*}

but a dream in comparison to our own. --- If you ^{*songe, m.*}

could give me *but* half of the money you owe me, I should be (very much) obliged to you. --- *Beside that* he does not apply as he should, he is often absent ^{*refl.*}

from school. --- We were *hardly* arrived, when it began to rain. --- *While* you lose your time, your ^{*à*}

brother improves fast. --- Play on the harpsichord, ^{*beaucoup, adv.*} ^{*clavecin, m.*}

while I write my exercise. --- *Perhaps* the master will forgive me. --- *Though* you should cheapen ^{*marchander, v.*} for

two hours, I could not abate sixpence. --- Our father punishes and rewards us *according as* we deserve. --- ^{*le*}

Speak *as long as* you please, I will not grant you what you ask me. --- He had rather do harm ^{*aimer, v. mieux, adv.*}

to his companions *than* (be doing) nothing. --- If ^{*faire, v.*}

you loved to study, *as much as* you love to play, I ^{*à*}

should have (no occasion) to complain. --- I avoid ^{*aucun sujet, m.*} ^{*éviter, v.*}

slanderers, *as much as* I fear them. --- You may ^{*médisant, m.*}

believe me, *for so much as* I was present when he said so. --- This proceeding was *the more* extraordinary, *as* it was contrary to the laws of the kingdom. --- The belief of another life appears to

^{*croyance, f.*} me *so much the more* conformable to truth, *as* it is the more necessary to virtue - Virtue reigns *so*

much the more sovereignly, as it does not reign by force and fear. -- *For all that* he is rich, I cannot esteem him. -- All men 'seek after' riches, and
rechercher, v.

yet we see few rich men happy. -- I see the king and queen *every time* I go to Windsor. -- He interrupts me *as often as* I speak. -- *Whenever* I go to London, I meet him. -- She said nothing to me *except* that it was impossible (for her) to do what you required of
lui, pro. de vouloir, v.

her. -- I know not *whether* he would come, even though you should desire him. -- *In case* Mr. S. calls
passer, v.

here, tell him I am not at home. -- *If* you do it, you will be punished. -- Tell me sincerely *whether* he did it or not. -- We should spare ourselves
s'épargner, v.

many troubles, *were we* more prudent.
peine, f

The conjunctions that have this mark * affixed, as it appears in the preceding ones, when followed, in English, by a verb in the present of the indicative mood, and connected with another verb denoting futurity, require the verb, which, in English, is put in the present, to be rendered in French by the future.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

You will be rewarded *just as* you deserve. --
After you have done your exercises, you shall (go out.)
devoir, m.

-- I will explain these rules to you, *as* we read them
 -- *The moment* that you burn this letter, the danger will be over. -- We will follow you *as far as* you go.
 -- *As long as* you (keep company with) those people,
fréquenter, v. gens,
 never come to my house. -- We will (set out) *as soon as* we have dined. -- *As* you deserve, you will be
le

rewarded. - - Send me Miss White, *when* she has
done writing. - - You will write the words *accord-*
fini, p.p.de

ing as I dictate them. - - *As long as* you behave
se comporter, v.

well, you will be dear to me. - - In short, said this
good king, I shall only (think myself) happy in *as much*
se croire

as I cause the happiness of my people.

faire

It has been remarked in the degrees of comparison,
that every comparative must be attended by the conjunc-
tion *que*, than ; it must now be observed, that, if it pre-
cede a verb in the infinitive, *que* is to be followed by *de*.
But if the verb be neither in, nor can be turned into the
infinitive, the conjunction must then be attended by *ne* ;
that is, *que* before the noun or pronoun, and *ne* before the
verb : ex.

Il vaut mieux être malheu- It is better to be unfortunate
reux que d'être coupable, *than* criminal.

Mon père est revenu plu- My father came back soon-
tôt que nous ne l'atten- er *than* we expected
dions, him.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

It is more pleasing to enjoy good health,
agréable, adj.

than to possess a large fortune. - - It is harder (to
grand, adj. *de*

be revenged) of an enemy, *than* forgive him. - -
se venger, v.

It is better to (make a sacrifice of) a limb, said the
sacrifier, v.

surgeon, *than* to let him die. - - When the thunder
roars, it is less dangerous to be in an open field,
gronder, v.

than to take shelter under a tree. - - Should you
se mettre *devoir*

not apply more *than* you do ; you, especially, who
refl.

(are to) be useful to your country? - - - That would give me more pleasure *than* you imagine. - - Did you refl.

not receive your goods sooner *than* you thought? - - How many people can say to themselves, Had I *se dire, v.*

employed my time *better than* I did when I was young, I should be (in good circumstances) now. - - - *à mon aise*

Diseases come faster *than* they go away.

s'en retourner, v.

The following require the verb in the *subjunctive mood*

Afin que, } that, in order that, to the end that.
Pour que, }

*Avant que,** before.

Au or en cas que, in case that, *if*, suppose that.

*A moins que,** } unless, till.
Excepté que, }
Si ce n'est que, }

Que—ne,

Bien que, }

Encore que, } though, although, for all that, as.

Quoique, }

*De crainte que,** } lest, for fear.

De peur que, }

Dieu veuille que, God grant.

Plaise, or plutôt à Dieu que, please God, *or* would to God.

à Dieu ne plaise, God forbid.

Hormis que, }

Hors que, } save that, unless, except.

*Jusqu'à ce que,** till, until.

Loin que, far from.

Moyennant que, }

Pourvu que, } save that, provided that.

Nonobstant que, notwithstanding that.

Pour peu que, how little soever, however little.

Sans que, without that.

Soit que, whether,—or.

* These conjunctions require the negation *ne* before the verbs following them: ex.

A moins qu'il ne le fasse,

Unless he does it.

De crainte, or de peur qu'ils ne viennent, *For fear. or lest they come*

Supposons que, suppose, let us suppose that.

Tant s'en faut que je, I am so far from.

Tant s'en faut qu'il or elle, he or she is so far from.

Tant s'en faut que nous, or *vous*, we, or you are so far from.

EXERCISE UPON THESE CONJUNCTIONS.

I will explain to you every difficulty, *that* you may not be disheartened in your undertaking. ---
décourager, v.

Carry that money to Mrs. Nolle, *in order that* she may pay the writing-master when he comes. --- A
 (by the fut.)

wise and prudent man lives with economy when young, *to the end* that he may enjoy the fruit of his labour when he is old. --- *Before* you begin an
 (by the fut.)

action, consider well, and see whether you can bring
en venir
 it about ; for, it is the end that crowns the work. ---
à bout *œuvre*, m.

In case you want my assistance, call me, I shall be near you. --- *If* I do not call upon you this afternoon, I will write to you. --- *Suppose* you should lose your friends, what would become of you ? --- You will never be respected, *unless* you forsake the bad
abandonner, v.

company you keep. --- You cannot finish (to-night,)
ce soir

unless I help you. --- I will not lend it you, *unless* you promise me to return it to her, as soon as you
de rendre, v.

can. --- I shall not cease to importune you, *till* you
 (by the fut.) *de*

have forgiven me. --- They are not happy, *though* they be rich. --- The general arrived yesterday morning (at the) camp, weary and tired, but very season-
las, adj.

ably ; immediately he gave his orders to
pour, p

begin the action, *though* he had not yet all his
engager, v.

troops. --- *Although* you have a good memory, this
is not enough to learn any language whatever :

you must (make use) of your judgment. --- *For all*
se servir, v. refl.

that she has no fortune, I do not love her the less for
it. --- *As* zealous as he appears, I know one
action of his life which is neither Christian nor
equitable. --- I lend you my violin, *although* you did
not return it to me the other day. -- My mother
rendre, v.

will come to see you, *for fear* you should forget to
de

go to the play with her. --- I will not give you
that penknife, *lest* you should make a bad use of it.

--- I will go to London to-morrow, *for fear* he
should come himself. --- I will write again to
your brother to-morrow, *lest* he should not

(present of subj.)

have received my last letter. -- We avoided an engage-
ment *for fear* we should be taken, their force being
superior to ours. --- God *grant* you be not disappointed

tromper, v.

in your hopes ! *Would to God* I had been there ! I
would have conquered or perished. --- God *forbid* I
vaincre, v.

should blame your conduct. --- Your business never
will be done properly, *unless* you do it yourself. --- I
shall not go out to-day, *except* you go with me. ---

They fought with fury on both sides,
se battre, v. *acharnement*

till night came. --- I shall not set out, *till* I have

or

dined. --- I am going to write, *till* we go out. --- *Far*
from hating him, I wish him all kinds of prosperity.

-- I forgive you this time, *provided* you promise me to be lazy no more, and pay more attention to *de* *faire, v.*

what you are told. -- I will give you leave to dance, *permission de* *provided* you give me your word of honour

not to overheat *parole, f.* yourself. --- Why did you tell *de s'échauffer, v.*

me my father was arrived, *notwithstanding* you knew the contrary? -- He is so quick, that *prompt, adj.*

however little he is contradicted, he (flies into a passion) *s'emporter, v.*

in an instant. --- *However* little you give her, she is of so² good³ a¹ temper⁴, that she is always *naturel, m.*

pleased. --- Can you touch it *without* my brother *content, adj.*

perceiving it? --- *Suppose* we dine here to-day, *s'apercevoir de*

and to-morrow at our house. --- I am so *far* from blaming you for assisting him, that, (on the (comp. of the pres. inf.) *au*

contrary,) I (very much) admire your conduct. ---

He is so *far* from despising her, that, on the contrary, he respects and honours her. --- It is so *far* from raining, that, on the contrary, I think we shall have dry and hot weather during all this week.

The conjunction *si*, if, or whether, instead of being repeated in a sentence, is more elegantly rendered by *que*, with the verb following it in the subjunctive mood, as, instead of saying,

Si vous venez chez moi, et si vous ne me trouvez pas, If you call upon me and do not find me at home,

It is more elegant to say,

*Si vous venez chez moi et
que vous ne me trouviez
pas, &c.*

Que must also be repeated in the second part of a sentence, as well as the pronoun, when there is a conjunction in the first part of it ; in this case, *que* requires the following verb to be put in the same mood as the preceding : *ex.*

<i>Dès que je l'aurai vu et que je lui aurai parlé, je vous le ferai savoir,</i>	As soon as I have seen him and spoken to him, I will let you know it.
<i>Quoiqu'il soit plus riche que vous, et qu'il ait de meilleurs amis,</i>	Though he be richer than you, and have better friends.

EXERCISE UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

If your father do not arrive to-day, and *if* you
want money, I will lend you some. --- *que, c.*
avoir besoin de
If you should see your sister, and speak to
her, &c. --- *If* you study and take pains, I
assure you that you will learn the French
language in a very short time. --- *Whether*
you sing, or dance, do it with grace and atten-
tion. --- *If* you love me, and (be willing to)
oblige me, do not go to France with her. --- *If* men
were wise, and would follow the dictates of
reason, they would (save themselves) many sor-
rows. --- *If* you meet my brother, and he speak
to you, do not answer. --- *So that* you saw and
spoke to her. --- *Though* you have good relations,
your merit be known, and you do not want
friends, your projects will not succeed without your

brother's assistance. -- *As soon as* I have dressed myself, and breakfasted, I will go to see him. ---

While you play and lose your money, your sister is learning her lesson. --- We must pity him who has *celui*

no talent, and *only* despise him who has no virtue.

--- Play on the organ, while I read my brother's letter and answer him. --- *Beside* that he never studies and is always in the country, he has not so much wit as his sister. --- I will explain to you every difficulty (*in order*) that you may take courage and learn well. --- *Though* you should have the best master in England, and learn all the rules of the grammar, if you do not put them in practice, you will never speak good French. --- God grant you may succeed in your pursuits, and obtain the

entreprise, f.
favour you solicit so ardently ! --- *Whether*

God (raise up) thrones, or pull them down ; *Soit que*
élever, v. *abaisser, v.* *ou*

whether he communicate his power to princes, *soit que* *puissance, f.*

or withdraw it to himself, and only leave them. *retirer, v.*

their own weaknes ; he teaches them their duty in a sovereign manner. --- *Whether* you speak or *de, p.*

(hold your tongue,) you will obtain nothing from *se taire, v.*

me ; bu. whatever you may say, speak *so that* you may never offend any one. -- Your brother told me *personne.*

he was young, and was* but twenty years old when he was made a captain ; I think he was better in- *plus*

* See the remark after the verb *être*, to be, page 133

formed and had more experience than you have. --
instruit S

I can assure you, *that* both our officers and soldiers
S
have behaved nobly, and performed prodigies of
faire
valour, *though* the enemies were superior in num-
ber, and had the advantage of the ground.
terrein.

It is here necessary to observe, that verbs denoting
wish, will, command, desire, doubt, fear, ignorance, entreaty,
persuasion, pretension, surprise, &c. always require the
conjunction *que* after them, with the following verb in the
subjunctive mood.

In short, in those *dispositions* of mind where the will
is chiefly concerned, or whenever we express a thing
with some degree of *doubt* or *hesitation*, then the verb,
which, in English, is put in the infinitive mood, the participle
active, or the future tense, must, in French, be
put in the subjunctive mood : ex.

<i>Croyez-vous qu'il soit hon- nête ?</i>	Do you believe him to be honest ?
<i>Je doute que vous le fassiez,</i>	I doubt of your doing it.
<i>Je ne crois pas qu'elle vienne,</i>	I do not believe she will come.

See *Falloir*, and the rules after it, page 316.

Pay the utmost attention to the

EXERCISE UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

You wish him to pay you : he has no money ; I am
obliged to lend him some every day. --- I do not
de
think that true philosophy may be less useful to
women than men ; but I remark, that the most
remarque, v.
part of those who meddle (with it) are but
se mêler, v. *en*
very bad philosophers, without becoming better
wives for it. -- I do not believe that your mother will

arrive to-day. - - - She wishes you may succeed
 in all your undertakings. - - - I fear* ^{pouvoir, v.} she (will go
 away) without speaking to me. - - I much fear he
 will come sooner than you expect ^{craindre, v.} him. - - - Do
 you not say you are surprised that William ^{attendre, v.} has not
 spoken to you (ever since) last week. - - For my part,
 I am not surprised at it, for he is always pouting. ^{Quant à moi,}
 - - Do you think he will succeed, and obtain the place ^{bouder, v.}
 he aims at? - - You have had much trouble, and we ^{croire, v.}
 all fear lest hereafter she should give you much ^{peine}
 more. - - If you believe him to be your friend, why
 then do not you follow his advice? - - It is necessary
 for you to go thither, and assure him, that I am very
 thankful ^{que} for all his kindness. - - - I wonder that
 Mr. R. has not yet asked your sister in marriage. - - -
 If you see her and she speaks to you, do not answer
 her. - - Order her to do it. - - Do you imagine
 we are sure they will come to-night? - - - Do you ^{Dire, v.}
 think it is possible for you to (bring it about?), ^{s'imaginer, v.}
 - - It is just we should suffer, since we deserve it. - -
 I do not say I have seen it. - - He (was afraid) lest
 you should come while he was ^{croire, v.} (gone out). - - -
^{de en venir à bout, v.} ^{sortir, v.}

* The verbs *craindre* and *appréhender* when attended with no negation, require that *ne* should be placed before the verb which follows: ex. *Je crains qu'il ne meure*, I fear he will die.

Our master has ordered, that we should (get up) to-morrow morning early. -- You did not think that she (wanted to) deceive you, when she told you that *vouloir*, v.

- I wonder you should doubt, that it is your *être surpris*, v. *ce*

daughter who told it me. --- Do you think my mother will let us go to the ball next week? -- Were Mr. S. discreet and willing to undertake that affair, I would communicate it to him immediately. -- It *sur le champ*

will be better for you to go and speak to him yourself while he is in town, because I do not doubt* of his undertaking it. -- Were I certain that you would *ne* with the subj. pres.

speak to him about it, I would desire him to come and dine with us to-morrow; for I (am to) see him to-
prier de

night at his brother's. -- I am certain that he will satisfy you: are you certain he will satisfy me? --

Your uncle is very glad you have written to your father. -- I will give you no rest unless you are re-
que ne

conciled with your mother. -- I do not believe it is she who has done it. -- Do you believe it? -- My brother is not well, and I doubt (very much) of
fort,

his coming to see us before next spring. --- Do you think he is on the road? --- I doubt
en, p. route?

whether he will come before next week. ---
suivant, adj.

I did not know you had studied geography so long

* After the verbs *Douter* and *Nier*, when these verbs are attended with a negation. *ne* is employed with the verb which follows: ex.

Je ne nie pas que cela ne soit, I do not deny that it is so.

It must be observed, that after the verb *voulour*, the verb *to have* is not expressed, but rendered in French by *que*. It must also be observed, that the sign of the future tense, *shall*, when it refers to the will of a person, and meaning, *I choose, I do not choose, do you choose ?* &c. must be rendered in French by the present tense of the indicative mood of the verb *vouloir*, according to the number and person, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood :
ex.

<i>Je veux qu'il fasse cela,</i>	<i>I will have him do that.</i>
<i>Je veux que vous me mon-</i>	<i>You shall show me that</i>
<i>triez cette lettre,</i>	<i>letter, that is to say, I</i>
	<i>choose you should show,</i>
	<i>&c.</i>
<i>Voulez-vous que je danse ?</i>	<i>Shall I dance ? that is, do</i>
	<i>you choose, &c.</i>

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

You would have your daughter return to-
vouloir, v. *revenir, v.*
 morrow, but that is impossible. - - - I will have your
 father know what you have done: you must stay
rester, v.
 here till he comes. - - - Your mother would have you
 come directly: why do you not come, then? - - - I
 absolutely intend that she shall go thither
vouloir, v.
 directly, and tell him, that, whether he be ill or
se porter
 well, I will have him set out as soon as he has re-
 ceived my letter. - - - I will have you see my house,
 and tell me what you think of it. - - - She shall not go
penser, v.
 into the country, unless I go with her. - - My father
 would have me and my brother walk all the
faire à pied, v.
 way. - - Your sister shall go with me to Croydon, and
chemin, m.
 not you. - - Your father will have you go to France
 in a month; I am very glad of it; however, I would

not have you do things too precipitately. - - Shall my brother show you his translation? - - Your brother asked me whether he might go home to-morrow: I told him he might go whenever he thought he

croire, v.

should be wanted; but you shall remain here till you have learned your lessons. - - I know a gentleman who is going to Paris; shall I tell him to call

upon you? I would not have you go to Germany *passer*
chez

without understanding French well, as that language will enable you to learn German much sooner than *mettre en état de bien*

you expect. - - Your brother shall not go out to-day. *s'attendre.*

- - Will you (be so good as) to go and carry that letter *avoir la bonté de* to the post? No, I cannot leave my play. But I tell you, that you shall (go there;) I would have you pay *faire, v.*

more attention to what you are told.

Qui, que, or dont, preceded by a superlative, require the following verb in the subjunctive mood, and when *qui* stands as a nominative to a verb, denoting a condition, it also requires the following verb to be put in the subjunctive mood: ex.

C'est la plus belle femme qui puisse se voir, She is the handsomest woman *that* can be seen.

C'est le plus méchant garçon que je connaisse, He is the most wicked boy *that* I know.

Je veux une femme qui soit belle, I will have a wife *who* is handsome:

that is, I will not have any woman for a wife, but *on condition* she be handsome.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Do you say you are surprised, that he has not

yet written to you ? I assure you it is not to be won-
s'étonner
 dered at ; for, he is the most negligent man I know.

--- It is necessary for you to go thither. and assure

him that he has *que* done nothing that should
devoir, v.

• (make² me¹ angry³). --- He is the most charitable man
fâcher, v.

we have in the neighbourhood ; his purse is open
 to the poorest men he can find. --- Did
 you not tell me you (sought for) a master who had
chercher, v.

a good pronounciation, and was endowed with (a
doué de

great deal) of patience ? -- When a father is capable
 of teaching his children, he is the best master whom
 they can have. -- I know nobody that improves

more than Miss K—— ; and when she was learning
faire des progrès
 French, had she learned it by rules, she would speak,
le

write and translate now much better than Miss S——,
 though she was two years in France. -- Has not your
 brother some friends whom he can trust ? -- Your
se fier à, v.

father has bought the finest horse that I have ever
 seen. -- Is there any lady that appears more reasonable
 than she does ? -- If you ever choose a friend, I wish

ou
 you may choose one whom you esteem, and who
 may be an honest man. -- It (will be better for) you to
valoir mieux

go and speak to him yourself, instead of writing to
 him, because I do not doubt of his undertaking and
 (bringing about) your affair ; he is the most diligent
venir à bout de

and the most careful man we have in this country. ---
 Before you begin any thing of importance, consult

somebody who is your friend, and on whom you can rely. - - - Do you know any body who goes to *faire fond*, v.

France? - - I have something to send to my sister. -

If you do not follow my advice, believe me, it will be the greatest misfortune that can happen to you.

- - Babylon was the finest city that ever was built. - - -

The best reason I can give you is, that I *pouvoir*, v.

(was not) well. - - If you lend me a horse, lend me *se porter*, v.

one that goes well. - - - The God who has created us, and who created the universe, is the only *seul*, adj. one

to whom we owe homage, and the only one whom we (ought to) fear.

SECT. IX.

OF INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections, as before observed, serve to express the sudden emotions of the soul.

There are several sorts, viz.

Of joy, grief, pain, admiration, aversion, silence, calling, encouraging, warning, &c. such as,

Allons, gai! come, be cheerful.

ça courage! come, come on!

Bon! good!

Ah, mon Dieu! oh, my God!

Ah, ouidà! ay, marry!

Ha, quelle joie! O, joy!

ô ciel! O Heaven!

Fi, fi! fy upon, shame!

Holà, ho! ho there!

Hélas! alas!

Malheur à! wo to!

Miséricorde! bless me!

Prenez garde, gare! have a care

Paix, chut, st ! hist, hush !

Silence ! silence !

Come, friends, let us rejoice ! - - - Good ! here are
se réjouir, v.
 news for you, brother ! - - - *Fy, fy !* Robert, you do
 not think of what you say. - - Oh ! how¹ lovely⁶ a⁴
penser, v. à *que*
 virtue⁵ is³ modesty² ! Why do you not endeavour to
s'efforcer, v. de
 acquire it ? - - - Alas ! who can express the torments
 I suffer here ! - - - Man without religion, never
 having his heart or mind at peace, can, alas !
esprit, m. *en, p.*
 be but a very unhappy creature. - - - Wo to you !
 usurers, misers, unjust possessors of (other people's)
usurier, m. *avare, m.* *autrui, pro.*
 goods, hearken to these words : The treasures
bien, m. *écouter, v.* *parole, f.*
 of iniquity (will be of no service) to you. - - O
ne servir de rien
 (lazy people,) go to the ant ; consider what she
paresseux *fourmi, f.*
 does, and learn from her, wisdom and industry. - -
 Bless me ! I am undone ! - - Hush there ! silence !
perdu, p. p.
 - - Oh ! the dismal effects which laziness pro-
funeste, adj.
 duces ! - - How¹ tremendous⁸ an² office³ is⁷ that
Que terrible, adj. *le* *science, f.*
 of⁴ a⁵ judge⁶ ! What wisdom, what integrity, what
 knowledge, what sagacity of mind, what experience
 (are required !)
ne faut-il pas avoir, v.

REMARKS AND EXERCISES ON THE WORDS

de, à, and pour.

Having, in this manner, gone through the respective parts of speech, there will be no occasion for a syntax

it will, however, be necessary to give some rules for ascertaining the proper use of the particle *de* or *à*, and the preposition *pour*, before a verb in the infinitive mood, and then to point out, by way of exercise, some idiomatical expressions that most frequently occur in the French tongue.*

When two verbs come together in a sentence, the latter, having no subject expressed nor understood, must be put in the infinitive mood, whether the English sign *to*, be prefixed or not.

In the following cases, the infinitive mood must never be preceded by a particle.

FIRST, when the verb in the infinitive stands nominative to another verb : ex.

Aimer est un verbe, - *To love is a verb.*

SECONDLY, after the following verbs, *aller, croire, devoir, faire, il faut, savoir, valoir, mieux, venir, pouvoir, oser, vouloir*, and *penser* when rendered by *to be like* or *near*.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

To know how to give seasonably, is a talent every

body has not. - - - To be able to live with one's self, and to know how to live with others, are the two

great sciences of life. - - I had rather do it
aimer mieux, v.

now than later. - - - Why dare you not undertake it?

I think you might succeed. - - - He says he will lend
pouvoir, v. réussir, v.

you his gun with all his heart, because you know
fusil, m.

how to make use of it. - - Aristotle, though he was
se servir, v.

so great a philosopher, was never able to penetrate the cause of that prodigy. - - Tell him that he may set

* The great number of idiomatical expressions in the French language has long been considered as an almost insuperable difficulty in the way of its easy acquirement ; however, this difficulty is daily decreasing ; these peculiar expressions are now giving way to a regular construction, and are very little used by the best writers.

out when (he pleases.) - - You never could
il lui plaira, v. *pouvoir, v.*
 come more seasonably. - - We (are to) go to Vauxhall
 to-morrow. - - - I am going to see your brother. - - -
 (Is it not better) to set out now, than wait,
Valoir mieux, v. *de attendre, v.*
 any longer? - - - If you think to oblige her,
plus *croire, v.*
 you mistake. - - We (were to) have had a ball yester-
se tromper, v.
 day, but my sister was not well. - - - You did very
 right, for you ought not to speak to him. - - - I
bien, adv. car, c. *devoir, v.*
 (had like) to have fallen twenty times (in) coming
penser, v. *ou*
 hither - - To instruct, please, and move the pas-
émouvoir,
 sions, are the three principal qualifications requisite in
qualité *nécessaire*
 an orator. - - If you would read this book, I could
vouloir, v. *pouvoir, v.*
 lend it to you for four or five days. - - He wishes to
vouloir
 learn without taking pains.
peine, f. sing.

The particle *de* is put before a verb in the infinitive mood: *First*, when any of the following words, *of*, *from*, or *with*, are used before the participle active of any verb. (See the rule upon the participle active, page 327.)

Secondly, after a noun substantive joined immediately to a verb, either without any article at all, or with the following articles, *le*, *la*, or *les*.

Thirdly, after the following adjectives, *decent*, *glad*, *impossible*, *necessary*, *sorry*, *worthy*, *vexed*, and the like.

Fourthly, after the following verbs: *to advise*, *to apprehend*, *to bid*, *to cease*, *to commend*, *to conjure*, *to counsel*, *to defend*, *to defer*, *to deserve*, *to desire*, *to endeavour*, *to entreat*, *to fear*, *to hasten*, *to long*, *to order*, *to permit*, *to persuade*, *to pray*, *to promise*, *to propose*, *to refuse*, *to remem-*

ber, to threaten, to tell, to warn, to undertake, &c and the greater part of the reflected verbs.

And *lastly*, after the conjunction *que*, preceded by the comparative degree.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE

I have desired your brother to lend me some
prier, v.
 money. - - - My mother ordered me to tell you to
ordonner, v.
 go and speak to her directly. - - - Did you not permit
sortir, v.
 him to go out this morning? - - - I am surprised to
 find you so ill. - - I have not desired you to play. - -
 Bid your sister to send me my book. - - - We
Dire, v. à
 (were afraid) of displeasing you. - - - What do you
craindre
 advise me to do in such a case? - - My sister
conseiller, v.
 and I intend to (call upon) you on Friday next
passer, v. chez, v.
 I am very glad to hear you are better. - -
apprendre, v.
 She does not pretend to speak French as well as
se piquer, v. de
 you. - - We were tired of repeating to you the same
 things so often. - - If you finish your exercise soon
 you will have the pleasure of walking, while the
 others will have the trouble of working. - - Hasten
se hâter
 to tell her not to go thither (any more;) for, she
de de plus, adv.
 would be in danger of losing her life. - - En-
la
 deavour to please your masters by your application to
à
 study. - - Do not you remember having said you
 would carry me to the camp? - - Do not they
mener, v.

deserve to be encouraged, who undertake to serve
*mériter, v.**

the public? -- We are all glad to hear you have
overcome your enemies: we should have been sorry
to have heard the contrary. -- What a fool³ you¹ are²

apprendre, so, when you have so much reason to
grieve *s'affliger, v.*

rejoice! --- Never endeavour to speak French unless
you have a good pronunciation. -- I shall never refuse
to do you a service (as long as) it is in my power.
rendre, v.

--- Have you a mind to do what you have pro-
envie,

mised me? --- I cannot give you the book you asked
me for, my brother has not (thought fit) to send
juger à propos, v.

it me back again. -- I desired you to bring your
sister with you; why did you not?† -- I forbid
défendre, v.

you to speak or write to him (any more.) -- Would
davantage, adv.

you not be very glad to read and speak Italian? --

--- Condemn the opinion of no one hastily, but
endeavour to regulate your own by the line of
s'efforcer, v.

truth. -- Who can hinder me from speaking or
vérité, f. *empêcher, v.*

writing to her? -- (Give¹ me² leave¹) to tell you, that
Permettre, v.

you do very wrong to disoblige your aunt. --- He
mal, adv.

(was not contented) to demolish the temple and pull
se contenter, v.

down the statues, but, &c. -- Is there (any thing)
battre, v. *rien*

more glorious than to change anger into friendship?

* See the rule, page 116.

† *Do it* is understood, and must be expressed in French.

-- (I long) to see your mother, and tell her all
Il me tarde, v.
 that I think (about it.)
en, pro.

The particle *à* is to be placed before a verb in the infinitive mood : *First*, after the auxiliary verb, *avoir*, to have, immediately followed by a substantive or an adverb, expressing a futurity in the action : ex.

J'ai plusieurs lettres à écrire, I have many letters to write.

Secondly, after nouns substantive joined to the verb *avoir*, or nouns adjective joined to the verb *être*, signifying to be addicted, apt, bent, diligent, disposed, dreadful, easy, fit, hard, inclined, quick, ready, subject, used, &c.

Thirdly, after the following adjectives, *admirable*, *good*, *dexterous*, *handsome*, *scarce*, the *last*, the *first*, the *second*. &c.

And, *lastly*, after the following verbs, *to amuse*, *to aspire* or *aim at*, *to begin*, *to condemn*, *to continue* or *go on*, *to compel* or *force*, *to design* or *destine*, *to dispose*, *to employ* or *spend*, *to encourage*, *to engage*, *to excite*, *to exhort*, *to help*, *to induce*, *to invite*, *to learn*, *to please*, *to serve*, *to take a pleasure* or *delight in* or *to*, *to teach*, *to think*, &c.

EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING VERBS.

Come hither, Paul, I have something to communicate to you. -- We have much to fear in our present situation, and a (great many) hazards to run. -- I cannot go to the play to-night; for, I have five or six visits to pay. --- Is there any thing pleasanter
rendre, v. *agréable*

to behold than the flux and reflux of the sea? --- We
voir

(ought to) learn how to subdue our passions,
subjuguer, v.

conquer our desires, and suffer patiently the most cruel misfortunes. --- She is always the first to
disgrâce, f.

(find fault with) what I do. -- Do not gather
trouver à redire à

that apple, it is not yet good to eat. - - - Mr. N. told me you had a country-house to let. - - - Mr. F. is a *louer, v.*

very agreable man, always ready to serve his friends ; but he has the misfortune to be inclined to gaming. *adonné jeu, m.*

- - - Your master does not love you, because you are not diligent in learning your lesson. - - - We had for a long time nothing to eat but the fruits which we had gathered. - - - The greatest part of men spend their time either in doing nothing, or doing what they ought not to do. - - - What you say of her is very hard to believe. - - - *difficile, adj.*

Tell him, I have no complaint to make about his conduct. - - - Why do you oblige her to ask my pardon, *de me, pro.*

since she is not inclined to do it herself ? - - - I believe she takes a delight in tormenting me. - - Life is so short, that we should employ all our days in preparing ourselves for the other world. - - There is no more danger to fear. - - - Use yourself, said a father to his son, to *S'accoutumer, v.*

practise virtue : that alone will help you to bear with *supporter, v.* patience all the vicissitudes of fortune. - - - Never amuse yourself in reading bad books. - - You can never spend *passer, v.*

your time better than in reading and studying the history of your own country. - - Learn to speak well ; but, above all, to speak truth. - - That science which teaches us to *dire, v.*

see things as they are, is highly worthy of cultivation. *bien*

- - An honest man always takes pleasure in obliging his friends. - - - Does your master teach you how to

translate English into French? - - - Do you begin to translate² French³ well¹? - - Why did you not oblige him to pay you what he owes you? - - - Why do you not (get ready) to set out with us? - - - I love to
s'appréter, v.

discourse with polite and sensible people.
s'entretenir, v. *sensé*

N. B. For the sake of euphony, the following verbs, *to begin, to continue, to constrain, to engage, to exhort, to compel, or force, to endeavour, to oblige*, may be succeeded by *de*, or *à*, as most convenient.

The preposition *pour* is to be used before a verb in the infinitive mood, when it expresses the *cause*, the *design*, or the *end*, and then the English particle *to* may be expressed by *in order to, to the end, or for to*. This preposition is also used after the adverbs, *enough, on purpose, too, too much, or less*; and before an infinitive in the beginning of a period.

EXERCISE ON THESE RULES.

I will do (every thing) in my power to please him. - - Good rules are useless, if the attention, industry, and
assiduité,

patience of the scholar be not put into practice to learn them. - - Mrs. B. has (too much) pride to confess she (is in the wrong.) - - To understand² geography³ well¹,
avoir tort

we must, &c. - - I assure you that I came (on purpose)
on *exprès*

to see you. - - She will do all that is in her power to oblige you, and prove to you that she is truly your friend. - - The wicked live to die, but the righteous die to live. - - She has vanity enough to believe all you tell her. - - What makes the misfortunes of kings, is not to have friends bold enough to tell them the truth. - - - I wrote to you some time ago, to let
faire, v

you know that your brothers were arrived. - - - He promised me, that he would do (every thing) to deserve the honour of your protection. - - - I sent yesterday my servant to your aunt's, to desire her to send² me¹ back² again² the book I lent her a month ago, but she was not at home. - - - We did all that we could

faire, v.

to pass the river, but could not (accomplish it.) - - - To *en venir à bout.*

convince you that I am ready to do you any service, (be so kind as) to command me. - - - Why did you not *avoir la bonté, v.*

punish her for having done what you forbade her to do? - - - A man should live a century at least to know

devoir

connaître

the world, and many other centuries to (know how to)

savoir,

make a proper use of that knowledge.

convenable

SECT. X.

OF IDIOMATICAL EXPRESSIONS.

ON THE VERB *AVOIR*, TO HAVE, &c.

<i>Avoir mal à la tête,</i>	{ to have the head-ache, or a pain in the head.
<i>Avoir mal aux oreilles,</i>	{ to have sore ears, or a pain in the ears.
<i>Avoir mal aux yeux,</i>	{ to have sore eyes, or a pain in the eyes.
<i>Avoir mal au nez,</i>	{ to have a sore nose, or a pain in the nose.
<i>Avoir mal à la bouche,</i>	{ to have a sore mouth, or a pain in the mouth.
<i>Avoir mal aux dents, &c.</i>	to have the tooth-ache.

We say, after the same manner, *Avoir froid aux mains, aux pieds, &c.* to be cold in one's hands, &c. ex.

J'ai froid à la tête, aux mains, et aux pieds, My head, my hands, and my feet, are cold.

Avoir beau, to be in vain : ex.

Vous avez beau parler, *It is in vain for you to talk*
Avoir beaucoup de peine, To have much ado.

Avoir de la peine à, to have difficulty in : ex.

J'ai de la peine à vous croire, *I can hardly believe you.*

Avoir besoin de, to want, to have occasion for.

Avoir la bonté de, (daigner,) to be so kind as.

Avoir connaissance, avis de, to have notice of.

Avoir cours, to take, to be in vogue.

Avoir honte, to be ashamed.

Avoir la mine de, to be like, to look like : ex.

Vous avez la mine d'être intelligent, *You look like a man of understanding.*

Avoir pitié de, to pity.

Avoir part au gâteau, to share in the booty.

Avoir bonne mine : ex.

Vous avez très bonne mine aujourd'hui, } *You look very well to-day.*

Avoir plus de peur que de mal, to be more afraid than hurt.

Avoir raison de, to be in the right to.

Avoir soin, to take care.

Avoir tort de, to be in the wrong to.

N'avoir que faire de, { to have no occasion or business of or for.

N'avoir garde de, or } are expressed by { to be sure not to,
Se garder bien de, } or by no means.

Aller son train, to go one's own way.

Aller trouver quelqu'un, to go to somebody.

Venir trouver, to come to.

EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING RULES.

I could not call upon him this morning, because I had a pain in my head. - - - My brother would have come with me, but he has a sore leg, and is obliged to keep his bed. - - - I heard your mother had the tooth-ache : is it true ? No, madam, but she has a pain in her side, which prevents her from (going out.) - - - I have not yet finished my exercise ;

for *my hands were so cold*, that I could not write a single word ; besides, I *had much ado* to find my books. I did not know where (to look for) them. - - - *It will be in vain for you to write to me* : I never will answer you. - - - I *can hardly* believe what you tell me.

It is in vain for me to speak to her : she still goes *her own way*. - - - Miss N. cried very much yesterday, but I think she *was more afraid than hurt*. - - *It has been in vain for him to torment your sister* : she never would tell him what happened to her when she was at Mr P.'s. - - - Go to him, and tell him that, unless he returns me my books in a very short time, I will desire

his father to send them to me : when you have told him that, do not (wait for) his answer : *come to me* immediately ; I shall be at your mother's, where I (am to) dine, and thence go to the play with the² whole¹ family.

- - - *In vain* I give myself trouble : I am not the richer for it. - - - Your sister does not *look so well* to-day as she did yesterday. - - - *Am I not in the right* to go there no more ? - - - I *will take care* to prevent them from coming hither. - - - Believe me, I have long suspected them, and now I am very certain that both your cousins and they *have had a share in the booty*. - - - *We should often be ashamed* of our finest actions, if the world knew all the motives which produce them. - - -

You are in the wrong not to (ask for) his horse : he would lend it to you. - - Why should I borrow his horse, when I have one (of my own ?) - - - I *have no occasion for*

his - - - *Be so kind as to* carry that letter to Mr. H.'s ; but *be sure not to* tell him who sent you. - - - I hope

you will *by no means* go there again after what has happened to you. - - - He was so altered, that she *had much ado* to recollect him ; but he now begins *to look very remettre well*. - - - Somebody having advised Philip, Alexander's father, to banish from his states a man who had spoken ill of him : I *shall by no means do it*, answered he, he would go every where and speak ill of me.

ON *ETRE*, TO BE.

<i>Etre</i>	{ <i>à son aise,</i> <i>en bonne passe,</i> <i>bien dans ses affaires,</i>	{ to be in good circumstances.
<i>Etre bien auprès de quelqu'un,</i>	{	{ to be in favour with some one.
<i>Etre mal avec quelqu'un,</i>	{	{ to be out of favour with some one.
<i>Etre à charge à quelqu'un,</i>	{	{ to be chargeable, troublesome, or a burden to some one.
<i>Etre but à but,</i>	to be equal.	
<i>Etre à moitié,</i>	to go halves.	
<i>Etre à la portée du fusil, du canon,</i>	{	{ to be within musket shot, gun-shot.
<i>Etre à la portée de la voix,</i>	to be within call.	
<i>Etre</i>	{ <i>à la veille de,</i> <i>sur le point de,</i>	{ to be upon the brink, or very near to.
<i>Etre en état de,</i> <i>Avoir le moyen de,</i>	{	{ to be able to afford.

EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

Your brother is *in good circumstances* now. - - - Somebody told me he *was in favour with* the king. - - - Yes, it is true, but he is *out of favour* with my father, because he is *troublesome* to the family. - - - Well, Mr. *Eh bien,*
R. and he *are equals*. - - - I thought Mr. A. and Mrs. D. *went halves* in that affair, but I heard the contrary

--- Suffer me to tell you, you do very wrong to treat
permettre,
 her as you do : you undoubtedly must have forgotten
 she is in the queen's *favour*. --- Well, though she *be* in
 the queen's *favour*, do you imagine I am not to tell her
 what I think of her conduct ? --- The two fleets *were*
within gun-shot, and *very near* beginning the engagement,
combat,
 when we left them. --- *We will be within call.* ---
 Why do you not take a coach now and then ? said she
 to me. I would willingly take one sometimes, replied I
 to her, but I *cannot afford* it.

ON FAIRE, TO MAKE, OR DO.

Faire cas de, to value, to esteem.

Faire un tour de promenade, to take a walk.

Faire le malade, to sham sickness.

Faire l'école buissonnière, to play truant.

Faire beaucoup de chemin, to go a great way.

Faire le bel esprit, to set up for a wit.

Faire fond sur quelqu'un, to rely upon one.

Faire savoir, (envoyer dire,) { to let one know, to inform,
to send word.

*Faire voile, or
Mettre à la voile,* } to set sail.

Mettre à la voile, } to set sail.

Faire faire, to bespeak, to get made, to oblige one to do.

Faire de son mieux, to do one's best

Faire semblant, to pretend.

Faire de son pis, to do one's worst.

Ne faire que ¹*de*, to be just, or

Venir de, to have but just : ex.

Il ne fait que d'arriver, He is but just arrived.

Ne faire que, to do nothing but.

Se faire des amis, des ennemis, to get friends, enemies.

Se faire des affaires, to bring one's self into trouble.

S'en faire accroire, { to be conceited, to have a good
 opinion of one's self.

C'en est fait de moi, I am undone, it is over with me.

C'en était fait de lui, he was undone, it was over with him

C'en sera fait d'elle, { she will be undone, it will be over
with her.

C'en serait fait de nous, { we should be undone, it would
be over with us.

The English verb *to cause*, preceding the verb *to be*, immediately followed by a participle passive, is rendered in French, by the verb *faire*, and then the verb *to be* is not expressed, but the participle passive is turned into the infinitive mood : ex.

Il lui fit couper la tête, He caused his head to be cut off.

EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

Do not lose that ring, for I *value* it much ; it is a particular friend of yours who gave it me. - - - I would go and *take a walk*, if I were well. - - - Do you not *sham sickness* now and then ? - - - Did not your brother *play truant* last week ? - - - That man *goes a great way* for a trifle. - - - Mr. P. *sets up for a wit*, wherever he goes. You may *rely upon* what I tell you. - - - He succeeds better *in being conceited*, than in giving others a
à à
good opinion of himself. - - - I begin to be (very much) satisfied with his brother, who now *does his best*, and will soon be able to write a French letter to his father. - - - *Let me know* whether he will pay you or not. - - - *We shall set sail* about the fifteenth of next month. - - - Why did not you *bespeak* three or four pairs of shoes more ? - - - *Send word to your* brother, or *let him know*, that there is a letter for him here. - - - I will give him an exercise, and *oblige him to do it* in my presence. - - - She told me if she *were obliged to do it*, she *would do her worst*. - - - She *pretends not to*
de
listen, but I assure you she does not lose a word of what you say. - - - We were *but just* (come in) when it began

to rain - - It would have been something to us, could the enemy have known what passed in our camp. - - - You do nothing but play, from morning till night. - - - That young lady will get friends every where. - - - If you do not take care, you will bring yourself into trouble. - - - Permit me to tell you, that they are too much conceited.
de

- - - Your brother is undone, if his master comes to know of it. - - - The king caused them to be put to prison. - - - He caused a superb palace to be built.

ON DIFFERENT VERBS.

Aimer mieux, to have rather, to choose rather.

Se donner bien des airs, to take a great deal upon one's self.

Il ne faut pas s'étonner, it is no wonder.

Il me tarde de, I long to.

Penser, to be like. (Followed by a verb in the infinitive mood.)

S'en prendre à, { to lay the fault or blame upon one, to
look to one for.

S'y bien prendre, or { to go the right way to

S'y prendre de la bonne façon, { work.

S'y prendre mal, to go the wrong way to work.

S'y prendre tout autrement, { to go quite a different, or
another way to work.

Prendre en mauvaise part, to take amiss.

Venir à bout de, to bring about, to accomplish.

EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

I choose rather, to (set out) now than later. - - - She
told me she had rather speak to any other person than
to Mr. L. - - - They had rather have had you stay in
Italy two or three years longer. - - - Do not you think
de plus

Mrs. H. takes a great deal upon herself? - - - It is no wonder that I do not speak French so well as you; you have been several years in France, and I never was there

- - I hope your brother will succeed in his undertaking ; for, he goes *the right way to work*, and I am certain that he *will bring it about*. - - - Your cousin, on the contrary, will always be poor ; for, he goes *the wrong way to work* in (every thing) he undertakes. - - - She longs to see your father, and tell him you behaved well all the time of his absence. - - - I *had like* (to have ^{être,} been) killed in coming here. - - - If he lose, he *will lay the blame upon you*. - - - Why do you *lay the blame upon* her ? she was not even in the room when that happened. - - - Should not your sister succeed, whom *would she lay the fault upon* ? - - - You say you long to speak French ; and I too, I assure you. - - - I long to tell you something ; nevertheless, I do not know how to communicate it to you, for fear of disobliging you. - - - When you have a mind to tell me something disagreeable, you should *go quite a different way to work*. - - - I beg of you not to take amiss what I tell you. - - -
 prier, *or*
 Do not begin a thing unless you are sure to bring it about.
 de

ON DIFFERENT VERBS.

Se passer de, to do, to live without, or to be easy without
Savoir bon gré, to take kindly of.

Trouver mauvais que, to take ill if.*

Trouver à redire à, to find fault with.

Tenir maison, to be a house-keeper.

Tenir boutique, to be a shop-keeper.

Tenir parole, to keep one's word.

Ne tenir qu'à { to be in a person's power.
 { to lie in a person's power : ex

* With the following verb in the subjunctive.

Il ne tient qu'à moi, à vous, It is in my, your, his, her
à lui, à elle, &c. power, &c.

Il ne tient pas à moi, à vous, It is not my, your, fault, &c
&c. que, if.*

S'en tenir à, to stand to.

Vouloir du bien à, to wish one well.

En vouloir à, to have a spite against.

Je souhaiterais pouvoir, I wish I could.

Il y va, il y allait, de votre vie, your life is, was, at stake.

Il y va, il y allait, de mon honneur, { my honour is, was
concerned in it.

Je ne laisse pas de, nevertheless, or for all that, I.

EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

When I have wine, I drink some ; but when I have none, I am easy without it. - - - If you will be so kind as to write to my father, to let him know my situation, I shall take it kindly of you, and promise you never to find fault with what you may recommend to me. - - - I wish I could do you that service ; I would do it with all my heart. - - - I hope you will not take it ill, if I write to your uncle (at the) same time. - - - I shall stand to

en what you say. - - - He has been a house-keeper these five and twenty years. - - - He might have succeeded much better than he has done, had he followed his uncle's advice and mine ; but he never was satisfied, and was continually finding fault with what we were telling him. - - - However little you send him at present, he will take it kindly of you. - - - It is in her power to live in the coun-

de try, and be very happy there. - - - It will soon lie in your power to make us happy - - - I assure you it shall not be

de my fault, if you do not succeed ; for I wish you well. - - - Since it lies in your power to recommend Mr. P. to your

de friend, why do you not do it ? - - - When you see him.

* With the following verb in the subjunctive, and *ne* before it.

you may assure him, that, since it is in my power to do it, I will not forget him. - - - *You have a spite against my brother ; because it was in his power, two or three times to oblige you, and he never would. - - - I wish I could persuade you how sorry he was for it ; but his honour was concerned in not doing it ; and, though you be*

de
very angry with him, he *would, nevertheless, (or, for all that,)* do you service if it were in his power. - - - Had I thought he would have refused me that favour, I never would have asked it (of him ;) I might very well have

lui
done without it. - - - You ought to have thanked him for that attention, instead of being angry with him ; but
de *contre*
when your sisters heard that you could not obtain his leave, *they took it amiss, and have (ever since) had a spite*
congé

against him. - - - When they told me (of it,) I would most

le
willingly have represented to them (how much) they *were in the wrong :* but I would *by no means* do it ; for I know it is in their power to do me (a great deal) of harm, and I do not wish to *get enemies. - - - Every body admires*

de
her humanity ; for, though he has behaved in so ungrateful a manner towards her, she would, *nevertheless, have*
done him service, if he had lived.

GENERAL AND PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

OF THE UNDERSTANDING OF LANGUAGES.

The understanding of languages serves (for an) *intelligence, f.* *de*
introduction to all the sciences. By it we come with
parvenir, v
very little trouble at the knowledge of (a great
peine

many) fine things, which have cost those who invented them (a great deal) of pains. By it all times and countries lie open to us. By it *siècle, m.* *pays* *être, v.* we become, in some measure, contemporary to all ages, and inhabitants of all kingdoms. It (enables) us to converse with the most learned men of all antiquity, who seem to have lived and laboured for us. We find (in them) many masters, whom (we are allowed) to consult at leisure ; many friends who are always at hand, and whose useful and agreeable conversation improves the mind. It informs us of a thousand curious subjects, and teaches us equally (how to derive an advantage) of the virtues and vices of mankind. Without the assistance of languages, all these oracles are dumb to us, and all these treasures (locked up ;) and for want of having the key, which alone can open us the door (to them,) we remain poor (in the) midst of (so many) riches, and ignorant in the midst of all the sciences.

OF STUDY.

We (come into the world) surrounded with a cloud of ignorance, which is increased by the false prejudices of a bad education. By study, the former

* See the observation on the preposition *with*, page 379.

is dispersed, and the latter corrected. It gives proportion and exactness to our thoughts and reasoning ; instructs how to range in due order what-

ever we have to speak or write ; and presents us with the brightest sages of antiquity as patterns for our

conduct ; those sages, in this sense, we may call, with Seneca, the masters, and teachers of mankind. But

Sénèque précepteur,m. the usefulness of study is not confined to what we

call science ; it renders us also more fit for business and employment ; besides, though this study

were of no other use but (the acquiring) a habit of labour, (the softening) the pains of it, (the pro-

curing) a steadiness of mind and (conquering) our aversion to application or a sedentary life, or

whatever else seems (to lay a restraint upon) us, it would still be of very great advantage. In reality,

it draws us off from idleness, play, and debauchery. It usefully (fills up) the vacant hours of the day, and

renders very agreeable that leisure, which, without the assistance of literature, is a kind of death, and, in a manner, the grave of a man while he is alive. It en-

ables us to pass a right judgment upon other men's

* These participles active are to be rendered in French by the infinitive, and the conjunction and preposition should be repeated before each.

† Repeat this same preposition before each verb.

labours, to enter into society with men of understanding,
 to keep ^{en} the best company, to (have a share in)
^{fréquenter, v.} ^{esprit} ^{prendre part à}
 the discourses of the most learned, to furnish out matter
 for conversation, without which we must be silent ; to
^{quoi}
 render it more agreeable and more useful, by intermix
 ing facts with reflections, and setting the one by the
^{relever, v.}
 other.

SECT. XI.

SCHEME FOR PARSING A SENTENCE.

As it is very essential to the thorough learning of a language, not to mistake one part of speech for another, we finish this grammar by giving a classical and methodical scheme for parsing a sentence. The examples, with very little change, may suit any language.

Article. *Questions :* Is it definite, partitive, or indefinite ? What gender ? What number ?

Examples. *Le pouvoir du roi ; the power of the king : la liberté des hommes ; the liberty of men : J'ai du pain, de la viande, des pommes ; I have bread, meat, apples : La sœur de Pierre ; Peter's sister.*

Application. *Le*, definite art. m.—*du*, contraction of *de le*, genitive defi. art. m.—*La*, definite art. f.—*des* contraction of *de les*, genitive defi. art. both genders, pl.—*du*, in the sense of *some*, part. art. m.—*de la*, in the sense of *some*, part. art. f.—*des*, in the sense of *some*, part. art. both genders, pl.—*de*, indefinite art. both genders and numbers geni. and abl.—*à* dat. indef. art.

Substantive. *Questions :* What gender ? What number ? If the noun singular, name its plural ; if plural, name its singular.

Examples. *Le pouvoir du roi ; la liberté des hommes ; le prix des denrées, the price of provisions.*

Application. *Pouvoir*, substantive, m. *pouvoirs* for its pl.—*liberté*, subst. f. *libertés* for its pl.—*Prix*, subst. m. *prix* for its pl.—*Denrées* subst. f. pl. *denrée* for its singular.

Adjective. *Questions* : What gender ? What number ? What does it agree with in the sentence ? If it be masculine, name its fem. If it be feminine, name its masc.

Examples. Un beau chapeau, a fine hat ; ces femmes sont jolies, those ladies are pretty ; cette fille est orgueilleuse, that girl is proud.

Application. Beau, noun adj. m. agrees with chapeau ; it has belle for its feminine.—Jolies, noun adj. f. pl. agrees with femmes ; it has joli for its masculine.—Orgueilleuse, noun adj. f. agrees with fille ; it has orgueilleux for its masculine.

Pronoun. *Questions* : Is it personal, conjunctive, possessive, relative, demonstrative, interrogative, or indefinite ? What gender ? What number ? With what does it agree in the sentence ?

Examples. Elle a mon livre, she has my book. Cette plume ne vaut rien, this pen is good for nothing. L'homme qui vous parlait, the man who was speaking to you. Il y a plusieurs années, several years ago. Quel homme ? What man ?

Application. Elle, pronoun pers. f. agrees with a. Mon, pronoun poss. m. agrees with livre. Cette, pronoun demonstr. f. agrees with plume. Qui, pronoun rel. both genders and numbers, agrees with homme. Plusieurs, pronoun indef. pl. both genders, agrees with années. Quel ? pron. int. m. agrees with homme.

Verb. *Questions* : Name its infinitive—its person—its number—its tense—its mode.

Examples. Pendant qu'ils étaient ensemble, j'entendis sonner midi ; while they were together, I heard twelve o'clock strike. Quoiqu'il paraisse heureux, n'enviez pas son sort ; though he may appear happy, do not envy his situation.

Application. Étaient, from être ; 3d pers. pl. imperf tense, indic. mood. Entendis, from entendre ; 1st pers. sing. preterite, indicative mood. Paraisse, from paraître, 3d pers. sing. pres. tense, subjunc. mood. Enviez, from envier ; 2d pers. pl. imperat. mood.

Preposition. What does it govern in the sentence ?

Examples. Avant midi ; sans argent ; before noon : without money.

Application. *Avant*, a preposition, governs *midi* : *Sans*, a preposition, governs *argent*.

Conjunction. What mood does it require ? Name the verb it acts upon in the sentence.

Examples. *Lorsque* le roi entra, when the king came in. *Quoique* vous soyez riche, though you be rich. Je lis pour m'amuser, I read to amuse myself.

Application. *Lorsque*, a conjunction, requires the indic. Here it governs *entra*. *Quoique*, a conjunction, requires the subjunc. Here it governs *soyez*. *Pour*, a conjunction, requires the infinitive. Here it governs *amuser*.

Adverbs and interjections. Only name them

Examples. *Ah !* mon ami, agissez prudemment ; ah, my friend, act prudently.

Application. *Ah* is an interjection.—*Prudemment* is an adverb.

A B R É G É

DE LA VERSIFICATION FRANÇAISE.

Les vers, à ne les considérer que sous le rapport de leur mécanisme, sont des paroles arrangées selon certaines règles fixes et déterminées.

Ces règles regardent sur-tout le nombre des syllabes, la césure, la rime, les mots que le vers exclut, les licences qu'il permet, et enfin les différentes manières dont il doit être arrangé dans chaque sorte de Poème.

Des différentes espèces de Vers Français.

On compte ordinairement cinq sortes de vers français. C'est par le nombre des syllabes qu'on les distingue

1^o. Ceux de douze syllabes, comme :

Dans le ré-duit ob-scurd'u-ne al-co-ve en-fon-cée
S'élè-ve un lit de plu-me à grands frais a-mas-sée ;
Qua-tre ri-deaux pom-peux, par un dou-ble con-tour,
En dé-fen-dent l'en-trée à la clar-té du jour.

Ces vers s'appellent *alexandrins*, *héroïques* ou *grands vers*.

2^o. Ceux de dix syllabes, comme :

Du peu qu'il a le sage est sa-tis-fait.

3^o. Ceux de huit syllabes, comme :

L'hi-po-cri-te eu frau-des fer-ti-le.
Dès l'en-fan-ce est pẽ-tri de fard ;
Il sait co-lo-rer a-vec art
Le fiel que sa bou-che dis-tille.

4^o. Ceux de sept syllabes, comme :

Grand Dieu ! vo-tre main ré-clame
Les dons que j'en ai re-çus.
El-le vient cou-per la trame
Des jours qu'el-le m'a tis-sus.
Mon der-nier so-leil se lève,
Et vo-tre souf-fle m'en-lève,
De la ter-re des vi-vans ;
Com-me la feuil-le sé-chée
Qui, de sa ti-ge ar-ra-chée,
De-vient le jou-et des vents.

5^o. Ceux de six syllabes, comme :

A soi-même o-di-eux
Le sot de tout s'ir-ri-te :
En tous lieux il s'é-vite,
Et se trouve en tous lieux.

Les vers qui ont moins de six syllabes ne sont guère d'usage que pour la poésie lyrique, et quelques petites pièces badines.

DE LA CÉSURE.

La césure est un repos qui coupe le vers en deux parties ou hémistiches.

Ce repos doit être à la sixième syllabe dans les grands vers, et à la quatrième dans ceux de dix syllabes. L'esprit et l'usage de la césure sont très-bien exprimés dans ces vers de Boileau.

Que toujours en vos vers, - le sens coupant les mots,
Suspende l'hémistiche, - en marque le repos.
Sur les ailes du temps - la tristesse s'envole.

Que le mensonge - un instant vous outrage,
Tout est en feu - soudain pour l'appuyer ;
La vérité - perce enfin le nuage,
Tout est de glace - à vous justifier.

Il n'y a que les vers de douze et de dix syllabes qui aient une césure.

Pour que la césure soit bonne, il faut que le sens autorise le repos ; ainsi dans les vers suivants la césure est défectueuse.

N'oublions pas les grands - bienfaits de la patrie.
Faites voir un regret - sincère de vos fautes.
Mon père, quoiqu'il eût - la tête des meilleurs,
Ne m'a jamais rien fait - apprendre que mes heures.

La césure ne vaut rien dans ces exemples, parce que le sens exige que le mot où est la césure, et celui qui le suit, soient prononcés tout de suite et sans pause.

Mais la césure est bonne dans les vers suivants ;

Ses chanoines vermeils - et brillants de santé
S'engraissaient d'une longue - et sainte oisiveté

Ici la césure est bonne, parce qu'on peut faire une petite pause après un substantif suivi de plusieurs adjectifs, ou entre plusieurs adjectifs qui suivent ou qui précèdent un substantif.

I. REMARQUE. Le dernier mot du premier hémistiche peut se terminer par l'e muet, pourvu que le mot suivant commence par une voyelle.

Ami lui dit le chanfre encor pâle d'horreur,
N'insulte pas de grâce à ma juste terreur.
Il trépigne de joie, il pleure de tendresse.

II. REM. Les pronoms *cela*, *celui*, *celui-là*, etc. et de *qui* mis pour *dont*, peuvent aussi terminer le premier hémistiché, ou recevoir la césure ; on souffre cette négligence, mais il faut se la permettre rarement ; elle donne toujours aux vers un air prosaïque.

Il n'est fort entre ceux que tu prends par centaines,
 Qui ne puisse arrêter un rimeur six semaines :
 Bénissons Dieu de qui la puissance est sans bornes.

Les vers de dix et de douze syllabes sont comme tous les autres, assujétis aux règles dont il nous reste à parler.

DE LA RIME.

La Rime est la convenance de deux sons qui terminent deux vers. Quelquefois on exige aussi qu'il y ait convenance d'orthographe, que deux sons semblables soient représentés par les mêmes lettres.

Où me cacher ? fuyons dans la nuit infernale.
 Mais que dis-je ? mon père y tient l'urne fatale.
 Le sort, dit-on, l'a mise en ses sévères mains.
 Minos juge aux enfers tous les pâles humains.

On distingue deux sortes de rimes, la féminine et la masculine. La première est celle des vers qui se terminent par un *e* muet, soit seul, soit suivi d'une *s* ou d'*nt*.

Travaillez à loisir, quelque ordre qui vous presse,
 Et ne vous piquez point d'une folle vitesse.
 Il veut les rappeler, et sa voix les effraie ;
 Ils courent ; tout son corps n'est bientôt qu'une plaie.
 Dans quels ravissements, à votre sort liée,
 Du reste des mortels je vivrais oubliée.
 Un jeune homme, toujours bouillant dans ses caprices,
 Est prêt à recevoir l'impression des vices.
 C'est peu qu'en un ouvrage où les fautes fourmillent,
 Des traits d'esprit semés de temps en temps pétillent.

Ces vers féminins ont une syllabe de plus que les masculins : mais comme l'*e* muet sonne faiblement dans la syllabe qui termine le vers, cette syllabe est comptée pour rien.

La rime masculine est celle qui finit par une autre lettre que l'*e* muet, ou seul, ou suivi d'une *s*, ou enfin d'*nt*.

Chaque vertu devient une divinité ;
 Minerve est la prudence, et Vénus la beauté.
 Le travail est souvent le père du plaisir ;
 Je plains l'homme accablé du poids de son loisir.

REMARQUE La syllabe *oient* ou *aient*, qui se trouve dans

les imparfaits et les conditionnels des verbes, forme une rime masculine, parce que cette syllabe a le son de l'é ouvert. Ainsi les vers suivants sont masculins.

Aux accords d'Amphion les pierres se mouvaient,
Et sur les murs Thébains en ordre s'élevaient.

RIMES RICHES ET SUFFISANTES.

Les rimes masculines et féminines se divisent en *riches* et en *suffisantes*.

I La rime riche est formée de deux sons parfaitement semblables, et souvent représentés par les mêmes lettres.

Indomptable Taureau, Dragon impétueux,
Sa croupe se recoube en replis tortueux.
De rage et de douleur le monstre bondissant,
Vient aux pieds des chevaux tomber en mugissant.
Au moment que je parle, ah! mortelle pensée !
Ils bravent la fureur d'une amante insensée.

II. La rime suffisante est celle qui n'a pas une convenance aussi exacte de sons et d'orthographe.

Hélas ! Dieux tout-puissans, que nos pleurs vous apaisent,
Que ces vains ornements, que ces voiles me pèsent !
Quelle importune main, en formant tous ces nœuds,
A pris soin sur mon front d'assembler mes cheveux ?

III. Dans la rime masculine, on n'a guère égard en général, qu'au dernier son des mots : ainsi *maison* rime avec *poison* ; *piété* avec *pureté* ; *procès* avec *succès*.

IV. Mais dans la rime féminine, on fait une attention particulière au son de l'avant dernière syllabe, parce que celui de la dernière n'est ni assez plein, ni assez marqué, pour produire une conformité de son sensible et agréable à l'oreille. Ainsi *mère* et *mâre*, *audace* et *justice*, *estime* et *diadème* ne rimeraient pas ensemble, quoique ces mots se terminent par la même syllabe *re, ce, me*.

Mais *visible* et *sensible*, *monde* et *profonde*, *justice* et *précipice*, *usage* et *partage*, peuvent rimer ensemble, parce que ces mots ont une convenance de sons dans les avant-dernières syllabes.

V. Comme la convenance de sons est essentielle à la rime, on ne saurait bien faire rimer les syllabes brèves avec les longues, les *l* mouillées, avec les *l* non mouillées, etc. comme *maître* et *mètre* ; *jouïte* et *route* ; *jeune* (qui n'est pas vieux) et *jeûne* (abstinence) ; la *filie* et la *file* ; *péril* et *puéril*, etc. Ainsi J. B. Rousseau a manqué à son exactitude ordinaire, quand il disait à son ami ;

Et sur ce bord émaillé
Où Neuilli borde la Seine,
Reviens au vin d'*Auvilé*,
Mêler les eaux d'Hypocrène.

VI. L'*é* fermé, l'*i* et l'*u*, soit seuls, soit suivis des consonnes, *l*, *s*, *t*, ou *z*, ne forment pas de bonnes rimes, si dans les deux syllabes rimantes ils ne sont précédés de la même consonne. Ainsi *bonté* et *donné*, *vertus* et *reçus*, *amis* et *avis*, *cultivez* et *dortez*, ne rameraient pas bien.

Choisissez des amis de qui la piété
Vous soit un sûr garant de leur fidélité.
Ami droit et sincère on doit à ses amis
Garder fidèlement ce qu'on leur a promis.

VII. L'observation précédente a lieu pour l'*a* dans les verbes : il *donna* et il *aima*, il *porta* et il *rêva*, il *immola* et il *saura*, ne rameraient pas ensemble. Et en général elle est d'usage pour tous les sons communs à un grand nombre de mots. Ainsi les sons *ant* ou *ent*, *eu* et *on* ne riment bien qu'autant qu'ils sont précédés des mêmes lettres, comme *puissant*, *chassant* ; *agrément*, *régiment* ; *passion*, *mission* ; *ambitieux*, *religieux* ; *vieux*, *mieux*.

Mais les mots suivants ne rameraient pas bien ensemble : *puissant*, *chancelant* ; *raison*, *passion* ; *heureux* *religieux*, etc.

VIII. Quand la rime est formée par des sons pleins, comme *ar*, *as*, *at*, *or*, *os*, *ot*, *er* *ès*, *et*, *ai*, *ei*, *oi*, *eau*, *eu*, *ou* ; par *an*, *am*, *en*, *em*, *ion*, *oin* ; en un mot par des voyelles précédées d'une ou de plusieurs consonnes, alors on n'exige pas que la lettre qui précède soit la même dans les mots qu'on veut faire rimer. Par exemple, *embarras* et *combat*, *gros* et *sots*, *progrès* et *succès*, *mer* et *enfer*, *ouver* et *souffert*, *soupir* et *désir*, *espoir* et *devoir*, *jamais* et *parfaits*, *pain* et *main*, *nuit* et *conduit*, *témoins* et *besoins*, *soutiens* et *conviens*, et autres semblables peuvent rimer ensemble.

IX. Un mot en *s*, *x*, ou *z*, ne peut rimer qu'avec un mot terminé par l'une de ces trois consonnes. Ainsi *admirable* et *tables*, *risible* et *plausibles*, le *secours* et le *jour*, la *vanité* et vous *méritez*, la *foi* et les *lois*, le *courroux* et le *genou*, etc. ne rimeront pas bien ensemble.

Mais *lois* et *Rois*, *courroux* et *tous*, *célestes* et tu *détestes*, *vanités* et vous *méditez*, *clefs* et vous *raclez* le *discours* et le *cours*, formeront de bonnes rimes.

X. Dans les verbes *ois* et *oit*, avant le son de l'*è* ou

vert, ne riment guère qu'avec un autre verbe. Quoique *j'aimois et jamais, donnois et harnois, plaçoit et lacet, manquoit et banquet, je déplaçois et les succès*, se terminent par le même son, l'usage ordinaire est de ne les pas faire rimer ensemble.

XI. Les terminaisons *ent, oient, ou, aient*, ne doivent rimer qu'avec des verbes qui aient les mêmes terminaisons : ils *privent*, ils *écrivent* ; ils *lurent*, ils *burent* ; qu'ils *surfassent*, qu'ils *effacent* ; etc. mais ils *méprisent* ne rimeraient pas bien avec *entreprise* ; la *surface* avec ils *surpassent*.

XII. La convenance des sons et d'orthographe ne peut autoriser la rime du mot avec lui-même, d'un simple avec son composé, ni même de deux mots dérivés de la même racine, quand ils se ressemblent trop pour la signification. Ainsi la rime est défectueuse dans ces vers :

Je connais trop les Grands dans le malheur *amis*,
Ingrats dans la fortune, et bientôt *ennemis*.

Elle est tout-à-fait vicieuse dans ceux-ci :

Les chefs et les soldats ne se connaissent *plus* :
L'un ne peut commander, l'autre n'obéit *plus*.

XIII. Mais deux mots entièrement semblables par le son et l'orthographe riment bien ensemble, lorsqu'ils ont des significations différentes. Les dérivés sont dans le même cas, s'ils n'ont plus un rapport sensible pour le sens.

Prends-moi le bon parti, laisse là tous les *livres* ;
Cent francs au denier cinq, combien font-ils ? vingt *livres*
Nobles, souvenez-vous qu'une naissance *illustre*.
Des sentimens du cœur reçoit son plus beau *lustre*.
Dieu punit les forfaits que les rois ont *commis*,
Ceux qu'ils n'ont point vengés, et ceux qu'ils ont *permis*.

XIV. Les deux hémistiches d'un vers ne doivent pas rimer ensemble, ni même avoir une convenance de sons comme :

Il ne tiendra qu'à *toi* de partir avec *moi*,
Aux Saumaises *futurs* préparer des *tortures*.

XV. Le dernier hémistiche d'un vers ne doit pas non plus rimer avec le premier du vers précédent ou du vers suivant.

Il faut, pour les avoir, employer tous vos *soins* ;
Ils sont à moi, du *moins* tout autant qu'à mon frère.

Un fiacre, me couvrant d'un déluge de boue
 Contre le mur *voisin* m'écrase de sa roue ;
 Et, voulant me sauver, des porteurs *inhumains*
 De leur maudit bâton me donnent dans les reins.

XVI. Il faut encore éviter la rime dans les premiers hémistiches de deux vers qui se suivent.

Sinon demain *matin* si vous le trouvez bon,
 Je mettrai de *ma main* le feu dans la maison.

Quelquefois cependant la rime des premiers hémistiches n'a rien de choquant ; c'est lorsqu'elle se fait par la répétition d'une pensée, d'une expression qu'on reproduit à dessein, pour fixer davantage l'attention du lecteur ; comme :

Qui cherche *vraiment Dieu*, dans lui seul se repose ;
 Et qui craint *vraiment Dieu*, ne craint rien autre chose.

Des termes que le vers exclut.

1. Les bons Poètes rejettent avec soin tous les termes durs, ou difficiles à prononcer, ou bas et prosaïques. Rarement ils se servent des conjonctions que les orateurs emploient souvent pour lier et arrondir leurs périodes ; telles que *c'est pourquoi, parce que, pourvu que, puisque, de manière, de façon que, desorte que ou en sorte que, outre, d'ailleurs, et, effet*, etc.

Il est un heureux choix de mots harmonieux,
 Fuyez des mauvais sons le concours odieux
 Le vers le mieux rempli, la plus noble pensée,
 Ne peut plaire à l'esprit, quand l'oreille est blessée.

II. Un mot terminé par une autre voyelle que l'*e* muet, ne peut être suivi d'un mot qui commence aussi par une voyelle ou une *h* muette : ce serait un *hiatus*.

Gardez qu'une voyelle à courir trop hâtée.
 Ne soit d'une voyelle en son chemin heurtée.

Ainsi les phrases suivantes ne formeraient pas de vers.

Que l'aimable vertu a peu d'adorateurs !
 Evitez le souci, et fuyez la colère.

III. Comme la conjonction *et* a toujours le son de l'*é* fermé, elle ne saurait non plus dans le vers être suivie d'une voyelle. On ne pourrait pas dire en vers :

Qui sert *et* aime Dieu, possède toutes choses,

Mais on dira bien :

Qui connaît et sert Dieu, possède toutes choses

IV. Les voyelles nasales qui, dans la prononciation ne doivent pas être liées avec le mot suivant, ne peuvent avec grâce être suivies d'un mot qui commence par une voyelle. Ainsi la rencontre des voyelles nasales et des voyelles simples est désagréable dans ce vers :

Un grand *nom* est un poids difficile à porter.

Ah ! j'attendrai long-temps, la nuit est *loin* encore.

Cependant cette rencontre peut se souffrir, quand la prononciation permet de pratiquer un petit repos entre le mot qui finit par un son nasal, et le mot qui commence par une voyelle ; comme dans ce vers de l'*Athalie* de Racine :

Celui qui met un *frein* à la fureur des flots,

Sait aussi des méchants arrêter les complots.

V. L'e muet final et précédé d'une voyelle, comme dans *donnée, aimée, Asie, envie, la paie, la joie, la proie, la rue, entrevue*, etc. ne peut entrer dans le corps du vers qu'au moyen de l'élision ; ainsi les vers suivants sont mal construits :

Au travers du Soleil, ma *vue*, s'éblouit.

Ils vous *louent* tout haut et vous *jouent* tout bas.

Il *avoue* sa faute et demande pardon.

Mais ceux-ci sont réguliers à cause de l'élision,

La *joie* est naturelle aux âmes innocentes.

A quels mortels regrets ma *vie* est réservée !

VI. L'e muet, dans le corps du mot et précédé d'une voyelle, est compté pour rien dans la prononciation ; souvent même on ne l'écrit pas. Il *agréera, criera, louera, reniement, dévouement*, etc. ne font pas plus de syllabes que *agréra, crîra, louîra, renîment, dénoûment*.

ENJAMBEMENT DES VERS.

Les vers n'ont ni grâce ni harmonie, quand on rejette au commencement du second vers des mots qui dépendent nécessairement de ce qui se trouve à la fin du premier.

Quel que soit votre ami, sachez que mutuelle

Doit être l'amitié ; même ardeur même zèle.

Il n'est donc point d'amis, pour la dernière fois

Je le répète encor : peu connaissent les lois

D'une vraie amitié.

Dans le premier vers, *mutuelle* dépend nécessairement de ces mots *dout être l'amitié*.

Dans les derniers, ces mots *d'une vraie amitié* sont dépendants de ceux-ci, *les lois*, et l'on ne peut les séparer dans la prononciation.

Ces enjambements sont proscrits dans la haute poésie, mais ils se tolèrent dans les fables et dans les autres pièces de style familier.

Si néanmoins la dépendance d'un vers s'étendait jusqu'à la fin du suivant, en sorte qu'à la fin du premier il y eût un petit repos, l'harmonie loin d'être blessée n'en serait que plus sensible.

Là gît la sombre envie, à l'œil timide et louche,
Versant sur des lauriers les poisons de sa bouche.
Ce malheureux combat ne fit qu'approfondir
L'abîme dont Valois voulait en vain sortir.—VOLT.

Des licences qu'on se permet dans les Vers.

Des licences consistent dans certaines dispositions de mots, dans l'emploi de plusieurs termes dont la prose n'oserait se servir, dans le retranchement d'une lettre.

DES TRANSPOSITIONS.

I. On place avec grâce les régimes composés avant les mots et les verbes dont ils dépendent

A la Religion soyez toujours fidèle,
Les mœurs et la vertu ne sauvent point sans elle.
C'est Dieu qui *du néant* a tiré l'univers ;
C'est lui qui *sur la terre* a répandu les mers.
Sans Dieu rien n'eût été.

Et lui seul *des mortels* fait la félicité.

A vous former le cœur appliquez-vous sans cesse.

II. On place entre l'auxiliaire et le participe, entre le verbe et son régime, des mots qui n'y seraient pas soufferts en prose.

Un vieillard vénérable avait, *loin de la Cour*,
Cherché la douce paix dans un obscur séjour :
Dieu fit *dans ce désert* descendre la sagesse.

Les transpositions, quand elles sont naturelles, et qu'elles n'embarrassent pas le sens de la phrase, donnent de la grâce et de la noblesse à la poésie ; mais elles ne valent rien, lorsqu'elles rendent le vers dur, ou qu'elles obscurcissent la pensée, comme dans les vers suivants :

Quoi ! voit-on revêtu de l'étoile sacrée
Le prêtre *de l'autel* s'arrêter à l'entrée ?
Craignez *de votre orgueil* de vous rendre la dupe

Que toujours la fierté, l'honneur, la bienséance,
De cette folle ardeur s'oppose à la naissance.

Des mots propres à la Poésie.

La poésie se sert en général des mêmes mots que la prose ; cependant il y a quelques expressions que les Poètes emploient heureusement, et qui seraient déplacées dans la prose. Telles sont *antique* pour *ancien* : *coursier* pour *cheval* : *l'Eternel*, le *Très-Haut*, le *Tout-Puissant* pour *Dieu* : le *flanc* pour le *sein*, le *ventre* : le *glaive* pour *l'épée* : les *humains*, les *mortels*, la *race de Japet* pour les *hommes* : *hymen* ou *hyménée* pour *mariage* : *espoir* pour *espérance* : le *penser* pour la *pensée* : *jadis* pour *autrefois* : *naguère* ou *naguères* pour *il n'y a pas long-temps* : *labeur* pour *travail* : *repentance* pour *repentir* : *soudain* pour *aussitôt* : *ombre éternelle*, *sombres bords* pour *l'enfer*, etc.

Où sont, Dieu de Jacob, tes antiques bontés ?
On fait cas d'un coursier, qui, fier et plein de cœur,
Fait paraître en courant sa bouillante vigueur,
L'Eternel en ses mains tient seul nos destinées.
Célébrons dans nos chants la gloire du Très-haut.
Si quelque audacieux embrasse sa querelle,
Qu'à la fureur du glaive on le livre avec elle.
Souvent d'un faux espoir un amant est nourri.
Les Dieux m'en sont témoins, ces Dieux qui dans mon flanc
Ont allumé le feu fatal à tout mon sang,
Ces Dieux qui se sont fait une gloire cruelle
De séduire le cœur d'une faible mortelle.
Soumise à mon époux, et cachant mes ennuis,
De son fatal hymen je cultivais les fruits
On n' aime plus comme on aimait jadis.
Va dans l'ombre éternelle, ombre pleine d'envie ;
Et ne te mêle plus de censurer ma vie.

La lecture des bons Poètes fournira une foule d'autres expressions propres à la poésie.

Nous écrivons en prose *je crois*, *je vois*, *je dis*, *je sais*, *je vis*, *j'avertis*, etc. Les Poètes, selon le besoin, emploient ou retranchent l's dans ces mots. Ils écrivent de même *jusque* ou *jusques*, *encore* ou *encor*, *grâce au Ciel* ou *grâces au Ciel*. Ils emploient aussi *alors que*, pour *lorsque*, *pendant que* pour *pendant que*, *avecque* pour *avec*, etc.

Les bons Poètes se servent rarement de la plupart de ces dernières licences ; et ceux qui se livrent à la poésie ne doivent pas oublier le précepte de Boileau.

Sur tout qu'en vos écrits la langue révéree,
 Dans vos plus grands excès vous soit toujours sacrée ;
 Envain vous me frappez d'un son mélodieux,
 Si le terme est impropre ou le tour vicieux :
 Mon esprit n'admet point un pompeux barbarisme,
 Ni d'un vers ampoulé l'orgueilleux solécisme.
 Sans la langue, en un mot, l'auteur le plus divin,
 Est toujours, quoiqu'il fasse, un méchant écrivain.

DE L'ARRANGEMENT DES VERS ENTR'EUX.

Dans les différentes manières dont le vers doivent être arrangés, il faut considérer la rime et le nombre des syllabes.

Le nombre des syllabes est arbitraire dans les pièces libres et dans la poésie lyrique ; mais il est déterminé dans les autres pièces sérieuses, qui sont la plupart écrites en vers de douze syllabes. Ainsi dans le Poème épique, l'Eglogue l'Élégie, la Satyre, l'Épître, et dans la Tragédie et la haute Comédie, il est d'usage de n'employer que le vers Alexandrin.

Quant à la rime, deux vers masculins peuvent être suivis de deux vers féminins *et vice versâ* ; ou bien un vers masculin est suivi d'un ou de deux féminins, et un vers féminin d'un ou de deux masculins.

On appelle vers à *rimes plates* ceux qui sont disposés de la première façon, comme les suivants.

De figures sans nombre, égayez votre ouvrage ;
 Que tout y fasse aux yeux une riante image :
 On peut être à la fois et pompeux et plaisant,
 Et je hais un sublime ennuyeux, languissant.
 Un poème excellent où tout marche et se suit,
 N'est pas de ces travaux qu'un caprice produit :
 Il veut du temps, des soins ; et ce pénible ouvrage
 Jamais d'un écolier ne fut l'apprentissage.

On appelle vers à *rimes croisées* ceux qui sont ordonnés de la seconde manière, comme ceux-ci dans lesquels Rousseau dit en parlant de Circé furieuse :

Sa voix redoutable
 Trouble les enfers,
 Un bruit formidable
 Gronde dans les airs,
 Un voile effroyable
 Couvre l'univers.

Mais quand on n'observe d'autre règle que de ne pas mettre de suite plus de deux vers masculins ou féminins,

et qu'on fait suivre un vers masculin ou féminin, d'un ou de deux vers d'une rime différente, alors ils s'appellent vers à rimes mêlées, comme ceux-ci :

Ah ! si d'une pauvreté dure
 Nous cherchons à nous affranchir,
 Rapprochons-nous de la nature,
 Qui seule peut nous enrichir.
 Versons de funestes obstacles ;
 Réservons pour nos tabernacles
 Cet or, ces rubis, ces métaux ;
 Ou dans le sein des mers avides
 Jetons ces richesses perfides,
 L'unique aliment de nos maux.

Lorsque les vers sont en rimes plates, ils ont ordinairement le même nombre de syllabes. Mais lorsqu'ils sont à rimes croisées ou à rimes mêlées souvent ils ont une mesure inégale.

Dans les vers à rimes plates, c'est un défaut de faire revenir deux rimes masculines ou féminines déjà employées, de manière qu'elles ne soient séparées de deux autres semblables que par deux rimes d'une espèce différente, comme dans cet exemple :

Soudain Potier se lève et demande *audience* :
 Chacun, à son aspect, garde un profond *silence*.
 Dans ce temps malheureux par le crime *infecté*,
 Potier fut toujours juste, et pourtant *respecté*.
 Souvent on l'avait vu, par sa mâle *éloquence*,
 De leurs emportemens réprimer la *licence*,
 Et conservant sur eux sa vieille *autorité*,
 Leur montrer la justice avec *impunité*.

L'oreille est aussi choquée par la convenance de sons dans les rimes masculines et féminines qui se suivent, comme dans ces vers, d'ailleurs pleins de belles images.

Tel des antres du Nord échappés sur la *terre*,
 Précédés par les vents, et suivis du *tonnerre*,
 D'un tourbillon de poudre obscurcissant les *airs*,
 Les orages fougueux parcourent l'*Univers*.

On compose à rimes plates les grands poèmes, tels que l'Épopée, la Tragédie, la Comédie, l'Eglogue, l'Élégie, la Satyre, l'Épître ; à rimes croisées, l'Ode, le Sonnet, le Rondeau ; et à rimes mêlées, les Stances, l'Épigramme, les Fables, les Madrigaux, les Chansons.

Il n'y a d'autres règles à observer dans les grands poèmes pour la distribution des rimes que d'éviter la con-

sonance, et de ranger les vers masculins et féminins deux à deux les uns après les autres. Nous ne nous étendrons donc pas davantage sur cet article par rapport à l'Épopée, à la Tragédie, etc. Nous ne dirons rien non plus des autres règles de ces poèmes. Ces dissertations nous mèneraient trop loin. Consultez l'Art poétique de Boileau, et les meilleures poétiques anciennes et modernes.

Mais l'ordonnance des vers dans plusieurs petits poèmes a des règles fixes et particulières. Ce sera le sujet des articles suivants.

DES STANCES.

Une *Stance* est un certain nombre de vers, après lesquels le sens est fini. Dans une Ode elle s'appelle *Strophe*.

Une stance n'a pas ordinairement moins de quatre vers, ni plus de dix. La mesure des vers y est arbitraire ; ils peuvent être ou tous grands ou tous petits, ou bien mêlés les uns avec les autres.

Les stances sont appelées *régulières*, lorsqu'elles ont un même nombre de vers, un même mélange de rimes, et que les grands et les petits vers y sont également distribués. Elles sont appelées *irrégulières*, lorsqu'elles n'ont pas toutes ces convenances.

Pour la perfection des stances, il est nécessaire, 1^o Que le sens finisse avec le dernier vers de chacune.

2^o. Que le dernier vers d'une stance ne rime pas avec le premier de la suivante.

3^o. Que les stances d'une même pièce commencent et finissent par des rimes de même nature ; c'est à-dire, que si le premier vers d'une stance finit par une rime masculine, les premiers vers des strophes suivantes doivent également être masculins. Il est cependant bon de remarquer que quoiqu'en général il ne soit pas permis de mettre de suite quatre rimes de même espèce, cependant plusieurs auteurs l'ont fait d'une stance à l'autre, parce qu'ils ont regardé chaque stance d'une pièce comme isolée, et comme indépendante de celle qui suit. Mais nous croyons que cette licence ne peut être tolérée que dans les chansons.

Si une stance est seule, elle prend un nom particulier, du nombre des vers dont elle est composée. Elle s'appelle *Quatrain*, si elle en a quatre ; *Sixain*, si elle en a six , *Dixain*, si elle en a dix. Et quelquefois à raison du sujet

c'est une *Epigramme*, un *Madrigal*. On appelait autrefois *Octave* une strophe de huit vers.

On voit que toutes ces strophes sont du nombre pair. Il y en a aussi du nombre impair, de cinq, de sept et de neuf vers.

RÈGLES POUR LES STANCES DE NOMBRE PAIR.

I. *Stances de quatre vers.*

Ces stances sont plusieurs quatrains joints ensemble, et liés par un sens qui dure jusqu'à la fin de la pièce. Entre le premier vers masculin ou féminin, et celui qui lui répond, on met un ou deux vers d'une rime différente, comme dans ces vers où l'*Amitié* fait elle-même son portrait.

J'ai le visage long, et la mine naïve,
 Je suis sans finesse et sans art.
 Mon teint est fort uni, ma couleur assez vive,
 Et je ne mets jamais de fard.
 Mon abord est civil ; j'ai la bouche riante,
 Et mes yeux ont mille douceurs :
 Mais quoique je sois belle, agréable et charmante,
 Je règne sur bien peu de cœurs.
 On me proteste assez, et presque tous les hommes
 Se vantent de suivre mes lois :
 Mais que j'en connais peu dans le siècle où nous sommes.
 Dont le cœur répond à ma voix ;
 Ceux que je fais aimer d'une flamme fidèle,
 Me font l'objet de tous leurs soins ;
 Et quoique je vieil lisse, ils me trouvent fort belle,
 Et ne m'en estiment pas moins.
 On m'accuse pourtant d'aimer trop à paraître
 Où l'on voit la prospérité ;
 Cependant il est vrai qu'on ne me peut connaître
 Qu'au milieu de l'adversité.

Autre exemple :

Dans ce salon pacifique
 Où président les neuf sœurs,
 Un loisir philosophique
 T'offre encor d'autres douceurs.

Là nous trouverons sans peine
 Avec toi, le verre en main,
 L'homme après qui Diogène
 Courut si long-temps en vain.

Et dans la douce allégresse
 Dont tu sais nous abreuver,
 Nous puiserons la sagesse
 Qu'il chercha sans la trouver.—J. B. ROUSSEAU.

REMARQUE. Les véritables quatrains n'ont aucune liaison pour le sens, et la morale en est ordinairement la matière. Exemple :

Ne demandez á Dieu ni gloire, ni richesse,
Ni ces biens dont l'éclat rend le peuple étonné :
Mais pour bien commander, demandez la sagesse ,
Avec un don si saint tout vous sera donné.
Ecoutez et lisez la céleste parole,
Que, dans les livres saints, Dieu nous donne pour loi.
La politique humaine au prix d'elle est frivole,
Et forme plus souvent un tyran qu'un bon Roi.

II. *Stances de six vers.*

Elles sont composées d'un quatrain et de deux vers d'une même rime, qui se mettent au commencement ou à la fin. D'ailleurs les vers d'un quatrain se mêlent de la même manière que ci-dessus.

Si les deux vers d'une même rime sont au commencement, alors à la fin du troisième, on met ordinairement un repos, et le sens ne doit pas s'étendre jusqu'au quatrième. Ce repos donne beaucoup de grâce et d'harmonie à cette sorte de stances.

On peut voir, par les exemples suivants, que ce repos peut être plus ou moins marqué, et qu'il n'est pas rigoureusement exigé dans les sixains.

Ce n'est donc point assez que ce peuple perfide,
De la sainte cité profanateur stupide,
Ait dans tout l'Orient porté ses étendards ;
Et paisible tyran de la Grèce abattue,
Partage à notre vue
La plus belle moitié du trône des Césars.
Des veilles, des travaux un faible cœur s'étonne.
Apprenons toutefois, que le fils de Latone,
Dont nous suivons la cour,
Ne nous vend qu'à ce prix ces traits de vive flamme
Et ces aîles de feu qui ravissent une âme
Au céleste séjour.

La place de ce repos varie, et est tantôt après le second, tantôt après le quatrième vers, dans les sixains où les deux vers d'une même rime sont à la fin de la strophe, comme dans les stances suivantes.

Seigneur, dans ton temple adorable,
Quel mortel est digne d'entrer ?
Qui pourra, grand Dieu, pénétrer
Ce sanctuaire impénétrable,
Où tes saints inclinés, d'un œil respectueux,
Contemplant de ton front l'éclat majestueux ?

Ce sera celui qui du vice
 Evite le sentier impur,
 Qui marche d'un pas ferme et sûr,
 Dans le chemin de la justice ;
 Attentif et fidèle à distinguer sa voix,
 Intrépide et sévère à pratiquer ses loix ;
 Celui devant qui le superbe,
 Enflé d'une vaine splendeur.
 Paraît plus dans sa grandeur
 Que l'insecte caché sous l'herbe ;
 Qui bravant du méchant le faste couronné,
 Honore la vertu du juste infortuné.

III. *Stances de huit vers.*

Ces stances ne sont ordinairement que deux quatrains joints ensemble. Le sens doit finir après le premier ; et les vers de tous les deux s'entrelacent, comme nous l'avons déjà dit. Exemple :

Tel en un sacré vallon,
 Sur le bord d'une onde pure,
 Croît à l'abri de l'Aquilon
 Un jeune lys, l'amour de la nature.
 Loin du monde élevé, de tous les dons des Cieux
 Il est orné dès sa naissance ;
 Et du méchant l'abord contagieux
 N'altère point son innocence.

RACINE, *chœurs d'Athalie*.

Si quelque jour étant ivre
 La mort arrêta mes pas,
 Je ne voudrais pas revivre
 Après un si doux trépas :
 Je m'en irais dans l'Averne
 Faire enivrer Alec-ton,
 Et bâtir une taverne
 Dans le manoir de Pluton.—MAITRE ADAM.

Ces stances peuvent aussi commencer par deux vers sur une même rime, et les six autres sont sur des rimes croisées. Quelquefois aussi ces stances n'ont qu'un sixain sur deux ou trois rimes, après quoi viennent deux vers de même rime

Ces mélanges de rime peuvent aisément se concevoir sans qu'il soit nécessaire d'en citer des exemples ; d'ailleurs ils ne sont pas communs.

IV. *Stances de dix vers.*

Les stances de dix vers ne sont autre chose qu'un quatrain et un sixain, dont les vers s'entremêlent selon les règles ordinaires. Elles tirent leur harmonie d'un premier

repos placé à la fin du quatrain, et d'un second après le septième vers. Ex.

C'est un arrêt du Ciel, il faut que l'homme meure ;
 Tel est son partage et son sort :
 Rien n'est plus certain que la mort,
 Et rien plus incertain que cette dernière heure.
 Heureuse incertitude, utile obscurité,
 Par où ta divine bonté
 A veiller, à prier, sans cesse nous convie !
 Que ne pouvons-nous point avec un tel secours,
 Qui nous fait regarder tous les jours de la vie
 Comme le dernier de nos jours !
 Les Cieux instruisent la terre
 A révéler leur auteur ;
 Tout ce que leur globe enserme,
 Célèbre un Dieu Créateur.
 Quel plus sublime cantique
 Que ce concert magnifique
 De tous les célestes corps !
 Quelle grandeur infinie !
 Quelle divine harmonie
 Résulte de leurs accords !

REGLES POUR LES STANCES DE NOMBRE IMPAIR.

Les stances de nombre impair ont toutes, trois vers sur une même rime. L'ordonnance des vers y est d'ailleurs arbitraire, excepté qu'on ne peut mettre que deux rimes semblables de suite, et que le quatrain par lequel commencent les stances de sept ou de neuf vers, doit être terminé par un repos.

Stance de cinq vers.

O rives du Jourdain ! ô champs aimés des Cieux
 Sacrés monts, fertiles vallées,
 Par cent miracles signalées,
 Du doux pays de nos aïeux
 Serons-nous toujours exilées ?
 Pardonne, Dieu puissant, pardonne à ma faiblesse
 A 'aspect des méchans, confus, épouvanté,
 Le trouble m'a saisi, mes pas ont hésité ;
 Mon zèle m'a trahi, Seigneur, je le confesse,
 En voyant leur prospérité.

Stances de sept vers.

Si la loi du Seigneur vous touche,
 Si le mensonge vous fait peur,

Si la justice en votre cœur
 Règne aussi bien qu'en votre bouche ;
 Parlez, fils des hommes, pourquoi
 Faut-il qu'une haine farouche
 Préside aux jugemens que vous lancez sur moi ?

Stance de neuf vers.

Quel rempart, quelle autre barrière
 Pourra défendre l'innocent
 Contre la fraude meurtrière
 De l'impie adroit et puissant ?
 Sa langue aux feintes préparée,
 Ressemble à la flèche acérée
 Qui part et frappe en un moment
 C'est un feu léger dans l'entrée.
 Que suit un long embrasement.

DU SONNET.

Boileau feint qu'Apollon,

Voulant pousser à bout tous les rimeurs françois,
 Inventa du Sonnet les rigoureuses lois,
 Voulut qu'en deux quatrains de mesure pareille,
 La rime avec deux sons frappât huit fois l'oreille ;
 Et qu'ensuite six vers artistement rangés,
 Fussent en deux tercets par le sens partagés.
 Sur-tout de ce poème il bannit la licence,
 Défendit qu'un vers faible y pût jamais entrer,
 Et qu'un mot déjà mis osât s'y remontrer.
 Du reste il l'enrichit d'une beauté suprême :
 Un Sonnet sans défaut vaut seul un long Poème.

Le Sonnet est composé de quatorze vers d'une mesure égale, et pour l'ordinaire de douze syllabes ; ces vers sont partagés en deux quatrains et un sixain.

Les rimes masculines et féminines des deux quatrains sont semblables, et on les entremêle dans l'un, de la même manière que dans l'autre.

Le sixain se coupe en deux tercets, c'est-à-dire, en deux stances de trois vers. Ces tercets commencent l'un et l'autre par deux rimes semblables, en sorte que le troisième vers du premier, rime avec le troisième du second.

Il faut éviter que le mélange des rimes, dans les quatre derniers vers du sixain, soit le même que dans les quatrains.

Le second vers de chaque quatrain doit avoir un repos. Les deux quatrains et les deux tercets doivent être terminés chacun par un repos encore plus grand.

D'ailleurs tout doit être noble dans ce Poème, pensées, style, élocution. Point de répétitions, point de redondance. La force et l'élévation en sont les principaux caractères.

On voit cependant des Sonnets, dont les sujets ne sont pas sublimes ; le style alors en est médiocre, et doit l'être. Voici deux exemples du Sonnet. Le premier dans le genre simple, exprime la nature même du Sonnet.

Doris, qui sait qu'aux vers quelquefois je me plais,
Me demande un Sonnet et je m'en désespère.
Quatorze vers grand Dieu, le moyen de les faire !
En voilà cependant déjà quatre de faits.
Je ne pouvais d'abord trouver de rime, mais
Enfaisant, on apprend à se tirer d'affaire.
Poursuivons : les quatrains ne m'étonneront guère,
Si du premier tercet je puis faire les frais.
Je commence au hasard, et si je ne m'abuse,
Je n'ai pas commencé sans l'aveu de ma Muse,
Puisqu'en si peu de temps je m'en tire si net.
J'entame le second, et ma joie est extrême ;
Car des vers commandés j'achève le treizième.
Comptez s'ils sont quatorze, et voilà le Sonnet.

AUTRE SONNET.

Grand Dieu tes jugemens sont remplis d'équité :
Toujours tu prends plaisir à nous être propice ;
Mais j'ai tant fait de mal, que jamais ta bonté
Ne me pardonnera qu'en blessant ta justice.
Oui, Seigneur, la grandeur de mon impiété
Ne laisse à ton pouvoir que le choix du supplice,
Ton intérêt s'oppose à ma félicité,
Et ta clémence même attend que je périsse.
Contente ton désir, puisqu'il t'est glorieux ;
Offense-toi des pleurs qui coulent de mes vœux :
Tonne, frappe, il est temps, rends-moi guerre pour guerre.
J'adore, en périssant, la raison qui t'aigrit :
Mais dessus quel endroit tombera ton tonnerre
Qui ne soit tout couvert du sang de Jésus-Christ.

DU RONDEAU.

Le Rondeau né Gaulois a la naïveté.

Tel est le caractère de ce petit poème. Toutes sortes de vers y sont propres, excepté les Alexandrins qui ont trop de gravité. Il y entre treize vers de même mesure sur deux rimes.

On peut faire dans le Rondeau ce qu'on ne fait point

dans les autres Poèmes. Comme il ne doit y avoir dans les huit derniers vers que trois rimes féminines, on peut mettre de suite sur trois rimes masculines le cinquième, le sixième et le septième. Mais on fait rarement ce mélange dans les cinq derniers vers.

Le Rondeau a deux repos nécessaires, l'un après le cinquième vers, l'autre après le refrain.

Le refrain qui se place après le huitième vers, et à la fin de la pièce, n'est autre chose que la répétition d'un ou de plusieurs mots du premier vers. Il doit avoir un sens lié avec ce qui précède, et être amené délicatement. Le premier des deux Rondeaux qui suivent, explique les règles du Poème.

Ma foi, c'est fait de moi, car Isabeau
M'a conjuré de lui faire un Rondeau :
Cela me met en une peine extrême.
Quoi treize vers, huit en eau, cinq en âme !
Je lui ferais aussitôt un bateau.
En voilà cinq pourtant en un monceau :
Faisons-en huit en invoquant Brodeau,
Et puis mettons par quelque stratagème,
Ma foi, c'est fait.

Si je pouvais encor de mon cerveau
Tirer cinq vers, l'ouvrage serait beau :
Mais cependant me voilà dans l'onzième,
Et si je crois que je fais le douzième :
En voilà treize ajustés au niveau.
Ma foi, c'est fait.

Le bel esprit, au siècle de Marot,
Des dons du Ciel passait pour le gros lot ;
Des grands seigneurs il donnait accointance,
Menait par fois à noble jouissance,
Et qui plus est faisait bouillir le pot.
Or est passé ce temps où d'un bon mot,
Stance ou dixain, on payait son écot ;
Plus n'en voyons qui prennent pour finance
Le bel esprit.

A prix d'argent l'auteur, comme le sot,
Boit sa chopine et mange son gigot ;
Heureux encor d'en avoir suffisance !
Maints ont le chef plus rempli que la panse :
Dame Ignorance a fait enfin capot
Le bel esprit.

DE L'EPIGRAMME.

L'Epigramme plus libre, et son tour plus borné,
N'est souvent qu'un bon mot de deux rimes orné

Cette pièce ne doit contenir qu'autant de vers qu'il en faut pour exprimer vivement la pensée ou le bon mot qui en est l'âme. C'est pourquoi le nombre n'en est pas déterminé, non plus que la mesure et le mélange des rimes

Exemple :

Ci-gît ma femme : ah ! qu'elle est bien
 Pour son repos et pour le mien !
 Un magister s'empressant d'étouffer
 Quelque rumeur parmi la populace,
 D'un coup dans l'œil se fit apostropher,
 Dont il tomba, faisant laide grimace.
 Lors un frater s'écria : place, place ;
 J'ai pour ce mal un baume souverain.
 Perdrai-je l'œil ? Ici dit messer Pancrace ;
 Non, mon ami, je le tiens dans la main.

DU MADRIGAL.

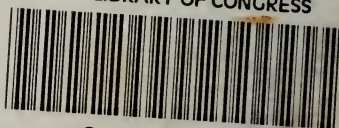
Le Madrigal plus simple, et plus noble en son tour,
 Respire la douceur, la tendresse et l'amour.—BOILEAU.

Ce petit poème ne diffère que par-là de l'Epigramme, dont la pointe est souvent aiguisée par la satire. Exemple :

L'autre jour l'enfant de Cythère,
 Sous une treille à demi gris,
 Disait, en parlant à sa mère :
 Je bois à toi, ma chère Iris.
 Vénus le regarde en colère :
 Maman, calmez votre courroux,
 Si je vous prends pour ma bergère,
 J'ai pris cent fois Iris pour vous.

NOTA. Le Sonnet et le Rondeau ont aujourd'hui perdu toute leur vogue, et il est très-rare que l'on s'exerce dans ces deux genres de poésie.

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 117 531 8

